

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 931SC.

Handset is compatible with both 3G and GSM network technologies.

- Read this guide thoroughly before using handset to ensure proper usage.
- Accessible services may be limited by contract conditions or service area.

Notes

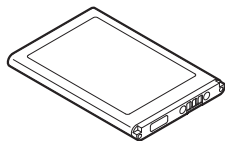
- Unauthorized copying of any part of this guide is prohibited.
- Contents are subject to change without prior notice.
- Steps have been taken to ensure the accuracy of descriptions in this guide. If you find inaccurate or missing information, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (☎P.15-26).

- Find updated guide on SoftBank Mobile Website (<http://www.softbank.jp/mb/r/support/931sc/>).

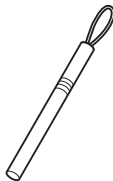
Accessories

Make sure the following accessories are included in the package with handset. These accessories are also sold separately. For details on accessories or optional items, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (☎P.15-26).

Battery [SCBAR1]



Stylus with Strap



- Use only specified Charger (sold separately) for charging.
- Handset takes microSD™ Memory Card (not included). Purchase one to use Memory Card functions.
- microSD™ Memory Card is referred to as "Memory Card" in this guide.
- Download MicroSD™ Memory Card from SAMSUNG Website (<http://jp.samsungmobile.com/pc/lineup/931download.html>).

Chapter Contents At a Glance

Getting Started	1
Basic Operations	2
Calling	3
Messaging	4
Internet Services	5
Digital TV	6
Camera & Imaging	7
Media Player	8
Entertainment	9
Handy Extras	10
Handset Security	11
Data Folder & Memory	12
Connectivity & File Backup	13
Handset Customization	14
Appendix	15

About This Guide

In this guide, SoftBank 931SC is referred as handset. Instructions are described using mainly default settings. When settings are changed, screen shots or handset responses may differ from those depicted in this guide.

Screen Shots and 931SC Illustrations

Screen shots appearing in this guide are for reference only and may differ from actual Display images. Product illustrations may differ from actual product appearances.

In some screen shots, Wallpaper is set to None for Display image clarity.

Confirmations & Warning Messages

Messages not described in this guide may appear; read all handset confirmations and warning messages carefully.

Japanese Functions & Services

When "(Japanese)" appears in a title, Japanese ability is required to use full range of the function or service.

Symbols

In this guide, graphics represent handset keys; see "Parts & Functions" (P.1-2). Alternatively, use Touch Panel and Stylus to access functions. Touch Panel operations are indicated as follows:

Toolbar

Operation options appear at the bottom of Display.



— Toolbar

Tap Menu items to select them.

Toolbar Operations

Tap Phone

Assigned Function

Touch Panel Operations

Touch Panel supports Stylus taps or swipes. See "Touch Panel" (☞P.1-5).

Menu Operations

Menu operation explanations are abbreviated with arrows.

Menu

1 Tap Menu → Settings → Display settings → Wallpaper

Tap these menu items in sequence

For details, see "Using Main Menu" (☞P.2-3).

Highlighting

In this guide, "to highlight" means to move cursor to an item.

About This Guide	ii
Contents	iv
Safety Precautions	vii
General Notes	xvi
SAR Certification	xxi
FCC RF Exposure Information	xxii
European RF Exposure Information	xxiii

1 Getting Started

Parts & Functions	1-2
Touch Panel	1-5
Motion Control	1-7
USIM Card	1-7
Battery & Charger	1-9
Power On/Off	1-13
Account Details	1-14
Handling Precautions (Touch Panel & Key Lock)	1-15
Standby Window	1-16
Minding Mobile Manners	1-16
Security Codes	1-21

2 Basic Operations

Accessing Functions	2-2
Incoming Settings	2-4
Standby Display Options	2-5
Widgets	2-6

Text Entry	2-7
User's Dictionary	2-14
Phonebook	2-15
Advanced Settings	2-20

3 Calling

Voice Call	3-2
Video Call	3-5
Favorites	3-7
Emergency Numbers	3-8
Hold, Answering Machine & Black List	3-8
Call Log Records	3-10
Checking Call Time/Cost	3-12
Handset Phone Number	3-12
International Calling	3-13
Global Roaming	3-13
Optional Services	3-15
Advanced Settings	3-22

4 Messaging

Messaging Basics	4-2
Customizing Mail Address	4-4
Creating/Sending Messages	4-4
Receiving, Replying & Forwarding Messages	4-8
Using Messages	4-13
Advanced Settings	4-17

5 Internet Services

Internet Services	5-2
Yahoo! Keitai	5-3
PC Site Browser	5-4
Page Operations	5-5
Bookmarks & Saved Pages	5-7
Advanced Settings	5-8

6 Digital TV

Enjoy One Seg in Wide Screen	6-2
Precaution for Watching TV	6-3
Channel Setup (Area Setup)	6-4
Watching TV	6-4
Record/Playback Programs	6-7
TV Timer/TV Timer Recording	6-9
Receiving Call While Watching TV	6-11
Advanced Settings	6-11

7 Camera & Imaging

Capturing Picture, Recording Movie & Editing	7-2
Camera	7-3
Video	7-9
Editing Images	7-12
Printing Still Images	7-14
Advanced Settings	7-15

8 Media Player

- Using Media Player 8-2
- Downloading Media Files 8-3
- Playing Music 8-4
- Playing Movie 8-6
- Using Playlist 8-8
- Streaming 8-9
- Advanced Settings 8-10

9 Entertainment

- Entertainment Functions 9-2
- S! Applications (Japanese) 9-3
- Games 9-3
- S! Quick News 9-5
- S! Information Channel 9-6
- S! Friend's Status 9-7
- Near Chat 9-10
- BookSurfing® 9-12
- Biorhythm 9-12
- Widgets 9-13
- Advanced Settings 9-21

10 Handy Extras

- Useful Handset Applications 10-2
- Calendar 10-3

- Alarms 10-4
- Calculator 10-5
- Converter 10-5
- World Clock 10-6
- Notepad 10-7
- Tasks 10-7
- Voice Recorder 10-8
- Stopwatch 10-9
- Countdown Timer 10-9
- Bar Code Reader 10-10
- File Viewer 10-11
- English-Japanese/Japanese-English Dictionary . . 10-12
- Dummy Call 10-13
- Advanced Settings 10-13

11 Handset Security

- Handset Security 11-2
- Changing Phone Password 11-3
- Phone Lock 11-3
- Function Lock 11-7
- Restoring Default Settings 11-8
- Advanced Settings 11-9

12 Data Folder & Memory

- Data Folder 12-2
- Viewing Files 12-4

- Photo Album 12-7
- Managing Files/Folders 12-8
- Memory Card 12-10
- Viewing Memory Status 12-12
- Advanced Settings 12-12

13 Connectivity & File Backup

- Transmit Data & File Backup 13-2
- Infrared 13-3
- Bluetooth® 13-5
- USB Connection 13-8
- Memory Card Backup 13-9
- S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB) 13-11
- Advanced Settings 13-13

14 Handset Customization

- Phone Settings 14-2
- Sounds & Vibration & External Light Settings . . 14-3
- Display and Font Settings 14-5
- Manner Mode Settings 14-6
- Call Settings 14-6
- Phonebook Settings 14-11
- Messaging Settings 14-11
- Internet Settings 14-15
- Digital TV Settings 14-17
- Camera Settings 14-19
- Media Player Settings 14-21

Entertainment Setting	14-22
Security Settings	14-23
Memory Settings	14-24
Connectivity Settings	14-25

15 Appendix




Troubleshooting	15-2
Software Update	15-4
Function List	15-5
Text Entry Window Key Assignments	15-8
Symbols	15-11
Pictograms	15-12
Memory	15-13
Specifications	15-13
Index	15-15
Objective Index	15-21
Advanced Settings Index	15-24
Warranty & Service	15-25
Customer Service	15-26

Safety Precautions

Read safety precautions before using handset.





- Observe precautions to avoid injury to self or others, or damage to property.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.

These labels indicate the degree of risk from improper use. Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.

 Danger	Great risk of death or serious injury ¹ from improper use
 Warning	Risk of death or serious injury ¹ from improper use
 Caution	Risk of serious injury ² or damage to property ³ from improper use

- 1 "Serious injury" includes blindness, wounds, low/high heat burns, electric shock, bone fractures, poisoning or other physical harm with aftereffects, or requiring hospitalization or ongoing hospital visits.
- 2 "Serious injury" includes wounds, burns, electric shock or other physical harm not requiring hospitalization or ongoing hospital visits.
- 3 "Damage to property" includes damage to home, furniture, livestock, pets, etc.

These symbols indicate prohibited or compulsory actions. Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.

	Prohibited actions
 Do Not Disassemble	Disassembly prohibited
 Avoid Liquids Or Moisture	Exposure to liquids prohibited
 Do Not Use Wet Hands	Use with wet hands prohibited
	Compulsory actions
 Disconnect Power Source	Unplug Charger from outlet

Handset, Battery, USIM Card, Charger (Sold Separately) & Memory Card (Sold Separately)



Danger

Use specified battery and Charger (sold separately) only.



Compulsory

Non-specified equipment use may cause battery to leak, overheat, burst or ignite, and may cause Charger to overheat, ignite, malfunction, etc.

Do not disassemble, modify or solder handset or related hardware.



Do Not
Disassemble

May cause fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite.

Modifying handsets is prohibited by the Radio Law and subject to a penalty.

Do not expose handset or related hardware to liquids.



Avoid Liquids
Or Moisture

Do not leave handset or related hardware wet after exposure to water, pet urine, etc., and do not charge wet battery. May cause overheating, electric shock, fire, injury or malfunction. Use them in an appropriate place properly.

Do not charge battery in or expose handset or related hardware to extreme heat (e.g., near fire or sources of heat, in direct sunlight, inside vehicles, etc.).



Prohibited

May cause warping/malfunction; battery may leak, overheat, ignite or burst. Handset or related hardware may become hot to the touch, leading to burn injuries, etc.

Do not force battery/Charger into handset. Check the direction and retry.



Prohibited

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Warning

Do not place handset, battery or Charger in/on ovens, microwave ovens, pressure cookers, induction stoves or other cooking appliances.



Prohibited

Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite. Handset/Charger may overheat, emit smoke, ignite, malfunction, etc.

Keep handset off and Charger disconnected near gas stations or places with fire/explosion risk.



Compulsory

Handset use near petrochemicals or other flammables may cause fire/explosion.

To prevent fire or explosion, do not use handset near gas or fine particles (Coal, dust, metal, etc.).

Do not apply strong shocks or impacts.

Do not drop/throw handset or related hardware. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite, resulting in fire, electric shock, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

If there is unusual sound/odor, smoke or any other abnormality:

Continued use may cause fire, electric shock, etc.; grasp plug to disconnect Charger from connector or cigarette socket.



Compulsory

Keep liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) or conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.) away from Charging terminals, External Device or Memory Card Holder.

May cause short circuit, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited



Caution

Do not place handset or related hardware on unstable surfaces.

Handset or related hardware may fall, resulting in injury, malfunction, etc.; be especially careful when Vibration is set or during Charge.



Prohibited

Keep handset and related hardware out of infants' reach.

Infants may choke from swallowing handset or related hardware or be injured, etc.



Compulsory

If your child is using handset and related hardware, explain all instructions and supervise usage.

Misuse may cause injury, etc.



Compulsory

Battery

Danger

Read battery label to confirm battery type; use/dispose of battery accordingly.

Display	Battery type
Li-ion00	Lithium-ion

Do not dispose of battery in fire.

Battery may leak, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

Do not damage battery (with a nail, hammer, foot, etc.) or subject it to strong impacts or shocks.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

Keep wire or other metal objects away from battery terminals. Do not carry/store battery with conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.).

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

If battery fluid gets in eyes, do not rub; rinse with water and consult a doctor immediately.

Eyes may be severely damaged.



Compulsory

Warning

If battery fluid contacts skin or clothes, discontinue handset use and rinse with clean water immediately.

May cause skin damage.



Compulsory

If battery does not charge properly, stop trying.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Compulsory

If there is abnormal odor, excessive heat, discoloration or distortion, remove battery, being careful not to burn or injure yourself. Avoid fire sources.

Continued use may cause battery to leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Compulsory

Caution

Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse.

Tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank Shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.



Prohibited

Handset



Warning

Do not use handset while driving or cycling.

Accidents may result.

Phone use while driving or cycling is prohibited by law and subject to a penalty; park in a legal parking space beforehand.



Prohibited

Turn handset power off near electronic devices that employ high precision control systems or weak signals.

May cause electronic malfunctions, etc. Be especially careful near the following devices:

Hearing aids, implanted pacemakers/defibrillators and other electronic medical equipment; fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control devices.



Compulsory

Because handset radio waves may impair aircraft operations, please power off handset while aboard.

When handset use aboard aircraft is allowed, please follow instructions of airline personnel.



Compulsory

Users with a heart condition should adjust ringtone Vibration and Volume as needed.

May cause heart damage.



Compulsory

If thunder is heard while outdoors, turn power off; find cover.

There is a risk of lightning strike or electric shock.



Compulsory

Do not look into Infrared Port during infrared transmissions.

Eyesight may be affected.



Prohibited

Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces.

May cause injury such as loss of eyesight.

Avoid getting too close to infants when taking photos.

Eyesight may be temporarily affected leading to accidents.



Prohibited



Caution

Do not use handset when it may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.

Handset use inside vehicles may cause electronic equipment to malfunction, resulting in accidents.



Prohibited

If you experience any skin irritation associated with handset use, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.



Compulsory

Metal and other materials may cause skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness depending on your physical condition.

Parts	Materials & Finishing
Housing (front)	PC/SPRAY
Housing (rear)	PC/SPRAY
Call Key/Clear Key/End Key	AL/Anodizing
Side Key	PC + POLYURETHANE/SPRAY
Battery Cover	PC/SPRAY

Keep handset away from magnetic cards, etc.



Prohibited

Data on bank cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be lost.

Do not swing handset by strap.



Prohibited

May harm self or others; strap may break, resulting in injury or handset malfunction/breakage.

Handset may become hot while in use, especially at high temperature.



Compulsory

Prolonged contact with skin may cause burn injuries.

Always maintain some distance from Speaker while ringtones, music or other handset sounds play.



Prohibited

Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.

When view Digital TV, be sure to view in place with enough light and view from distance, otherwise it may cause decrease in vision.



Compulsory

Moderate handset volume when using Earphone Microphone.



Compulsory

Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.

Charger (Sold Separately)

Warning

Do not cover/wrap Charger while charging.

Charger may overheat, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

Use only the specified voltage.

Non-specified voltages may cause fire, malfunction, etc.

- AC Charger (only for household wall sockets): AC 100V-240V Input
- InCar Charger (Optional) : DC12V/24V (only for vehicles with negative ground)



Prohibited

Leave Charger unplugged during periods of disuse; grasp plug to disconnect it.

May cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.



Disconnect
Power Source

When fuse of InCar Charger (Optional) blown, be sure to change with specified fuse.

If unspecified fuse is being use, may cause fire, electric shock or damage. For specified fuse information see InCar Charger manual.



Compulsory

If liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) seep inside Charger, grasp plug from cigarette socket and disconnect Charger immediately.

May cause electric shock, smoke/fire.



Disconnect
Power Source

If plug is dusty, grasp it and disconnect Charger, then clean with a dry cloth.

Fire may result.



Compulsory

InCar Charger (Optional) only for vehicles with negative ground. Do not use in vehicles with positive ground, it may cause fire.



Prohibited

Plug Charger firmly into the outlet, keeping the plug and Charger charging terminals away from conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.).

May cause electric shock, short circuit, fire, etc.



Compulsory

Do not touch Charger plug with wet hands.

May cause electric shock or malfunction, etc.



Do Not Use
Wet Hands

Do not touch Charger if thunder is heard.

May cause electric shock, etc.



Prohibited



Caution

Grasp plug and disconnect Charger from outlet or cigarette socket before cleaning.

May cause electric shock, etc.



Disconnect
Power Source

Always grasp plug (not cord) to disconnect Charger from outlet or cigarette socket.

Pulling the plug by cord may damage cord, causing electric shock, fire, etc.



Compulsory

Do not subject Charger (sold separately) to strong shocks or impacts while it is plugged into the outlet.

May cause malfunction or injury.



Compulsory

Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc." (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).



Warning

Persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator should keep handset more than 22 cm away.

Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators.



Compulsory

If you intend to use electronic medical equipment other than implanted pacemaker/defibrillator outside medical facilities, consult the vendor on radio wave effects.

Radio waves may interfere with electronic medical equipment.



Compulsory

Observe these rules inside medical facilities to avoid effects of radio waves on electronic medical equipment:



Compulsory

- Do not enter an operating room or an Intensive or Coronary Care Unit while carrying a handset.
- Keep handset off in hospitals; cancel the setting that turns handset power on automatically (alarm, etc.) beforehand.
- Even in lobbies or other places where handset use is permitted, keep handset off near electronic medical equipment.
- Obey medical facility rules on mobile phone use.

Turn handset off in crowds or trains where persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator may be near; cancel the setting that turns handset power on automatically (alarm, etc.) beforehand.



Compulsory

Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.

General Notes

General Use

- SoftBank is not liable for any damage resulting from accidental loss/alteration of any data on handset/Memory Card. Please keep separate records of Phonebook entries, etc.
- Handset transmissions may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels, or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
- **Beware of eavesdropping.**
Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.

Eavesdropping

Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.

Inside Vehicles

- Never use handset while driving.
- Do not park illegally to use handset.
- Handset use may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.

Aboard Aircraft

- Never use handset aboard aircraft (Keep the power off). Handset use may impair aircraft operation.

Function Usage Limits

- The following functions are disabled after handset upgrade/replacement or service cancellation:
 - Camera
 - Media Player
 - TV
- After a long period of disuse, these functions may be unusable; establish a Network connection to restore usability.

Handset Care

- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damage.
- Use handset between 5°C - 40°C. Avoid extreme temperatures/direct sunlight.
- Exposing the lens to direct sunlight may damage the color filter and affect image color.
- Do not drop or subject handset to shocks.
- Clean handset with a dry, soft cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Do not expose handset to rain, snow, or high humidity.
- Never disassemble or modify handset.
- Avoid scratching Display.
- When using headphones, moderate the volume to avoid sound bleed.
- **Handset is not water-proof. Avoid exposure to liquids and high humidity.**
 - Keep handset away from precipitation.
 - Cold air from air conditioning, etc. may condense causing corrosion.
 - Avoid placing handset in damp places (Restrooms, bath/shower rooms, etc.).
 - On the beach, keep handset away from water and direct sunlight.
 - Perspiration may get inside handset causing malfunction.

- Heavy objects or excessive pressure should be avoided. This may cause malfunction or injury.
 - Do not sit down with handset in a back pocket.
 - Do not place heavy objects on handset in a bag.
- Insert only specified devices into Headphone Port. Malfunction or damage may result.
- Always turn power off before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed or destroyed.

Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials for copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only.

Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera. The software contained in handset is copyrighted material; copyright, moral right, and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile, or reverse-engineer the software, and do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

Trademarks

- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:
4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773 5,101,501
5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073 5,228,054 5,535,239
5,267,261 5,544,196 5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338
5,600,754 5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569
5,710,784 5,778,338
- Video Call, S! Mail, PC Site Browser, S! Quick News, S! Appli, S! Friend's Status, S! Addressbook Back-up, Graphic Mail, Feeling Mail, 3D Pictogram, Near Chat, S-1 BATTLE, S! Information Channel and Weather Indicator, Content Value Package, Simple Select Video are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.
- "SOFTBANK", SOFTBANK's equivalent in Japanese, and the SOFTBANK logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and in other countries.
- "Yahoo!", the "Yahoo!" and "Y!" logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.
- This product contains ACCESS Co., Ltd.'s NetFront Internet browser software. NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and in other countries.

ACCESS NetFront®

- Part of the software in this product incorporates a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD ("MPEG-4 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE [HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM](http://www.mpegla.com).
- Contains Macromedia® Flash® Flash Lite™ technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated.
- Copyright© 1995-2005 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
- Macromedia, Flash, Macromedia Flash, and Macromedia Flash Lite are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.

- JBlend™ is incorporated in this product. JBlend™ is a Java™ execution environment developed by Aplix Corporation for implementing advanced performance and fast operation on small-memory systems.
- Powered by JBlend™ Technology.
JBlend and JBlend logos are registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- Powered by JBlend™, ©1997-2006 Aplix Corporation.
All rights reserved.
- JBlend and all JBlend-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- "Chaku-Uta®" and "Chaku-Uta Full®" are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment Corp.
- microSD™ is a trademark of SD Association.



- Bluetooth is a trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.
The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Samsung Electronics is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.
- Powered by SwiftDecoder™ Copyright ©1996-2007, Omniplanar, Inc. All Rights Reserved.
- Windows and Windows Media Player are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- BookSurfing is registered trademark of CELSYS, Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc., INFOCITY, Inc.
- Windows is an abbreviation for the Microsoft Windows operating system.



Bluetooth®

In the frequency band of the Bluetooth® functions of handset, Industrial, scientific or medical equipments such as microwave ovens or in-house radio stations such as the ones used in production lines or by amateur radio stations (Referred to as "other radio stations" hereafter) are used. In order to prevent radio interference with other radio equipments, follow the points listed below in using handset.

1. Before using Bluetooth® functions, confirm there are no "other radio stations" operating near you.
2. In case there is a radio interference with "other radio stations," move to some other place or stop the Bluetooth® functions (Stop emitting the radio waves) immediately.
3. If you have any questions or problems with Bluetooth® emissions, contact SoftBank as listed below:

Contact: SoftBank Mobile Customer Center

From a SoftBank handset, dial 157 (toll free) for General Information. See "Customer Service" (☎P.15-26) for landline numbers by service area.

Handset transmits on the 2.4 GHz band, employing frequency-hopping spread spectrum (FHSS) modulation, with resistance to radio frequency interference between 1.5 - 5 meters, depending on usage environment.

SAR Certification

9315C meets the technical standards of Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC) regarding radio wave absorption by a human body.

These technical standards are established on a scientific basis to prevent radio waves emitted from wireless devices such as mobile phones that are used close to human head from affecting human health. These standards assure that the SAR (Specific Absorption Rate), an indicator of the amount of average energy absorbed in the side of a human head, must not exceed the permissive value of 2 W/kg*. This value includes a substantial safety margin designated to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and physical size. The value is equal to the international guideline recommended by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) that has a cooperative relationship with the World Health Organization (WHO).

The highest SAR value for 9315C is 0.784 W/kg. This value is obtained in accordance with the MIC testing procedure with the mobile phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level. While there may be differences in the SAR levels depending on phones, they all meet the MIC's permissible value. Because mobile phones are designed to employ the minimum power level required for the communication with the base station, the SAR of the phone during a call is usually below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

MIC: <http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/j/ele/index.htm>

ARIB: <http://www.arib-emf.org/initiation/sar.html>

- * **The guideline is defined by relevant laws and regulations associated with the Radio Law (No. 2 of Article 14 of Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment).**

SoftBank's Body SAR Policy

* Body SAR: The SAR value at the maximum transmission power when continuously talking with handset placed on the body and using earphone-microphone.

** Specific Absorption Rate (SAR): The value measured when having talked continuously for 6 minutes.

*** Placement on the body: Measurements are taken with the rear of handset facing the body at a distance of 1.5 cm as the ordinary handset position. In order to comply with radio frequency exposure requirements, use an accessory (e.g. belt clip, holster) that does not contain metallic parts to maintain a 1.5 cm separation between the body and handset.

For further information, see the following SoftBank website:

<http://www.softbankmobile.co.jp/ja/info/public/emf/emf02.html>

FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver.

It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.

The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.

The tests are performed in positions and locations (e.g., at the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC for each model. The highest SAR value for this model handset when tested for use at the ear is 0.443 W/kg and when worn on the body, as described in this user guide, is 0.144 W/kg.

Body-worn Operation; This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of the handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of the handset. The use of belt clips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided.

The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorisation for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of

<http://www.fcc.gov/oet/fccid> after searching on FCC ID A3LSWD931SC.

Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) website at <http://www.phonefacts.net>.

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg and the highest SAR value for this device when tested at the ear was 1.18 W/kg*. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide. In this case, the highest tested SAR value is 0.784 W/kg.

As SAR is measured utilizing the devices highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the network.

The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a hands-free device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body.

*** The tests are carried out in accordance with international guidelines for testing.**

Getting Started

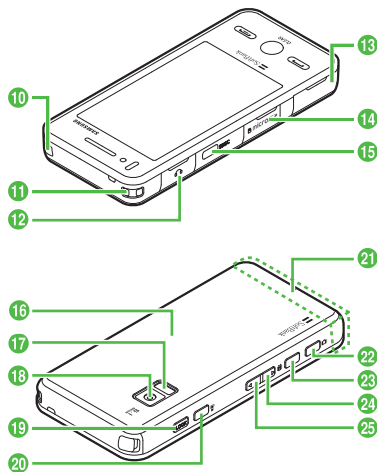
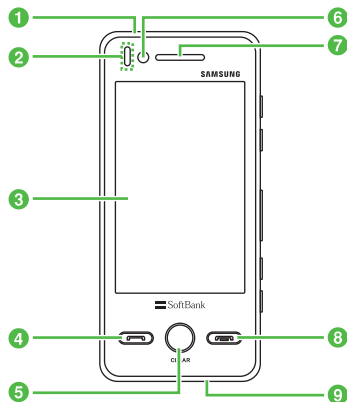


Parts & Functions	1-2
Handset	1-2
Display Indicators	1-3
Touch Panel	1-5
Tap	1-5
Scroll	1-5
Hold	1-5
Drag & Drop	1-5
Swipe	1-5
Touch Panel Operations	1-6
Motion Control	1-7
Motion Control Operations	1-7
USIM Card	1-7
Before Using USIM Card	1-7
Inserting & Removing USIM Card	1-8
Battery & Charger	1-9
Before Using Battery or Charger	1-9
Inserting & Removing Battery	1-10
Charge Battery	1-11
In-Car Charger (Optional)	1-12
Power On/Off	1-13
Power On	1-13
Power Off	1-14
Account Details	1-14
Viewing Account Details	1-14
Editing Account Details	1-15
Handling Precautions (Touch Panel & Key Lock)	1-15
Standby Window	1-16











Minding Mobile Manners	1-16
Offline Mode	1-16
Manner Mode	1-17
Changing Mode Settings	1-17
Default Mode Settings	1-17
Security Codes	1-21
Phone Password	1-21
Center Access Code	1-21
Network Password	1-21
PIN Code	1-21
Password for USIM Lock	1-22



Parts & Functions

Handset



- 1 External Light
Flashes for Missed Call or Incoming Call/ Mail; illuminates red while charging.
- 2 Optical Sensor
Measures ambient light for Display brightness; in-call object proximity.
- 3 Display
- 4 Start Key
Make and receive Voice Call.
- 5 Clear/Back Key
Return to previous operation step.
- 6 Internal Camera
Use for Facial recognition or Video Call.
- 7 Earpiece/Speaker
- 8 Power/End Key
Turn power on/off or end operations.
- 9 Microphone
- 10 External Antenna
Use for Digital TV reception.
- 11 Strap Eyelet
- 12 Earphone Microphone Port
Connect optional Earphone Conversion Cable here.
- 13 Charger/External Device Port
Connect Charger, PC, etc. here.

- 14  Memory Card Port
microSD™ Memory Card connect port.
- 15  Infrared Port
Use for infrared data transmissions.
- 16  Battery Cover
Remove to access Battery, or USIM/
Memory Card.
- 17  Mobile Light
Turn this on when capturing images.
- 18  External Camera
Capture images or send video during
Video Call.
- 19  Hold Key
Lock or unlock Touch Panel and buttons
of handset.
- 20  Manner Key
Press this for 1 + seconds to activate or
cancel Manner mode.
- 21  Internal Antenna
- 22  Camera Key
Press this for 2 + seconds to activate Camera.
Release shutter to capture images.
- 23  TV Key
Press this for 1 + seconds to activate TV.

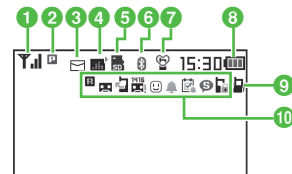
- 24  Side Key
Lower ringer, Media Player, or TV
volume.
- 25  Side Key
Raise ringer, Media Player, or TV volume.

















● Internal Antenna & Optical Sensor


Handset transmits/receives signals via Internal Antenna. There is no external antenna. Voice quality may vary by where/how handset is used. Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over the area containing Internal Antenna or Optical Sensor.


- Keep Optical Sensor clear of obstructions; may cause malfunctions.
- If using Protective Film, keep Optical Sensor area free of obstructions; may cause malfunction.

Display Indicators



- 1  Signal Strength (More bars  indicate stronger signal)
 -  Out-of-Range (**Language** set to Japanese)
 -  Out-of-Range (**Language** set to **English** or **한국어**)
 -  Offline Mode
- 2  3G Network Connected
 -  3G Network Connected (Ready)
 -  3G Network Connected (In Use)
 -  GSM Network Connected
 -  GSM Network Connected (Ready)
 -  GSM Network Connected (In Use)
 -  SSL Connected
 -  Packet Communication Unavailable
 -  Voice Call in Progress (flashes while making or receiving calls)
 -  Video Call in Progress (flashes while making or receiving calls)
 -  My status Online

- 3  New Message
-  Sending Mail
-  Receiving Mail
-  Activate Delivery Report
-  Memory Full (S! Mail/SMS)
-  Downloading Content Key
- 4  Music Playback
-  Music Paused
-  Recording TV program
-  Reservation Set
-  S! Appli
-  S! Appli Paused
-  S! Appli Activation Request
- 5  Memory Card Inserted
-  Read from/write on Memory Card
-  Software Update Required
-  PC Site Browser Connected
-  Unread S! Quick News
-  Unread S! Information Channels
-  All Keys Locked
- 6  Bluetooth® Activated
-  Bluetooth® Transmission
-  Bluetooth® Packet Data in Transmission
-  Headset Connected with Bluetooth® Activated
-  USB Connected
-  (Yellow) USB Connection
-  (Gray) Infrared Data Transmission Activated
-  (Red) Infrared Data in Transmission
-  Data Synchronized
- 7  Manner Mode
-  Drive Mode
-  Meeting Mode
-  Activity Mode
- 8  Battery Strong
-  Battery Moderate
-  Battery Low
-  Battery Weak (Charge Now)
-  (Flashing in Red) Battery Empty
- 9  Ringer and Vibration Activated for Incoming Call
-  Only Ringer Activated for Incoming Call
-  Only Vibration Activated for Incoming Call
-  Ringer and Vibration are Muted for Incoming Call
- 10  Roaming Activated
-  Answering Machine Activated
-  Unheard Answering Machine Message
-  Voicemail/Call Forwarding (**No reply**) Activated
-  Activate Voicemail
-  Unheard Voicemail
-  S! Friend's Status Request
-  Unread S! Friend's Status Notification
-  Alarm Set
-  Schedule Set
-  Schedule with Alarm Set
-  Tasks Set
-  Tasks with Alarm Set
-  Secret Mode Set
-  Password Locked

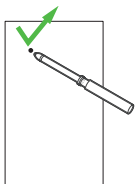
● When  (Red) appears, only Packet Communications and Outgoing S! Mail are available; Calls, Incoming S! Mail, and SMS Service are all disabled.

Touch Panel

Use Stylus to tap or scroll handset Touch Panel items. Some functions support rotating handset vertically or horizontally to change Display orientation. Using Touch Panel and conventions used in this guide are described here.

Tap

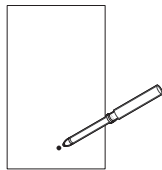
Lightly touch target item on Display. Select items to open or execute functions.



- In this guide, some tap operation procedures are abbreviated with arrows (➔ P.ii).

Hold

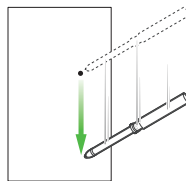
Touch and hold a Display item for 1 + seconds to activate/execute that item.



- In this guide, this operation appears as "touch and hold".

Swipe

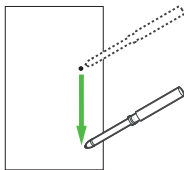
Place Stylus on Touch Panel and swipe it in the direction you want to move. Quickly open next/previous window/page.



- In this guide, this operation appears as "Swipe".

Scroll

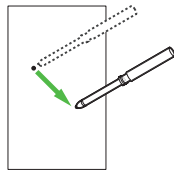
Gently slide Stylus across Touch Panel to scroll menus or Internet windows.



- In this guide, this operation appears as "scroll".

Drag & Drop

Touch and hold a Display item, move it to the target location (drag) and release it (drop).



- In this guide, this operation appears as "drag" or "drop".

Note

- Use bundled Stylus with Touch Panel. Finger use leaves fingerprints. Pens may affect Panel sensitivity. Do not apply force to Touch Panel; press gently and carefully.
- Tapping multiple functions simultaneously may cancel operations.
- Touch sensor may not function properly in high humidity or if handset is wet.
- Using protective film, etc. on Touch Panel may inhibit Sensor function.

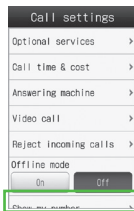
Touch Panel Operations

Use Touch Panel to perform these basic operations.

- Tap / to move to the previous or next item or image.

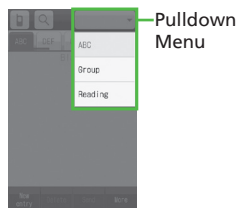


- Scroll down for more menu items, tabs or page area out of view in Mail, PC Site Browser, or File Viewer. Alternatively, when entering text or viewing messages or Internet pages, press / to scroll.

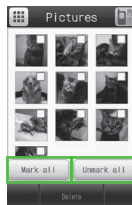


Content Beyond Display View

- Tap pull-down menu () for menu items.



- Tap **Mark all** to mark all item. Tap **Unmark all** to unmark all items.



The functions below support Display rotation. In this guide, instructions are for Portrait view operations.

- Image Viewer (P.12-4).
- PC Site Browser (P.5-4).
- Digital TV (P.6-1).
- Camera & Imaging (P.7-1).
- Media Player (P.8-4).
- File Viewer (P.10-11).

Advanced

Settings

- Set Auto Lock (P.14-3)
- Set Touch Panel tone volume level and vibration level for operating Touch Panel (P.14-3)
- Calibrate Touch Panel (P.14-3)

Motion Control

Shake or tilt handset to perform specific functions.

Motion Control Operations

Basic Motion Control operations and the conventions used in this guide are described here.

Shake

Shake handset right and left. Use to play games



- Use to play Dice (➔P.9-4).

Tilt

Tilt handset right and left.

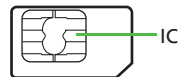


- Use to scroll Photo Album images (➔P.12-7).

USIM Card

Before Using USIM Card

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including handset number and limited storage for Phonebook entries and SMS. Install USIM Card to use handset; turn handset power off to insert/remove USIM Card.



USIM Card

Insert USIM Card into another compatible handset to access SMS and Phonebook entries saved on USIM Card. Note the following precautions regarding USIM Card usage and care (see USIM Card User Guide for details):

- Avoid using excessive force when inserting/removing USIM Card.
- SoftBank is not liable for damage resulting from inserting USIM Card into IC card readers or other third party devices.
- Always keep USIM Card IC chip clean.
- Clean USIM Card IC chip with a soft, dry cloth.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card; malfunction may result.

Note

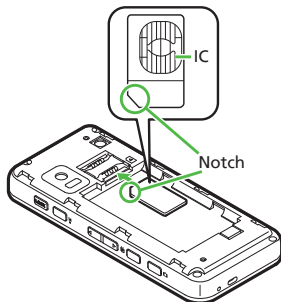
- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank.
- If USIM Card is lost or damaged, you will be charged for reissuing it.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank upon termination of subscription.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.
- If USIM Card or handset with USIM Card inserted is lost or stolen in Japan or abroad, immediately contact Customer Service (☎P.15-26) to suspend service.
- Handset/USIM Card repairs, replacement, or upgrades may deactivate Chaku-Uta®, Chaku-Uta Full® or video files on handset/Memory Card.
- Back-up USIM Card files. SoftBank is not liable for lost files.

Inserting & Removing USIM Card

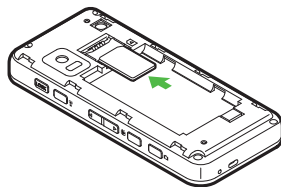
Always turn power off before opening handset to remove battery, or insert/remove USIM Card.

Inserting

- 1 Remove battery (☎P.1-11)
- 2 With IC chip down, insert USIM Card into card slot as shown in the illustration

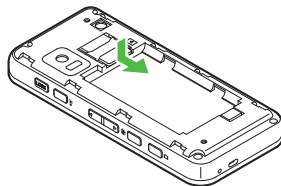


- 3 Push in USIM Card until it stops and locks



Removing

- 1 Remove battery (☎P.1-11)
- 2 Press down on USIM Card and gently slide it out



Note

- Inserting USIM Card with excessive force may damage it or handset.
- Do not misplace a removed USIM Card.
- To prevent damaging it, avoid touching the IC chip when inserting or removing USIM Card. Do not touch battery contacts.

Battery & Charger

Before Using Battery or Charger

Charge battery before first use of handset or after long periods of disuse.

Battery

- Long periods of disuse may affect battery's ability to hold a full charge. Charge battery at least once every six months while not in use. Otherwise, battery may become unusable.
- Depending on usage, bulges may appear near end of battery life; this does not affect safety.
- Handset uses a lithium-ion battery; charge battery in anytime without damaging its ability to hold a charge.
- Do not charge battery under the following conditions:
 - In ambient temperatures beyond 5°C - 40°C
 - In high levels of humidity, vibration or dust (May cause malfunction)
 - Near a radio receiver (May cause feedback)
- Handset or Charger may warm while charging. This is normal, however, should they become very hot to touch, stop charging and contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (☎P.15-26).

- Battery is a consumable; replace it if operating time shortens noticeably.

Note

- Use specified Charger only.
- Battery must be inside handset to charge.
- When not in use, unplug Charger from outlet.

Battery Life

Battery time/life may be reduced by any of the following:

- Environmental Factors
 - Storing/using handset beyond 5°C - 40°C
 - Using handset in poor signal conditions
 - Debris on handset, battery or Charger Port
- Operational Factors
 - Camera use
 - Media Player use
 - Heavy use (e.g., for using messaging)
 - Bluetooth® transmissions
 - Digital TV use
- Settings
 - Using Slide show
 - Increasing **Brightness** or **Backlight time**
 - Using Media Player with Backlight set to **Always On**

Battery Disposal

Do not dispose of exhausted batteries with ordinary refuse. Tape over battery terminals before disposal or take to a SoftBank shop. Follow any and all local regulations regarding battery disposal. Lithium-ion batteries are recyclable.

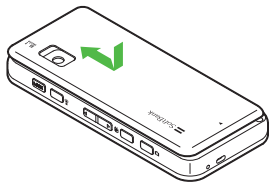
When Battery Runs Out

When battery is weak, a warning appears and handset beeps. Charge or replace battery; otherwise handset will automatically turn off.

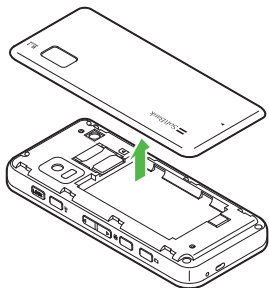
Inserting & Removing Battery

Inserting

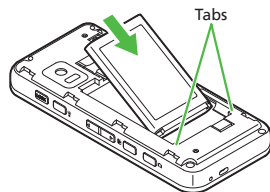
- 1 Press and slide Battery Cover as shown



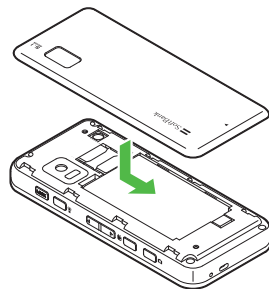
- 2 Remove Battery Cover



- 3 Fit battery into handset as shown



- 4 Replace Battery Cover



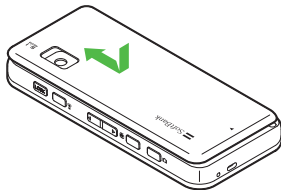
Note

- Gently insert battery to avoid damaging handset tabs.
- Without cover, battery may fall out. Attach Battery Cover before use.
- Strong impacts may damage Battery Cover.

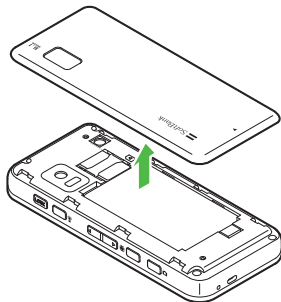
Removing

Always turn handset off before removing battery. Never remove battery while Charger is connected.

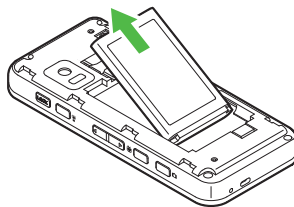
1 Press and slide Battery Cover as shown







2 Remove Battery Cover



3 Lift battery up and remove as shown



Charge Battery

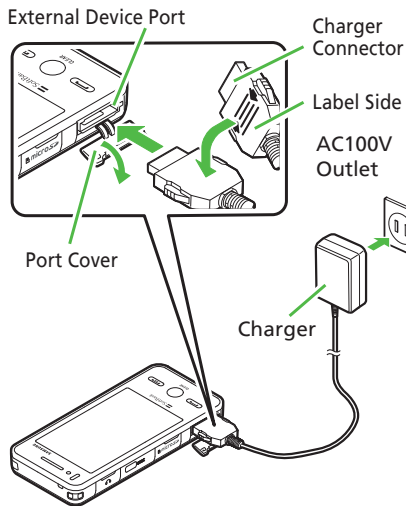
- If handset is on while Charger is connected, battery indicator shows charge level, charging as follows:  →  → .  flashes when battery is fully charged. If handset is off, **Charging...** appears while charging and when battery is charged, **Battery full** appears. External Light illuminates in red while charging.
- An empty battery requires 155 minutes (approx.) to charge with power off. Charging time may vary by ambient temperature.

AC Charger

- 1 Open Port Cover; with label down, insert Charger Connector into External Device Port

Note

- Make sure Charger Connector is label side down before inserting it.



- 2 Plug AC Charger into an AC 100V outlet
- 3 When battery is charged, disconnect handset, close Port Cover, and unplug AC Charger

USB Charge

Connect handset to PC via USB Cable to charge battery.

- 1 Open Port Cover; with label down, insert USB Cable Connector into External Device Port

Note

- Make sure Charger Connector is label side down before inserting it.

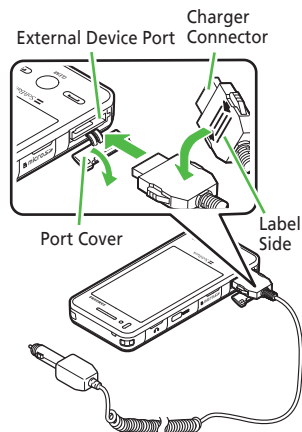
- 2 Insert USB Plug into PC USB port
- 3 When battery is charged, disconnect handset, close Port Cover, and remove USB Plug
 - USB charging takes longer; charging time varies by PC. A weak battery may not charge via USB.

In-Car Charger (Optional)

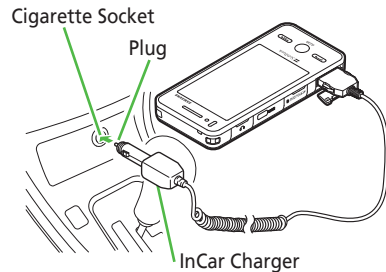
- 1 Open Port Cover; with label down, insert Charger Connector into External Device Port

Note

- Make sure Charger Connector is label side down before inserting it.

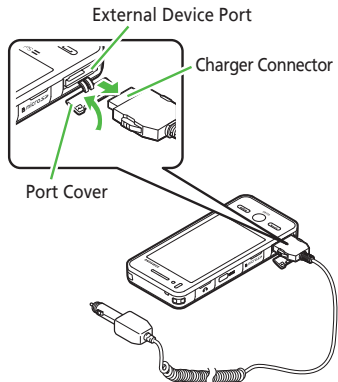


2 Plug InCar Charger into an Cigarette socket



3 Start engine

4 When battery is charged, disconnect handset, close Port Cover, and unplug InCar Charger



● If using InCar Charger, operations see the InCar Charger manual. To charge in vehicles, use in-car holder to lock the phone.

Note

- Avoid charging handset in extreme heat (Inside vehicles, etc.).
- InCar Charger only for vehicles with negative ground (12V/24V vehicles).

Power On/Off

Power On

1 Press until Display illuminates



Standby Window


- To confirm handset phone number, tap Phone → **Account details**. Your phone number appears in Account details. Edit or use contents (☞P.1-14).
- When handset is left open without operations, Display automatically shuts down to conserve power (☞P.14-5). In addition, by default, Key Lock is automatically activated when Display shuts down (☞P.1-15).
- The first time Messaging, Y! Keitai, etc. is tapped or a function requiring a network connection is activated, **Retrieve NW info** confirmation appears. Tap **Yes** and follow onscreen instructions.
 - **Retrieve NW info** confirmation appears after replacing USIM Card or executing **All reset**.
 - Retrieving Network Info sets date and time. Network Services (Messaging, Yahoo! Keitai, and S! Friend's Status) are available.
 - Retrieve Network Info manually (☞P.14-26).
 - This guide describes operations with date and time set unless noted otherwise.

Power Off

1 Press until Display goes dark

- SoftBank logo appears and handset powers off.

Note

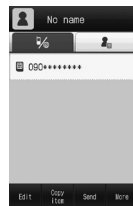
- For proper shut down, be sure to press  until Display goes dark.

Account Details

Save your name, E-mail address, blood type, and other information as Account Details.

Viewing Account Details

1 Tap Menu → **Phonebook** → **Account details**



- By default, only phone number is saved in Account details.
- Alternatively, in Standby, tap Phone → **Account details**

Editing Account Details

Example: save name, phone number, E-mail address

- See "Adding Information to Phonebook Entry" (➔P.2-21) to save other information.



- 1 Tap Menu → *Phonebook* → *Account details* → Tap Edit
- 2 Tap Name field
- 3 *Last name, First name, Reading last name or Reading first name*
→ Enter last name/first name/
reading → Tap OK
- 4 Tap Phone number 2 field →
Enter number → Tap OK

- 5 Tap E-mail address field →
Enter E-mail address → *Type*
→ *Private/Home/Work/Internet*
→ Tap OK

- 6 Tap Save
 - See "Text Entry" (➔P.2-7) to enter text.
 - By default, only contracted phone number is saved in the list of phone numbers.

Handling Precautions (Touch Panel & Key Lock)

Note these precautions when handling handset.

- Activate Key Lock before putting handset in a pocket.
- When carrying AC Charger, retract plug blades. Do not pull/twist power cord; doing so may damage it.

Use Key Lock to prevent accidental Touch Panel or key presses when carrying handset in a pocket or bag.

- 1 **LOCK**
 - Key Lock is activated.

- Key Lock can be activated while operating functions. However, some functions may not allow Key Lock during operation.
- Key Lock is activated during a call. To use handset during a call, cancel Key Lock.
- By default, when handset is left idle, Display shuts down and Key Lock is automatically activated. To cancel automatic Key Lock activation, set **Auto lock to Off** (➔P.11-4).
- To cancel key Lock, press **LOCK** for Key Lock guidance, then press **LOCK**.

Standby Window

Access handset applications via Shortcut Keys, Widgets or Toolbar (➔P.2-2). Set images saved in Data Folder as Wallpaper.

Minding Mobile Manners

Please take care not to disturb others when using handset.

- Turn your handset off in theaters, museums, and other places where silence is the norm.
- Keep your handset off aboard airplanes, inside hospitals, or in other places where handset use is prohibited.
- Refrain from using your handset in quiet places such as restaurants, hotel lobbies, or elevators.
- Observe announcements or posted instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from handset use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

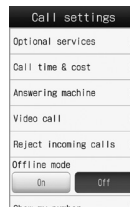
Handset offers two manner-related modes.

- **Offline mode**
Temporarily suspends all handset transmissions. Other functions may be used.
- **Manner mode**
Mute handset sounds and activate Vibration for all alerts, tones, and alarms. Use Manner Key to activate or cancel Manner mode. In addition to Manner, handset features Normal, Drive, Meeting and Outdoor as the set ringtone or operation sound.

- Activating Offline mode or Manner mode mutes ringer. Alternatively, set Ringtone volume or Vibration (➔P.14-3).

Offline Mode

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → Under *Offline mode*, *On or Off*





- Power off handset in Offline mode to Power on handset in Offline mode.

Manner Mode

Cancel settings for Manner mode from current setting mode with easy operations.

1 (1 + seconds)

- When Manner mode is active,  appears.
- Even if Manner mode is active, shutter click sounds for Camera.
- Press  for 1+ seconds to cancel Manner mode. Canceling Manner mode, returns handset to mode set before Manner was activated.






Changing Mode Settings

Handset features five modes, including Manner.

1

2 *Normal, Manner, Drive, Meeting, or Outdoor*

Select mode by usage; edit Normal mode or Manner mode settings as required (P.1-17).

Mode	Description
 Normal Mode*	All Sounds & Alerts settings apply
 Manner Mode	Mutes handset system sounds
 Drive Mode	Mutes ringer; plays Driving Message and activates Answering Machine for calls
 Meeting Mode	Mutes Ringtones & System sound
 Outdoor Mode	Maximizes tone volume

* Normal mode indicator does not appear in Standby.

Default Mode Settings

Default volume and ringtone settings vary by mode. Change incoming transmission response by mode. Available items vary by mode. See defaults below (P.14-6).

Item \ Mode	Normal	Manner	Drive	Meeting	Outdoor
Volume					
Voice call	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Level 0	Level 5
Video call	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Level 0	Level 5
Message	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Level 0	Level 5
S! Friend's Status	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Level 0	Level 5
Missed call notif.	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Level 0	Level 5
S! Quick News	Level 0	N/A	N/A	Level 0	Level 0
Delivery report	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Level 0	Level 5
System sounds	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Level 0	Level 5
Ringtone (Upper: Ringtone, Lower: Duration)					
Voice call	Young hopefuls.mp4	N/A	N/A	Young hopefuls.mp4	Young hopefuls.mp4
Video call	Samsung Tune.mp4	N/A	N/A	Samsung Tune.mp4	Samsung Tune.mp4
Message	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds	N/A	N/A	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds
S! Friend's Status	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds	N/A	N/A	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds
Missed call notif.	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds	N/A	N/A	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds
S! Quick News	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds	N/A	N/A	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds
Delivery report	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds	N/A	N/A	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds

Item \ Mode	Normal	Manner	Drive	Meeting	Outdoor
Vibration					
Voice call	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
Video call	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
Message	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
S! Friend's Status	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
Missed call notif.	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
S! Quick News	Off	Off	N/A	Off	Off
Delivery report	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
System sounds	Popup box alerts/Call end tone/Alerts on call	Alerts on call	N/A	Alerts on call	Popup box alerts/Call end tone/Alerts on call
Incoming light					
Voice call	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
Video call	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
Message	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
S! Friend's Status	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
Missed call notif.	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
S! Quick News	Off	Off	Off	Off	Off
Alarms	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
Delivery report	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green

Item \ Mode	Normal	Manner	Drive	Meeting	Outdoor
Notification light					
Missed call	Blue	Blue	Blue	Blue	Blue
Message	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
Answering machine	White	White	White	White	White
S! Friend's Status	Light Blue	Light Blue	Light Blue	Light Blue	Light Blue
Missed call notif.	Blue	Blue	Blue	Blue	Blue
Missed alarm	Pink	Pink	Pink	Pink	Pink
Delivery report	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
Answering machine	Off	On	N/A*	Off	Off

* Answering machine activates automatically in Drive mode and cannot be disabled.

Security Codes

Phone Password, Center Access Code and Network Password are required to use handset.

Phone Password

The 4-digit number (9999 by default) is required to operate/change some handset functions.

- Entered Phone Password digits are represented with *.
- If incorrect, an error message appears. Try again.
- Phone Password can be changed on handset (☎P.11-3).

Center Access Code

4-digit number specified at subscription; required to change service subscriptions or optional services to operate handset from landlines.

Network Password

4-digit number specified at subscription, required to restrict handset services. Entering incorrect Network Password 3 consecutive times locks Call Barring settings. To resolve, Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (☎P.15-26).

- Network Password can be changed on handset (☎P.3-21).

Note

- Write down Phone Password, Center Access Code, and Network Password. If you lose a code, contact Customer Service (☎P.15-26).
- Do not reveal Phone Password, Center Access Code, or Network Password to others. SoftBank is not liable for damage caused by misuse of these codes by others.

PIN Code

USIM Card features 2 security codes: PIN and PIN2.

PIN Code

Use PIN (4- to 8-digit) to prevent unauthorized use of handset by others.

- Modify PIN (☎P.11-3).
- When PIN Lock is activated, PIN entry is required each time handset is turned on or whenever USIM Card is re-inserted (☎P.11-4).

PIN2 Code

PIN2 (4- to 8-digit) is required for resetting *Call time & cost* or editing *Set max cost limit*, etc.

- Modify PIN2 (☎P.11-3).

Canceling PIN Lock (PUK/PUK2 Code)

Incorrectly entering PIN or PIN2 three consecutive times activates PIN Lock and limits handset function access. Enter PUK (PIN Unlocking Key) Code to cancel PIN Lock.

For more information, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (☎P.15-26).

Note

- Entering PUK or PUK2 incorrectly ten consecutive times locks USIM Card and deactivates handset. Take a note of PUK and PUK2.
- A locked USIM Card cannot be unlocked. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (☎P.15-26).

Password for USIM Lock

USIM Password is dedicated to USIM Card authentication. If USIM Password matches, another USIM Card can be used in handset. Change USIM Password each time **USIM lock** is set to **On**.

Basic Operations



Accessing Functions	2-2
Using Toolbar	2-2
Using Widgets	2-2
Using Main Menu	2-3
Using Shortcut Keys in Standby	2-3
Incoming Settings	2-4
Changing Volume	2-4
Changing Ringtone	2-4
Setting Vibration	2-4
Standby Display Options	2-5
Wallpaper	2-5
Slide Show	2-5
Widgets	2-6
Window Operations	2-6
Text Entry	2-7
Text Entry Window	2-7
Text Entry Flow	2-8
Changing Entry Methods	2-8
Changing Entry Mode	2-9
Kana/Kanji	2-9
Kana/Alphabet/Number	2-10
Symbol	2-10
Pictograms/Emoticons	2-11
Line Break	2-11
Entering Space	2-11
Hangul	2-12
Using Quick Address List	2-13
Deleting/Editing	2-13
User's Dictionary	2-14
Editing User's Dictionary	2-14
Saving to User's Dictionary	2-14

Phonebook	2-15
Phonebook Window	2-16
Creating New Entries	2-17
Entry Search	2-18
Calling from Phonebook	2-19
Deleting Phone Book Entries	2-20
Advanced Settings	2-20
Standby	2-20
Text Entry	2-21
User's Dictionary	2-21
Phone Book	2-21

Accessing Functions

Use any of these methods to access handset applications:

- Toolbar
- Widgets
- Main Menu
- Shortcut Keys

Using Toolbar

Select **Phone**, **Messaging**, **Y!Keitai** or **Menu** in Standby. Frequently used functions/settings (e.g., **Select** or **Save**) appear in Toolbar. Items and numbers vary by menu or function. If **More** appears in Toolbar, tap to see more items. Tap an item in Toolbar to execute it.



Toolbar








Using Widgets

Tap Widget Bar or Standby Widgets to select functions or use them in Standby. Choose from two styles for Widget Display; set different Widget layouts for each. See "Place Widget onto Standby" (➔P.9-16) for details.



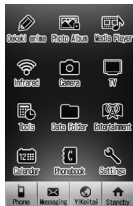
Standby Widgets (default)

Following Widgets appear in Standby by default:

Package/Widget	Function
A Package	
	S-1 battle (➔P.9-15)
	Content Value Package (➔P.9-15)
	Simple Select Video (➔P.9-15)
	S! Quick News (➔P.9-18)
B Package	
	S! Appli (➔P.9-3)
	Oekaki anime (➔P.7-12)
	Top 3 (➔P.9-20)

Using Main Menu

1 In Standby, tap Menu



Main Menu

2 Tap an item

3 Repeat Step 2 to select target function

Example: Selecting *Wallpaper Setting* → *Display settings* → *Wallpaper*



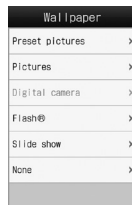
Tap Settings






Tap Display settings



Tap Wallpaper













Wallpaper menu appears

- Press  to return to the previous operation step.
- Press  to exit menu. Handset returns to Standby. If multiple functions are active, active window appears.
- Press  to cancel menu. Handset returns to Standby or previous window. In some menus, a confirmation appears.

Using Shortcut Keys in Standby

Press Shortcut key in Standby to activate corresponding function.

Key	Corresponding Menu/Function
	Open Call log (Dialed)
 (1 + seconds)	Open Recordings list
	Activate/Cancel Key Lock
	Select Manner mode
 (1 + seconds)	Toggle Manner mode On/Off
	Adjust Earpiece volume
 (2 + seconds)	Activating Dummy Call (Set by side key (down))
	Open TV Menu
 (1 + seconds)	Activate TV
 (2 + seconds)	Activate Camera

Incoming Settings

Adjust Volume, Ringtone and Vibration settings. Use ringtone/vibration pattern to identify caller.

Changing Volume

Adjust Ringtone volume in 6 levels: 0 (mute) - 5.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Sound settings* → *Volume*

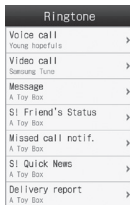


- 2 Tap **+**, **-** or move slider (**3**) to adjust volume

Changing Ringtone

Besides presets, get Ring Songs, Music, Videos, or Flash® ringtones via the Internet for handset use.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Sound settings* → *Ringtone*



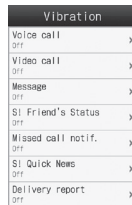
- 2 Select incoming type
- 3 Select Ringtone type
- 4 Select Ringtone file

Tap **▶** after file name to play sample.

Setting Vibration

Select vibration pattern from seven options: *Off*, *Pattern 1 to Pattern 5*, and *Link to sound*.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Sound settings* → *Vibration*



- 2 Select incoming type
- 3 Select Vibration

■ To cancel Vibration
Off

■ To select a vibration pattern
Pattern1 to pattern5

■ To link Vibration to Ringtone
Link to sound

Tap **▶** after file name to play sample.

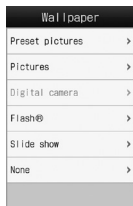
Standby Display Options

Set pictures, Flash®, or Slide show as Wallpaper in Standby.

Wallpaper

Set still image, animation or Slide show to appear in Standby. Alternatively, set *Wallpaper* to *None*

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Wallpaper*



2 Set Wallpaper

To set an image in Data Folder

Select a file location → Select a file → Tap Set

To set Slide show

Slide show → (P.2-5 Slide Show 2)

To set none

None

Slide Show

Set up to nine images to appear in sequence in Standby.

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Wallpaper* → *Slide show*



2 Add still images

To add images one by one

Select a part where no still image is assigned to → Select a file location → Select a still image

To add images at once

Tap Set multiple → Select a file location → Check still images to add → Tap OK

3 Edit Slide show

To preview

Tap Preview → *Yes* (Fit to screen) or *No* (Original proportion)

To set effect

Tap *Settings* tab → *Effect* → Select an item

To change transmission time for a still image

Tap *Settings* tab → *Transition time* → Select time

4 Tap Save → *Yes* (Fit to screen) or *No* (Original proportion)

To adjust slide size

To fit image to Display, choose *Yes* in Step 4. For original proportion, choose *No*.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (P.2-20)

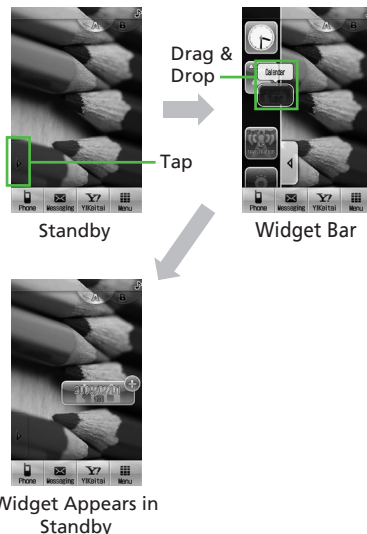
- Enlarging and Viewing Still Image
- Rotating Still Images

Widgets

Add various applications to Standby Display to access/activate information/functions quickly.

Registerable Functions	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Analog Clock • Digital Clock • Dual Clock • Calendar • Tasks • Alarm • Memo(Yellow) • Memo(Blue) • Memo(Red) • Countdown timer • Light • Wallpaper • S! Information Channel • S! Friend's Status • S! Quick News • Top3 • Mini player • Oekaki anime • Photo Album • Music Player • Movie Player • Data Folder • Camera • TV • S! Appli • Near Chat 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • BookSurfing • Biorhythm • Number Place World • Pangya • Hidden Catch4 • Dice • RandomBall • S! Mail • Notepad • Voice recorder • Calculator • Converter • Stopwatch • Dictionary • Bluetooth • Infrared • Phonebook • Bookmark (Y! Keitai) • S-1 BATTLE • Content Value Package • Simple Select Video • Bookmark (PC Site Browser) • Settings • Widget setting

- Drag and drop Widgets between Widget Bar and Standby.
- To select Widget Bar items, see "Adding Widget Item" (P.9-13) for details.



Window Operations

Widgets appear in Widget Bar. Scroll Widget Bar for more Widgets.



Text Entry

Tap or write with stylus to enter Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana (single-/double-byte), alphanumerics (single-/double-byte), symbols (single-/double-byte), pictograms, emoticons or Hangul.

Icon	Entry Mode	Icon	Entry Mode
	Kanji or Hiragana (double-byte) (☞P.2-9)		Symbols (double-byte) (☞P.2-10)
	Katakana (double-byte) (☞P.2-10)		Symbols (single-byte) (☞P.2-10)
	Katakana (single-byte) (☞P.2-10)		Pictograms (☞P.2-11)
	Alphanumerics (double-byte) (☞P.2-10)		Emoticons (☞P.2-11)
	Alphanumerics (single-byte) (☞P.2-10)		Hangul (☞P.2-12)
	Number (double-byte) (☞P.2-10)		Alphanumerics (double-byte, lower case) (☞P.2-10)

Icon	Entry Mode	Icon	Entry Mode
	Number (single-byte) (☞P.2-10)		Alphanumerics (single-byte, lower case) (☞P.2-10)

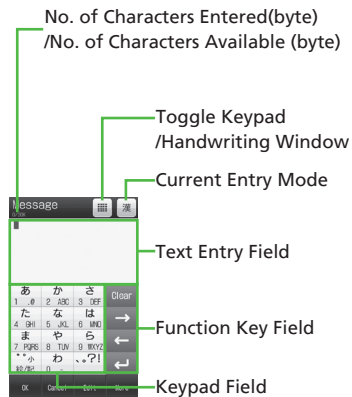
See "Changing Entry Mode" (☞P.2-9) about toggling Entry Mode.

Text Entry Window

Use Keypad or Handwriting to enter text. To toggle Entry Mode, see "Changing Entry Methods" (☞P.2-8)

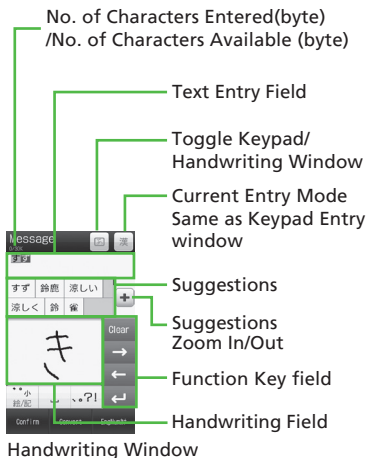
Text Entry with Keypad

Tap Keypad Entry Window.



Text Entry with Handwriting

Enter characters in Handwriting window directly.



Suggestions



* Suggestions do not appear in Katakana, alphanumeric, and number input modes. If **Prediction** is set to **Off** in 漢かな input mode, suggestions appear when Convert or EngNum カナ is tapped.

- For Date field in Day and Time or Time field in Alarm which can only enter numbers, Number keys, **Clear**, **←** / **→** appears.
- When Voice Call or Video Call arrives while entering text, simply answer the call. When the call ends, text entry window returns. When Alarm is activated, end Alarm to return to text entry window.

Text Entry Flow

Select entry method → Select Text entry mode → Enter text → Suggestion → Select suggestion.

Changing Entry Methods

Toggle Keypad/Handwriting. Status may limit entry method.

1 In text entry window,



2 Select text entry methods from *Keypad* or *Handwriting*











Changing Entry Mode

Toggle text entry mode: Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana (single-/double-byte), alphanumeric (single-/double-byte), symbols (single-/double-byte), pictograms, emoticons or Hangul.

1 In text entry window,



2 Select entry mode to switch

• In text entry window, tap  to show  /  /  / . Tap  /  for Symbols,  /  for Pictograms, or  for Emoticons.

Kana/Kanji

Use predictive entry to convert and enter characters. Alternatively, convert entered hiragana directly. Katakana or pictograms may appear in Suggestions. Example: Enter "鈴木"

Using Keypad


1 Changing to *Keypad* (⊖P.2-8)

2 → 漢かな

3 Tap 3 times

- "す" is entered.

4

- To enter same character continuously, tap  to move cursor to the right.

5 Tap 3 times →

- "ず" is entered.

6 Tap twice



- "き" is entered.

7 Tap "鈴木"

Using Handwriting

Enter text in Handwriting mode.












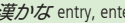
1 Change to *Handwriting* (⊖P.2-8)

2 → 漢かな



3 In Handwriting field, enter "す", "ず" and "き" continuously

















4 Tap "鈴木"

- After entering hiragana, tap  to add ` or `.
- After entering hiragana, tap  to toggle size.
- Tap  or press  to cancel a misentry.
- If you over-toggle target character, press  /  to toggle in reverse.
- To set as Hiragana, tap Confirm.
- If no suggestions appear, tap Convert →  /  to change conversion range → tap target conversion alternatives → repeat steps for other characters.
- If many suggestions appear, tap  to expand Suggestions. To restore default size, tap .
- If conversion fails, try another reading. For multiple Kanji words, try converting characters separately.
- While suggestions appear, tap Convert for conversion alternatives. While conversion alternatives appear, tap Predict to return to Suggestions.
- Kanji cannot be entered directly in Handwriting.
- In Handwriting mode, suggestions appear in Function field. If a character is mistakenly converted, select correction from Suggestions. Tap  to close Suggestions.
- In Handwriting mode,  entry, entering other non-Hiragana, yields most similar Hiragana.


Kana/Alphabet/Number

- 1 In text entry window,  →  → カナ / 加 / Ab / Ab / 12 / 12
- 2 Tap Keypad and enter target Kana/Alphabet/Number to use




- After entering katakana, tap  to add ` or `.
- After entering katakana, tap  to toggle case.
- In Alphabet entry mode (, , , ), enter a letter then tap  to toggle case.
- Tap  or press  to cancel a misentry.
- If you over-toggle target character, press  /  to toggle in reverse.
- To enter same character continuously, tap  to move the cursor to the right.
- In Kanji/Kana entry mode, enter characters and tap EngNum  to toggle katakana/alphanumerics/numbers entry mode.
Example: Enter " くも " and tap EngNum  .
くモ , C, or 2227777 appears in Suggestions.
- In Handwriting mode, any characters written in the field will be recognized as one of the characters within the specified entry mode.

Symbol

Alternatively, enter symbols such as \ or ! (☞P.15-11).

- 1 In text entry window,  → 



- Switch text entry mode from  →  / .
- Tap Prev. page/Next page until target symbol appears.

- 2 Select target character

- Enter symbols continuously. To cancel symbol entry, tap Keypad.

- Once entered symbols remain as history and appear in Suggestions at first.
- In Kanji/Kana entry mode, enter characters and tap Convert to convert to symbols.
Example: Enter " てん " and tap Convert, ". " or "... " appear among Suggestions.

Pictograms/Emoticons

Enter not only Pictograms but also Emoticons by combine symbols (P.15-11).



1 In text entry window, → Pictogram/Emoticon



- Tap  →  /  /  to switch text entry mode.
- Tap Prev. page/Next page until the target pictogram or emoticons appears.

2 Select target pictogram/ emotion

- You can continuously enter pictograms and emoticons. To stop entering pictograms or emoticons, tap Keypad.

- Select  in message text entry window/subject entry window only. Select  when using Pict General.
- Once entered pictograms remain as history and appear in Suggestions at first.
- In Kanji/Kana entry mode, enter " はーと ", " でんわ " and convert to pictograms. Similarly, " わーい " or " えーん " can be converted to emoticons.

Line Break

Use these steps to enter line break in any entry mode.

1 In text entry window, ←



- Line breaks cannot be inserted in some entry windows (e.g., Subject window in Messaging).

Entering Space

Entering Space varies by Entry Mode.

漢かな / カナ / かな



- 1 Tap  ( / ) 5 times
- 2 Tap Confirm

A b /Ab



- 1 Tap 

記 / 記半




- 1 Tap Prev. page/Next page and tap 


Hangul



- 1 Tap  3 times

- When Entry Mode is *1 2 / 1 2 / Pictogram / Emoticon*, toggle the above Entry Mode and enter.
- When the cursor is in the end of a sentence, entering space with  is also available.

Hangul

- 1 In text entry window,  → *Hangul*



- 2 Tap Keypad Enter characters
 - Tap number keys to enter assigned character units that appear; combine several consonants and vowels.

Consonant Example (Key assignment)	
ㄱ	ㄱ (once)
ㅋ	ㄱ (twice)
ㆁ	ㄱ (three times)
Vowel Example (Key assignment)	
ㅏ	ㅏ .
ㅑ	ㅏ . .
ㅓ	ㅏ .
ㅕ	ㅏ . .
ㅗ	ㅏ . -
ㅛ	ㅏ . . -
ㅜ	ㅏ . - .

- Hangul appears in received S! Mail, however Hangul cannot be entered to reply or forward S! Mail.

Using Quick Address List

Save mail addresses/URLs for easy entry.

- 1 In mail address or URL entry window or field, tap More → *Insert* → *Quick address list*



- 2 Select target mail address/URL

Deleting/Editing

- 1 Move cursor to character to delete, and
 - Alternatively, press .

- When a space is highlighted, the character before cursor is deleted.
- To delete all characters after cursor, touch and hold or press for 1 + seconds. If there are no characters after cursor, all characters are deleted.
- Press for text entry window exit confirmation.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (P.2-21)

- Specifying Range to Copy/Cut
- Pasting Copied or Cut Text
- Undoing Text Entry
- Enlarging Enter Text Field

User's Dictionary

Save frequently used words/phrases of up to 20 characters; entries appear in Suggestions when Reading is entered.

Editing User's Dictionary

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *User's dictionary* → Tap Add new
- 2 Tap Word field → Enter word or sentence → Tap OK
- 3 Tap Reading field → Enter reading → Tap OK



- 4 Tap Save

Saving to User's Dictionary

- 1 In text entry window, tap More → *Add to dictionary*
- 2 Tap the first letter of adding character → tap Start point
- 3 Tap the last letter of adding character → tap End point



- 4 Tap Reading field → Enter text → Tap OK
- 5 Tap Save

- If selecting the range which includes a line break, character strings before the line break are saved.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (☰ P.2-21)

- Deleting Entries from User's Dictionary

Settings

- Save entries to User's Dictionary (☰ P.14-2)
- Edit User's Dictionary entries (☰ P.14-2)
- Delete User's Dictionary entries (☰ P.14-3)

Phonebook

Create up to 1,000 entries. Number of savable items per entry varies by USIM Card. Insert USIM Card into compatible SoftBank handsets to access USIM Card entries. Each entry contains these items:

Item/Description	Location
Last name	
Double/single-byte (Saved as "Name" in USIM Card Phonebook)	Handset: Yes (up to 50 byte) USIM Card: Yes ¹
First name	
Double/single-byte (Saved as "Name" in USIM Card Phonebook)	Handset: Yes (up to 50 byte) USIM Card: Yes ¹
Reading last name	
Single-byte (Saved as "Name" in USIM Card Phonebook)	Handset: Yes (up to 50 byte) USIM Card: Yes ¹
Reading first name	
Single-byte (Saved as "Name" in USIM Card Phonebook)	Handset: Yes (up to 50 byte) USIM Card: Yes ¹

Item/Description	Location
Phone number	
Saved with area code	Handset: Yes (5 entries/up to 32 byte) USIM Card: Yes ^{1,2}
Phone icon	
Select one of seven icons	Handset: Yes USIM Card: Yes ³
E-mail address	
Single-byte alphanumerics	Handset: Yes (5 entries/up to 128 byte) USIM Card: Yes ¹ (1 entry)
E-mail address icon	
Select one of four icons	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No (1 icon)
Picture	
Still image appears for incoming calls Select a Data Folder image or capture with Camera	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No

Item/Description	Location
Ringtone	
Voice Call/Video Call/ Messages/S! Friend's Status Selectable from Data Folder	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No
Vibration	
Set vibration for all incoming transmissions	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No
Group	
Select from original 5 groups including "NO group", and added group. Maximum 16 groups can be added.	Handset: Yes USIM Card: Yes ²
Secret mode	
On/Off	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No
Birthday	
Date of birth	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No
Blood type	
Select one of four types or None	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No

Item/Description	Location
Company	
Enter up to 64 bytes	Handset: Yes
	USIM Card: No
Job title	
Enter up to 64 bytes	Handset: Yes
	USIM Card: No
Address	
Post code (40 bytes), Country (64 bytes), Province, City, Street and Additional information (128 bytes)	Handset: Yes (2 entries)
	USIM Card: No
Address icon	
Select one of two icons	Handset: Yes
	USIM Card: No
Homepage	
Enter up to 1,024 bytes	Handset: Yes (2 entries)
	USIM Card: No
Homepage icon	
Select one of two icons	Handset: Yes
	USIM Card: No

Item/Description	Location
Memo	
Enter up to 512 byte	Handset: Yes
	USIM Card: No

- 1 Number of savable characters varies by USIM Card.
- 2 Number of savable items varies by USIM Card.
- 3 Savable icon types vary by USIM Card.

● If different USIM Card (with saved entries) is inserted, copy saved USIM entries to handset confirmation appears when handset is first powered on. Choose **Yes** to copy entries.

Note

- Protect Important Information
Phonebook entries may be lost/alterd if battery is removed or left uncharged for an extended period; accidents/malfunctions may also affect entries. Back-up entries and store separately. SoftBank is not liable for damage from lost information.


Phonebook Window

Phonebook entries (P.2-15) are divided into three tabs. Tap Tabs to view desired information.

1 Each Phonebook Tab contains items listed below



Tab	Item
☎	Phone number 1
	E-mail address 1
👤	Group
	Birthday
	Blood type
	Address 1
	Homepage 1
	Company
	Job title
	Memo

Tab	Item
	Secret mode
	Tone : Voice call
	Tone : Video call
	Tone : Message
	Tone : S! Friend's Status
	Vibe : Voice call
	Vibe : Video call
	Vibe : Message
	Vibe : S! Friend's Status

Creating New Entries

Save to Phone or USIM Card.

Default data location for Phonebook is **Phone**. Set to USIM Card as required (P.14-11).

Create new entry or save from Call Log record.

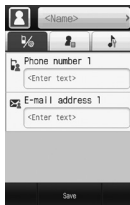
Saving Phonebook as a New Entry

Create new entry; save Name, Reading, Phone Number, and E-mail Address.

- For other items, see "Adding Information to Phonebook Entry" (P.2-21).

1 Tap Phone → *Phone book* → Tap New entry

- If Save setting (P.14-11) is set to *Ask each time*, a message appears to prompt you to specify a saving location. Choose **Phone** or **USIM**.



New Entry
Details

2 Tap Name field

3 *Last name, First name, Reading last name or Reading first name* → Enter last name/first name/reading → Tap OK → Tap OK

4 Tap Add phone number field → Enter number → Tap OK → Tap Type field → Select types of phone number → Tap OK

5 Tap Add E-mail address field → Enter E-mail address → Tap OK → Tap Type field → Select types of E-mail address → Tap OK

6 Tap Save

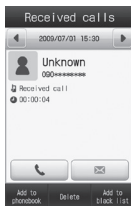
- 0 through 9, #, *, -, P (Pause), and + (International Code) can be registered to enter in phone number field. Tap **P.X** to toggle *, -, and P. Touch and hold **-0** to enter +.
- If a Memory Card file is selected for Incoming Image or Ringtone, copy file to handset confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move file to handset first confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to complete setting.
- When using Samsung New PC Studio to synchronize Phonebook entries with a PC, Secret entries are not synchronized to PC. If an entry is changed to a Secret entry, it can no longer be synchronized and is deleted from PC. Samsung New PC Studio is available for download from SAMSUNG Website (<http://jp.samsungmobile.com/pc/lineup/931download.html>).

Saving Entries from Call Log Records

Save numbers in Call Log records to new or existing Phonebook entries.

- 1  / Tap **Phone** and **Call Log** (for Phone Only)

- 2 Tap a record



- 3 Tap **Add to entry**

- If save setting (☺P.14-11) is set to ask each time, a message appears to prompt you to specify a saving location. Tap **Phone/USIM**.

- 4 Select saving method

■ To save as a new entry

New → (☺P.2-17 Creating New Entries 2)

■ To update existing entry

Update → Search and select an entry (☺P.2-18)
→ Save a number to Phonebook (☺P.2-17)

Entry Search

Use **ABC/Group/Reading** to search Phonebook entries.

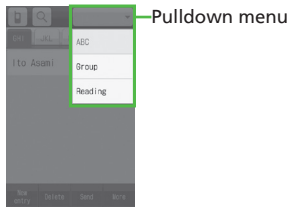
- 1 Tap **Phone** → **Phone book**



Phonebook List

- 2 Tap  /  /  to switch to search field (☺P.2-23)

- 3 Tap the pull down menu for search methods



4 ABC/Group/Reading

- Selected search method is saved.

5 Searching Phonebook

To search by ABC

Tap target tab **ABC** ~ **XYZ** / **あお** / **ひふ** / **ろ** / **123**

/ **あ** → Select target entry
- Alternatively, tap **Q** and enter first part of reading in text field.

To search by group

Select a group → View target Phonebook entry from search result
- Alternatively, after selecting a group, tap **Q** and enter first part of reading in text field.

To search by reading

View target Phonebook entry from search result
- Alternatively, tap **Q** and enter first part of reading in text field.




Entry Details

- If Secret mode is set to **Hide**, secret Phonebook entries do not appear. In Phonebook search window, tap More → **Unlock temporarily** → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK to see secret entries.

Calling from Phonebook

1 Search/select Phonebook entry (☞P.2-18). In Entry Details,

- If Phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, tap  beside target number.



2 Make a call

To make a Voice Call

Voice call

To make a Video Call


Video call

To make an international call

International call (☞P.3-22 Making International Calls from Japan)

To make a call before editing number

Copy to dial → Edit selected phone number → Tap Call/Video call

- In Phonebook list, tap  beside target entry for voice call. If multiple numbers are saved for that entry, number selection window appears.

Deleting Phone Book Entries

1 Tap Phone → *Phone book* → Tap Delete

2 Delete entries

■ To delete an Entry

- For handset or USIM Card Phonebook
Check entries to delete → Tap Delete
→ *Yes*

- For both handset and USIM Card
Phonebook

Each entry → Tap Phonebook to delete
→ *Yes*

■ To delete all entries

- For handset or USIM Card Phonebook
Mark all → Tap Delete → Enter Phone
Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

- For both handset and USIM Card
Phonebook

All entries → *Phone*, *USIM* or *Phone
& USIM* → Enter Phone Password
→ Tap OK → *Yes*

- Alternatively, in Entry Details window, tap More
→ *Delete* → *Yes*.

Advanced

⚙️ Advanced Settings (☎️ P.2-21)

- Adding Information to Phonebook Entry
- Sending Phonebook as vFile
- Specifying Saving Destination for Phonebook
Entries
- Viewing USIM Card Service Number
- Canceling Phonebook Secret Mode Temporarily
- Editing Phonebook
- Copy Item
- Adding Phonebook Entry to Favorites
- Adding S! Friend's Status Member from Phonebook
- Deleting Entries from User's Dictionary
- Creating and Saving vFiles
- Printing Phonebook Details via Bluetooth®
- Enter and Save Phone Number

⚙️ Settings

- Select Phonebook Save Location (☎️ P.14-11)
- Change Phonebook preference (Phone/USIM)
(☎️ P.14-11)
- Change Search Method (☎️ P.14-11)
- Copy all records of Phonebook and save on
handset and USIM Card (☎️ P.14-11)

Advanced Settings

⚙️ Advanced Settings



Standby

Enlarging and Viewing Still Image

Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Wallpaper*
→ Select a file location → Select a file → Tap Zoom
→  or  to adjust zoom level → Tap Set

- To restore default view, tap Undo.

Rotating Still Images

Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Display settings*
→ *Wallpaper* → Select a file location → Select
a file → Tap Rotate →  or  → Tap Set

- To restore the default, tap Undo.

Editing Slide Show

Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Display settings* →
Wallpaper → *Slide show*

■ To replace image

Select image to change → *Replace* → Select a file
location → Select an image → Tap Save → *Yes* or *No*

■ To change image order

Tap Change order → Drag image to desired
position → Tap OK → Tap Save → *Yes* or *No*

■ To delete image

Select image to delete → *Reset* → *Yes*
→ Tap Save → *Yes* or *No*

- Choose *Yes* to fit image to Display, or *No* for
original proportion.

Text Entry

Specifying Range to Copy/Cut

In text entry window, tap Edit → **Copy** or **Cut** → Tap the first character of the range to cut/copy and tap Start point → Tap the last character to specify the range → Tap End point

- To copy or cut all text in text entry window, tap All.
- Copied or cut text remains even after powering off.

Pasting Copied or Cut Text

In text entry window, move cursor to the position to paste → Tap Edit → **Paste**

Undoing Text Entry

In text entry window, tap Edit → **Undo**

- In Kanji/Kana entry mode, undo operations immediately after performing **Cut**, **Paste**, or **Delete**. Undoing conversion is also available.

Enlarging Enter Text Field

In text entry window, tap Edit → **Hide Keypad**

User's Dictionary

Deleting Entries from User's Dictionary

Tap Menu → **Settings** → **Phone settings** → **User's dictionary** → Tap Delete → Check entries to delete → Tap Delete → **Yes**

- If **Mark all** is selected, Tap Delete → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → **Yes**.

Resetting User's Dictionary

In text entry window, tap More → **Conversion** → **Reset learning** → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → **Yes**.

Phone Book


Adding Information to Phonebook Entry

Tap Phone → **Phone book** → Tap New entry


To save Group

 → Tap Group field → Select an item → Tap Save


To save Birthday

 → Tap Birthday field → Enter Birthday → Tap Save


To save Blood type

 → Tap Blood type field → Select an item → Tap Save


To save Address

 → Tap Address field → Tap Type field → **Private/Business** → Tap Zip code field → Enter Zip code → Tap OK → Tap Country field → Enter Country name → Tap OK → Tap Province field → Enter Province name → Tap OK → Tap City field → Enter City name → Tap OK → Tap Street field → Enter Street name → Tap OK → Tap Additional info field → Enter Additional information → Tap OK → Tap OK → Tap Save

To save URL

 → Tap Homepage field → Enter URL → Tap OK → Tap Type field → **Private/Business** → Tap OK → Tap Save


To save Company

 → Tap Company field → Enter Company → Tap OK → Tap Save

To save Job title

 → Tap Job title field → Enter Job title → Tap OK → Tap Save

To save Memo

 → Tap Memo field → Enter Memo → Tap OK → Tap Save

To set Secret mode

 → *On* or *Off* → Tap Save

- Items other than Group are unavailable in USIM Card Phonebook.

Setting Incoming Image to Phonebook Entry

Tap Phone → **Phone book** → Tap New entry → 
Or Search Phonebook (ⓄP.2-18) → Tap Edit → 

To set from saved still image

Pictures → Select a file → Tap Save

- With Memory Card inserted, select a file from *Pictures* or *Digital camera* folder.

To set by capturing still image



Take photo → Capture still image → Tap Save

To cancel set incoming image

Off → Tap Save

- If a Memory Card file is set as incoming image or ringtone, copy file to handset first confirmation appears. If file is copy protected, move file to handset first confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to complete setting.

Setting Ringtone to Phonebook Entry


Tap Phone → **Phone book** → Tap New entry →  → Tap Ringtone settings field
Or Search Phonebook (ⓄP.2-18) → Tap Edit →  → Tap Ringtone settings field

To set Ringtone for Voice Call or Video Call



Tone: Voice call or *Tone: Video call* → Select a file location → Select a file → Tap Save


To set Ringtone for Message or S! Friend's Status

Tone: Messages or *Tone: S! Friend's Status* → *Ringtone* → Select a file location → Select a file → *Duration* → Enter duration → Tap OK → Tap Save



- While selecting a file, tap  to playback the file.
- If a Memory Card file is set as incoming image or ringtone, copy file to handset first confirmation appears. If file is copy protected, move file to handset first confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to complete setting.

Setting Vibration to Phonebook Entry

Tap Phone → **Phone book** → Tap New entry →  → Tap Vibration settings field
Or Search Phonebook to set vibration (ⓄP.2-18) → Tap Edit →  → Tap Vibration settings field → Select vibration pattern → Tap Save

- While selecting a vibration pattern, tap  to check the pattern.

Creating Message from Phonebook

Tap Phone → **Phone book** → Search and select Phonebook to send message (ⓄP.2-18) →  for recipient phone number or  for recipient address




Create message → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (ⓄP.4-4 S! Mail , P.4-7 SMS )



Display Creating Mail window → (ⓄP.4-4 S! Mail )

Opening Website from Phonebook

Tap Phone → **Phone book** → Search and select Phonebook entry with homepage registered (ⓄP.2-18) →  beside homepage address to connect → **Yes**


- To browse website with PC Site Browser, tap **PC Site Browser**.

Sending Phonebook as vFile

Tap Phone → **Phone book** → Tap Send

- In Entry Details window, tap More → **Send**.

To send via message

Via message → Search and select Phonebook entry to send (ⓄP.2-18) → (ⓄP.4-4 S! Mail )

To send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → Check Phonebook entry to send → Tap Send → (ⓄP.13-7 Sending Data )

To send via infrared

Via infrared → Check Phonebook entry to send → Tap Send (ⓄP.13-3)

Copying Entries between Phone & USIM

Tap Phone → **Phone book**

■ To copy selected entries

Tap More → **Copy to USIM** or **Copy to phone**
→ Check Phonebook entries to copy → Tap Copy
→ **Yes**

- For both Phone and USIM Card entries, tap More → **Copy each entry** → Select Phonebook entry → **Yes**.

- In Entry Details window, tap More → **Copy to USIM** or **Copy to phone**.

- If search method is **Group**, search and select entry to copy → Tap More → **Copy to USIM** or **Copy to phone** → **Yes**.

■ To copy all entries from Phone to USIM/USIM to Phone

Tap More → **Copy all** → **Phone to USIM/USIM to Phone** → **Yes**

Specifying Saving Destination for Phonebook Entries

Tap Phone → **Phone book** → Tap More → **Save setting** → **Phone/USIM/Ask each time**

Viewing USIM Card Service Number

Tap Phone → **Phone book** → Tap More → **Service number**

- The item **Service number** may not appear for some USIM Card.

Canceling Phonebook Secret Mode Temporarily

Tap Phone → **Phone book** → Tap More → **Unlock temporarily** → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

- If **Secret mode** is set to **Hide**, Secret entries appear for current session only.

Editing Phonebook

Tap Phone → **Phone book** → Search Phonebook and select entry (ⓂP.2-18) → Tap Edit → (ⓂP.2-17 Creating New Entries ②)

- To edit secret Phonebook entry, set **Secret mode** to **Show**.

Copy Item

Tap Phone → **Phone book** → Search Phonebook and select entry (ⓂP.2-18) → Tap Copy item

Adding Phonebook Entry to Favorites

Tap Phone → **Phone book** → Search Phonebook and select entry (ⓂP.2-18) → Tap More → **Add to Favorites** → Select a field to add the entry

Adding S! Friend's Status Member from Phonebook

Tap Phone → **Phone book** → Search Phonebook and select entry (ⓂP.2-18) → Tap More → **Add to S! Friend's Status** → Select a phone number → **Yes**

Viewing S! Friend's Status

Tap Phone → **Phone book** → Search and select an entry (ⓂP.2-18) → Tap More → **View S! Friend's Status** → Select a phone number

Creating and Saving vFiles




Tap Phone → **Phone book** → Search Phonebook and select entry (ⓂP.2-18) → Tap More → **Save to Data Folder** → **Phone/Memory card** → **Yes**

- To save a file to **Memory card**, insert Memory Card.

Printing Phonebook Details via Bluetooth®

Tap Phone → **Phone book** → Search Phonebook and select entry (ⓂP.2-18) → Tap More → **Print via Bluetooth** → (ⓂP.7-14 Printing via Bluetooth® ⑤)

Toggleing Phonebook View between USIM & Phone

Tap Phone → **Phone book** →  /  /  → **Phone/USIM/Phone & USIM**

- Change remains even if handset is powered off.

Enter and Save Phone Number

Tap Phone → **Dial** → Enter phone number → Tap Add to phonebook

To save new entry

New → (☞P.2-17 Creating New Entries 2)

To update entry


Update → Search Phonebook and select entry (☞P.2-18) → Enter each item (☞P.2-17)

- Only Name, Reading, E-mail address, and Group can be entered in USIM Card entries.

Adding Groups

Tap Phone → **Phone book** → Tap the pull down menu for search methods → **Group** → Tap Group setting → **Add**

To set Incoming image

 → **Pictures/Take photo/Off** → Set Incoming image → Tap Save

- If **Pictures** is selected, select files.
- If **Take photo** is selected, take a still picture.
- If **Off** is selected, incoming image will not be set.

To set group names

Tap Group name field → Enter group name → Tap Save

To set group icon

Tap Group icon Field → Select icon → Tap Save

To set Ringtone

- To set Ringtone for Voice Call or Video Call
Tone: Voice call/Tone: Video call → Select a file location → Select a file → Tap Save
- To set Ringtone for Message or S! Friend's Status
Tone: Message/Tone: S! Friends Status → **Ringtone** → Select a file location → Select a file → **Duration** → Enter duration → Tap OK → Tap OK → Tap Save

To set Vibration

Tap Vibe field → Select vibration pattern → Tap Save

- For USIM Card, only group name and icon can be set.
- Images and ringtones set for individual Phonebook entries take priority over Group setting.

Changing Group Settings

Tap Phone → **Phone book** → Tap the pulldown Menu for search methods → **Group** → Tap Group setting → **Edit** → Select group → Edit each item as the same as when adding it (☞P.2-24).

Calling



Voice Call	3-2
Making a Voice Call.....	3-2
Receiving a Voice Call.....	3-2
In-Call Operations	3-3
Using Answering Machine	3-4
Video Call	3-5
Making a Video Call	3-5
Receiving a Video Call	3-6
Favorites	3-7
Saving Numbers as Favorites	3-7
Using Favorites.....	3-7
Emergency Numbers	3-8
Hold, Answering Machine & Black List	3-8
Hold Incoming Call	3-8
Answering Machine.....	3-9
Black List.....	3-9
Call Log Records	3-10
Viewing Call Log Records	3-10
Calling Call Log Records	3-11
Deleting Call Log Records	3-11
Checking Call Time/Cost	3-12
Handset Phone Number	3-12
Account Detail.....	3-12
International Calling	3-13
Global Roaming	3-13
Changing Network Mode.....	3-13
Setting Network	3-14
Calling Outside Japan	3-15


Optional Services	3-15
Voicemail	3-16
Call Forwarding.....	3-17
Call Waiting	3-18
Conference Call.....	3-19
Call Barring	3-20
Caller ID	3-21
Advanced Settings	3-22
Voice Call	3-22
Video Call	3-23
Call Log Records.....	3-25
Account Details	3-26
Conference Call	3-26

Voice Call

This section describes making a voice call and operations during a voice call.



Making a Voice Call






Directly enter phone number to call.
To make a call from Phonebook, see *Calling from Phonebook* (P.2-19).

- 1  (1 + seconds)/Phone and Dial → Enter phone number including area code



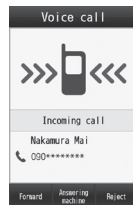
Phone Number Entry Window

- 2 Confirm entered phone number →  or tap Call
- 3 To end the call → 





- To correct entered digit, and tap Clear or press . Touch and hold **Clear** or press  for 1 + seconds to delete all.
- To enter **P** (pause), tap **p-X** twice. To enter + (International Code), touch and hold **+0**.
- When the line is busy, press  to end the call and try again later. If **Auto redial** (P.14-10) is **On**, number is automatically redialed. Tap **Cancel** or press  to cancel redialing.
- When Stereo Earphone Microphone (Optional) is connected and **Earphone call** is set to **On**, press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1+ seconds to call specified phone number. Press again for 1 + seconds to end the call.
- To input numbers for automatic voice service guidance, press  for Keypad and tap numbers.

Receiving a Voice Call

- 1 Voice Call window appears, 



- 2 To end the call → 

- To put caller on hold, press . To connect the call, tap Answer or press .
- To adjust ringer volume, press  / .
- If Stereo Earphone Microphone (Optional) is connected, press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1 + seconds to accept Voice Calls. Press again for 1 + seconds to end the call.
- To put a current call on hold, a separate subscription is required to use either Call Waiting (P.3-18) or Conference Call (P.3-19). No liability is assumed for any damage associated with SSL/TLS use.
- **Missed Call Window**
Missed Call window appears for unanswered calls. Tap View to view Received calls (P.3-10).

• Ringtone

Specify ringtones by Phonebook entry or Category (P.2-22, P.2-24). If not set, active Mode Setting applies (P.1-17).

If Secret mode is set to **Hide** when a call from a Secret entry is received, active Mode Setting applies.

• Incoming Call Window

If a caller sends Caller ID, phone number appears. If saved in Phonebook, name also appears. If caller hides Caller ID, **Withheld** appears.

If incoming image has been saved in Phonebook or for the group, the image also appears (P.2-22, P.2-24).

If Secret mode is set to **Hide** when a call from a Secret entry is received, only number appears.

• When you cannot answer a call

Use Call Forwarding or Voicemail to handle calls. While handset rings/vibrates, tap Forward to forward the call to Voicemail or designated number immediately (P.3-16, P.3-17). Alternatively, tap Answering machine to record caller message on handset (P.3-9).

In-Call Operations

Adjust Volume

1 During a call

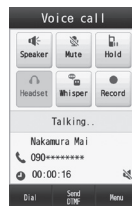


2 /

- Changed volume remains even after powering off.



Recording a Call

1 During a call



2 Record

3 End recording →

- Record voice of up to 2 minutes during a call.
- To pause recording, tap . Tap  to resume recording; Tap Save to save recording up to paused point.
- Recorded sound file is saved to **Ring songs · tones** in Data Folder.
- If Call Waiting is subscribed, recording stops by another incoming call, and incoming call window appears.
- Recording stops automatically after the call is ended, and voice file is saved.

Text Memo

1 During a call





- 2 Tap Menu → *Notepad* → *Add new* → Enter text memo → Select Category → Tap Save

Using Answering Machine

Use Answering Machine to record caller messages (➡P.3-9).

Playing Messages

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Answering machine* → *Play messages*
- 2 Select a message

• After Answering Machine records a message,  appears in Standby. Alternatively, in Standby, tap  for 1 + seconds to play Answering Machine messages.

Deleting Messages

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Answering machine* → *Play messages* → Tap Delete
- 2 Check message to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

• Message is deleted; *Missed voice call* appears in Call Log.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (☞P.3-22)

- Saving Entered Phone Number to Phonebook
- Creating New Message to Entered Number
- Showing or Hiding Your Number for a Call
- Setting Mute
- Rejecting and Disconnecting Incoming Call
- Switching to Speaker Phone
- Putting a Call on Hold
- Talking in Low Voice
- Switching Headset/Phone
- Searching Phonebook during Call
- Creating New Message during Call
- Sending Push Tones
- Recording Hearing Voice
- Creating Text Memo during Call

Settings

- Accept or reject calls from specified phone numbers (☞P.14-9)
- Create or edit Black List (☞P.14-10)
- Accept or reject calls from unknown numbers (☞P.14-10)
- Accept or reject calls when number is withheld (☞P.14-10)
- Accept or reject calls from payphones (☞P.14-10)
- Accept or reject calls when number is unavailable (☞P.14-10)
- Show or hide your own number (☞P.14-10)
- Set handset to automatically redial busy numbers (☞P.14-10)

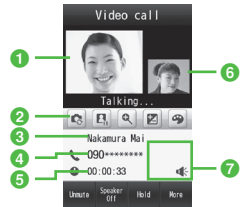
Video Call

Exchange voice/video with compatible 3G handsets.

- You may experience a problem with sound quality when using Speaker Phone (P.3-24) with louder volume. Lower volume or using Stereo Earphone Microphone (Optional) is recommended.
- Ambient noise may hamper voice quality. Use Stereo Earphone Microphone (Optional).
- Using Speaker Phone in public may disturb others; please mind your mobile manners.

Note

- Video Calls to incompatible handsets may be disconnected; fees apply.



- 1 Large Image (Normally, Incoming Image)
Tap here to switch to Small Display.
- 2 Video Call menu icons
 - 📷 :Toggle Internal/External Camera
 - 📷 / 📷 :Toggle My Image off/on
 - 🔍 :Zoom
 - ☀️ :Brightness
 - 🎧 :Effect
- 3 The other party's name
- 4 Phone number
- 5 Call duration
- 6 Small Display (Normally, Outgoing Image)
Tap here to switch to Large Image.
- 7 Status icon
 - 🎧 :Switch to Headset
 - 🔇 :Set Mute my voice to On
 - 🔊 / 🔊 :Speaker Off/On

Making a Video Call

Enter phone number directly. To use Phonebook, see *Calling from Phonebook* (P.2-19).

- 1 📞 (1+ seconds) → Enter a number including area code
- 2 Tap Video call
- 3 To end the call → 📞








• If Video Call does not connect
At prompt, select *Retry* → *Voice call* or *Create message*; select *View contact details* to open Phonebook; *Add to phonebook* to save number. Select *Video call* to dial the same number again.

Receiving a Video Call

1 Video Call window appears,

- Send My Image confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* or *No*.

2 To end the call →



















- To put an incoming video call on hold without answering it, tap Hold answer or press . To release the hold and answer the video call, tap Answer or press  while holding it.
- Press  /  to adjust ringer volume while handset rings.
- If Stereo Earphone Microphone (Optional) is connected, press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1 + seconds to answer Video call. Press again to end call.
- To disconnect an incoming video call without answering it, tap Forward or Reject.
- After pressing  in step 1, My Image appears, but is not sent. Confirmation appears, choose Yes to send My Image, or No to send Alternative Picture. When Video Call connects, My Image or Alternative Picture appears in Small Display.
- To adjust volume, press  / .
- When sending image is canceled, alternative picture is sent to the other party.

Advanced

Advanced Settings P.3-23

- Showing or Hiding Caller ID
- Setting Mute
- Switching Speaker Phone/Handset Earpiece
- Putting a Video Call on Hold
- Toggling My Image
- Changing Image Size during Video Call
- Toggling Incoming Image Pause/Play
- Switching Headset/Phone
- Adding Auto Answer List
- Deleting Entry in Auto Answer List
- Searching Phonebook during Video Call
- Sending Message during Video Call
- Viewing Phonebook Entry Details
- Sending Push Tones
- Creating and Saving Text Memo in Video Call

Settings

- Set Preset Picture to appear in place of your own image ( P.14-8)
- Set Alternative Picture to appear in place of My Image ( P.14-8)
- Adjust incoming video quality ( P.14-8)
- Adjust outgoing video quality ( P.14-8)
- Set Preset Picture to appear when Video Call is on hold ( P.14-8)
- Set Hold setting ( P.14-9)
- Set Preset Picture to appear when Video Call is on hold without answering ( P.14-9)
- Set Hold answer setting ( P.14-9)
- Activate or cancel mute for Video Call ( P.14-9)
- Activate or cancel Speaker Phone during Video Call ( P.14-9)
- Set Backlight ( P.14-9)
- Set handset response when Video Call cannot be connected ( P.14-9)
- Answer Video Call from specified party automatically ( P.14-9)
- Create Auto Answer List ( P.14-9)
- Show or hide your own image for Video Calls ( P.14-9)
- Accept or reject calls from specified phone numbers ( P.14-9)
- Create or edit Black List ( P.14-10)
- Accept or reject calls from unknown numbers ( P.14-10)

- Accept or reject calls when number is withheld (📞 P.14-10)
- Accept or reject calls from payphones (📞 P.14-10)
- Accept or reject calls when number is unavailable (📞 P.14-10)
- Show or hide your own number (📞 P.14-10)
- Set handset to automatically redial busy numbers (📞 P.14-10)
- Enable or disable calling via Stereo Earphone Microphone (📞 P.14-10)
- Adjust Earpiece volume (📞 P.14-10)
- Activate or cancel automatic ringer reduction (📞 P.14-10)
- Set Answering mode (📞 P.14-25)

Favorites

Save phone number as Favorites for quick calling.



Saving Numbers as Favorites


Save up to 99 frequently used phone numbers.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Phonebook* → *Favorites*
- 2 Tap Add
- 3 Search Phonebook and select entry (📞P.2-18) → Select number

- To delete saved phone number, tap Menu → *Phonebook* → *Favorites* → tap Release → Select entry → *Yes*.
- Secret entry phone numbers cannot be saved as Favorites.
- Setting Phone number saved as Favorites to Secret cancels Favorites setting automatically.

Using Favorites

- 1  (1 + seconds)/Phone and Dial → *Favorites*
- 2 Tap  beside the designated number

- Alternatively, after step 1, select number to call → Tap  → *Voice call/Video call/International call/Create message*

Emergency Numbers

Call 110 (Police), 119 (Fire & Ambulance) or 118 (Maritime Safety Agency). These numbers can be dialed even when certain Call Barring settings are active. See details below.

931SC Status	Emergency Numbers
Offline mode activated (☎P.1-16)	None
Call Cost limit exceeded (☎P.14-8)	110, 119, 118
Phone lock activated (☎P.11-3)	None
Password lock activated (☎P.11-4)	110, 119, 118
Required PIN not entered (☎P.11-4)	None
USIM Card not be authenticated (☎P.11-5)	None
Outgoing Call Barring activated (☎P.3-20)	110, 119, 118

Emergency Location Report

When calls are placed to Police or other emergency agencies from handset, handset location information is automatically sent to the corresponding agency.

Handset transmits location based on base station positioning information.

- Location accuracy may vary by geography or signal conditions. Always verify your location with address or nearby landmark.
- Base station positioning accuracy ranges from several hundred meters to 10 kilometers. This information may differ from actual location due to distance of the closest base station location.
- This function is only available if the agency receiving an emergency call has implemented infrastructure for receiving location information.
- If you hide Caller ID by dialing 184 before calling an emergency number, your location information is not sent. However, authorities may access this information when necessary.
- No subscription/communication fee required.

Note

- Emergency calls may not be possible outside Japan depending on available network, signal conditions or handset settings.

Hold, Answering Machine & Black List

Hold Incoming Call

Place call on hold and reconnect.

1 Hold during call

- When a call is put on hold, the party on hold hears a hold tone and neither party can hear the other's voice. A subscription to Call Waiting or Group Call is required to use this function. If you do not subscribe to either service, this function is disabled.
- To reconnect call Tap **Hold**.


Answering Machine

Handset records up to three 15-second messages.

Activating & Canceling

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Answering machine*

2 Under *On/Off, On or Off*

- If Answering machine is on,  appears in Standby.
- Calls appear in Call Log records.

Note

- If handset is off, out-of-range, or in Offline mode, Answering Machine is unavailable. Use Voicemail to handle missed calls.
- Answering Machine requires at least 600 KB of unused handset memory.

Black List

Reject incoming calls. Alternatively, reject calls from specified or unknown numbers (ⓄP.14-10).

Rejecting Incoming Call

1 While handset rings, tap **Reject**

- Rejected calls appear in Call Log records.
- If Call Forwarding or Voicemail is unset, while handset rings, tap **Forward** to reject the call. Busy message appears on caller's handset before call is disconnected. If handset is incompatible, call is simply disconnected.

Calls from Specified Numbers

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Reject incoming calls*

2 *Set reject number* → *On/Off to On*

- For calls from Reject List, caller hears a busy tone and call is not connected. A Missed Call notification appears in Standby. Select notification to check missed call.
- Choose *Off* to allow calls from specified numbers.

3 *Black list*

4 Tap **Add** → **Select an item** → **Add an entry** (ⓄP.14-10)

- To delete saved numbers after Step 3, tap **Delete** → **Check numbers to delete** → Tap **Delete** → **Yes**.

Calls from Unknown ID Numbers

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Reject incoming calls*
- 2 Set *Unknown to On*
 - Choose *Off* to allow calls from unknown numbers.

Calls from Withheld ID Numbers

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Reject incoming calls*
- 2 Set *Withheld to On*
 - Choose *Off* to allow calls from withheld ID numbers.

Calls from Public Pay Phones

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Reject incoming calls*
- 2 Set *Payphone to On*
 - Choose *Off* to allow calls from pay phones.

Calls from Unavailable ID Numbers

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Reject incoming calls*
- 2 Set *Unavailable to On*
 - Choose *Off* to allow calls from unavailable ID numbers.

Call Log Records

Choose from Received Calls or Dialed Calls. Confirm call type, number, or time & cost; enter numbers for calling. Call Log holds up to 500 received and 500 dialed calls.

Viewing Call Log Records










- 1  / Tap Phone and *Call log* → *Received/Dialed*



Call Log
(Received Calls)

- 2 Select record

● Call Log Record Icons

-  : Dialed Voice Call
-  : Dialed Video Call
-  : Received Voice Call
-  : Received Video Call
-  : Missed Voice Call
-  : Missed Video Call
-  : Rejected Voice Call
-  : Rejected Video Call
-  : Voicemail Notification
-  : Received Call Notification
-  : Answering Machine

- If **Secret mode** is set to **Hide**, names do not appear in Call Log for Secret Phonebook entries.
- Alternatively, in Standby, tap Menu → **Phonebook** → **Call log** → **Received/Dialed** to confirm Call log.

Calling Call Log Records

1  → **Received or Dialed** →
Select a log →  beside
the log


2 Make a call

■ **To make a Voice call**
Voice call


■ **To make a Video Call**
Video call

■ **To make an International call**
International call

■ **To call after editing the call number**
Copy to dial

- Alternatively, tap  beside the designated log entry to make a call.

Deleting Call Log Records

1  → **Received or Dialed**
2 Tap **Delete** → Check records
to delete → Tap **Delete** → **Yes**

- To confirm and delete records one by one, after Step 1, select record → Confirm and tap Delete → **Yes**.
- To delete all the call log, after operation 1, Tap Delete → **Mark all** → Tap Delete

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings**  P.3-25

- Viewing Phonebook Entry Details via Call Log
- Saving Call Log Record Numbers to Phonebook
- Saving Call Log Record Numbers to Black List

Checking Call Time/Cost

Show charge after call may not be available depending on your contract conditions. Also, *Set max cost limit* cannot be activated if *Show charge after call* is not available.

Call settings menu includes items below.

Set	Settings
All calls	Confirm or reset approximate total call time/cost.
Last call	Confirm or reset approximate call time/cost of the previous call.
Data counter	Confirm or reset approximate incoming/outgoing data volume.
Show charge after call	Set whether to show call time/cost after ending a call.
Set currency	Set or change currency.
Set max cost limit	Set the limit for call cost.

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Call time & cost*

2 Select item

- To reset item, tap Reset.

Advanced

Settings

- Check Call Time/Cost (☎ P.14-7)
- Check last Call Time/Cost (☎ P.14-8)
- Check Data Counter (☎ P.14-8)
- Show or hide Call Time/Cost after calls (☎ P.14-8)
- Change Call Cost Currency (☎ P.14-8)
- Set Call Cost Limit (☎ P.14-8)
- Cancel Call Cost Limit (☎ P.14-8)

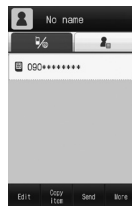
Handset Phone Number

View phone number of handset in USIM Card.

Account Detail

View Account Details.

1 Tap Menu → *Phonebook* → *Account details*




- By default, only phone number is saved in Account Details.
- Alternatively, in Standby, tap Phone → *Account details* to confirm.
- Tap Phone → *Account details* → Tap Edit to edit Account details other than phone number.

Advanced

Advanced Settings ⓘ P.3-26

- Editing Account Details
- Sending Account Details as vFile
- Resetting Account Details
- Creating vFile and Save in Data Folder
- Printing with Bluetooth®-Compatible Printer

International Calling

- 1  (1 + seconds)/Phone and Dial → Enter a phone number including area code
- 2 *Int. call* → Select a country/ Select *Enter Code* and enter Country number
- 3 Confirm number → Tap Call
 - Country code entry is not required to call SoftBank handsets outside Japan, regardless of country.

Advanced

Advanced Settings ⓘ P.3-22

- Making International Calls from Japan

Global Roaming

Apply for Global Roaming Service beforehand. For information, see SoftBank Mobile Website: http://mb.softbank.jp/en/global_services/

Changing Network Mode

Select from available Networks (3G or GSM). By default, Network Mode is set automatically.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *International call* → *Select network*
- 2 Select network mode
 - To activate automatically
Automatic
 - To activate manually
Manual → 3G/GSM, 3G, or GSM

- Network Mode Setting

Automatic:

Mode changes with network availability.

3G:

Use in 3G/UMTS service areas anywhere.

GSM:

Use in GSM service areas outside Japan.

- Network mode is set to **Automatic** by default.

Setting Network

Use SoftBank Mobile 3G Network or GSM networks commonly available outside Japan.

Selecting Network to Access

Select network (service provider) for the area where handset is used. Manual selection is also available.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *International call* → *Select operator* → *Select Auto/Manual*

- 2 Select network mode

- **To set automatically**
Automatic
- **To specify operator**
Manual → Select an item

Setting Preferred Network

Edit network list preferentially selected when **Automatic** is set.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *International call* → *Select operator* → *Set priority*

- 2 Edit Preferred network list

- **To select and add from Network list**
Tap Add → *Network list* → Select a network to insert from Network list
- **To add network**
Tap Add → *New Network* → Tap Country code field → Enter Country code → Tap Network code field → Enter Network code → Tap Network name field → Enter Network name → Tap Network type field → *GSM* or *3G* → Tap Add

- Added network appears at top of Network list.
- After Step 1, tap Change order to change the preferred order. Touch and hold a network to move, make sure the network is selected, then drag it to desired location and tap OK.
- After Step 1, tap Delete to delete the network. Tap the network to delete.
- Items to set in *New Network* is as follows.
Country code: Up to three digits
Network code: Up to three digits
Network name: Up to 20 digits
Network type: Select from GSM/3G

Calling Outside Japan

Emergency calls may not be possible outside Japan depending on network, signal conditions, or handset settings (P.3-8).

1 (1 + seconds)/Phone and Dial → Enter a phone number including area code →

2 Make a call

To make a call to Japan


To Japan

To make a call to a country other than Japan

Other country → Select country to call

To make a call to landline or handset in the country you stay

Keep number

- To make a call by directly entering Country number, touch and hold **+0** to enter "+". Enter Country number, phone number excluding the first "0", and press  to dial. To make a call to Italy, include the first "0" if any.
- If "+ Country code" is included at beginning of phone number, Step 2 is not required.

Advanced

Settings

- Switching Network Mode (P.14-7)
- Save International Code (P.14-7)
- Add/change/delete Country Number (P.14-7)
- Select network to access (P.14-7)
- Select preferred network from list (P.14-7)
- Add a new preferred network (P.14-7)
- Retrieve Network Information manually (P.14-26)

Optional Services

Available optional services are as follows.

Service	Description
Voicemail	Divert all or all unanswered calls to Voicemail Center; access caller messages via handset from within the service area or via a touchtone phone anywhere. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set Missed Call Notification to notify missed calls by SMS when handset is off or out-of-range (P.3-17).
Call forwarding	When you know you will be unable to answer calls, automatically divert calls to a specified number.
Call waiting*	Put the line on hold to answer another line or alternate between lines. Or toggle lines among multiple lines simultaneously.
Conference Call*	Open another line while one is engaged; toggle lines or talk on up to six parties simultaneously.
Call barring	Restrict incoming or outgoing calls by condition.
Caller ID	Show or hide your own number when making calls.

* This service requires separate subscription.

Note

- If *Out* appears, services are unavailable. For landline operation or service details, see Softbank Mobile Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

Voice mail

Handset forwards voice calls to Voicemail Center according to the following conditions:

Forwarding Condition	Description
Always	Handset does not ring/vibrate for incoming calls; calls are diverted automatically. Missed Call does not appear.
No reply	Unanswered calls are diverted after the specified ring time, or when the line is busy or handset is outside service area.

Note

- Voicemail and Call Forwarding cannot be active at the same time.
- Activating Voicemail cancels Call Forwarding.

Activating Voicemail

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Voice mail/Call forwarding* → *Voice mail On*
- 2 Select an item

■ **To transfer immediately**

Always (0 sec.)

■ **To set ring time before transfer**

No reply (5 to 30 sec.) → *5 seconds, 10 seconds, 15 seconds, 20 seconds, 25 seconds, or 30 seconds*

- If No reply (5 to 30 sec.) is set, answer call within set ringtime to cancel forwarding, or tap Forwarding to forward immediately.


Canceling Voicemail

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Voice mail/Call forwarding* → *Deactivate all* → *Yes*

Note

- *Deactivate all* also cancels Call Forwarding.

Listening to Voicemail Message

When a caller saves a Voicemail message, notification appears in Standby and  appears at top of Display.





Indicated by Icons and Messages



When Notification Appears

Tap Notification →  beside the log

- To confirm the details of the message, tap View and select record.
- Tap Close to clear the notification without playing the message.

When Notification does not Appear

 (1+seconds) → Enter "1416" → 

- To enter numbers following the guidance, press  to display the keypad and tap them.
- If you delete a message you played following the guidance,  disappears.

Activating Missed Call Notification

Receive SMS for calls missed while handset is off or outside service area; or when caller saves message at Voicemail Center while the line is engaged.







1  (1 + seconds) → Enter "1414" → 

- To call from landline phone in Japan, enter "090-665-1414".

2 Follow guidance

- Alternatively, tap Menu → **Settings** → **Call settings** → **Optional services** → **Missed call notif.** to activate Missed call Notification.
- SMS notification is saved as Received call.
- Missed Call Notification is complimentary.

Advanced**Settings**

- Forward all calls to Voicemail (Handset does not ring) ( P.14-6)
- Forward unanswered calls to Voicemail (specify ring time) ( P.14-6)
- Cancel Voicemail/Call Forwarding ( P.14-6)
- Confirm current Voicemail/Call Forwarding settings ( P.14-6)
- Listen to Voicemail message ( P.14-6)
- Set Missed Call Notification ( P.14-7)

Call Forwarding

Forward incoming calls to a specified number in accordance with the predefined forwarding condition which you can set by call type (Voice Call or Video Call) (ⓍP.3-16).

Note

- Call Forwarding and Voicemail cannot be used at the same time.
- Activating Call Forwarding cancels Voicemail.

Activating/Canceling Call Forwarding

Specify a forwarding number beforehand. Specify Forwarding number in, **Voice/Video call**, **Voice call**, or **Video call**.

1 Tap Menu → **Settings** → **Call settings** → **Optional services** → **Voice mail/Call forwarding** → **Call forwarding On/Deactivate all**

- When canceled, confirmation appears. Tap Yes to end operation.

Note

- Voicemail is also canceled.

2 *Voice/Video call, Voice call, or Video call*

3 *Always (0 sec.) or No reply (5 sec.) to No reply (30 sec.)*

4 **Set forwarding number**

■ **To use previous forwarding number**
Last number → Select number

■ **To enter from Phonebook**
Phonebook → Search Phonebook and select entry (P.2-18) → Select number

■ **To enter number directly**
Enter number → Enter phone number

● If *No reply (5 to 30 sec.)* is set, answer call within set ringtime to cancel forwarding, or tap Forwarding to forward immediately.

Advanced

Settings

- Activate and set Forwarding (P.14-6)
- Cancel Voicemail/Call Forwarding (P.14-6)
- Confirm current Voicemail/Call Forwarding settings (P.14-6)

Call Waiting

A separate subscription is required to use this service. For use with Voice Calls only.

Activating/Canceling Call Waiting

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Call waiting*


2 *On, Off or Get status*

● For current status, select *Get status* in Step 2.

Accepting a Second Call

If a call arrives during a call, interrupt tone sounds and notice appears. Put first call on hold to answer.

1 After interrupt tone sounds, tap **Answer (Hold call)/Answer (End call)**


- Alternatively, press .
- To put current call on hold to answer second call, tap Accept (Hold call).
- To end current call to answer second call, tap Accept (End call).

2 To switch parties, tap **Group call func**

3 **Switch party**

■ **To switch to group call**
Change to group call

■ **To switch party**
Change to private call

■ **To end selected call**
End each call →  beside the other party to finish talking with

■ **To end all calls**
End all calls

- If one party ends a call with another on hold, tap Answer to talk with party on hold again.
- If Call Forwarding or Voicemail is set and second call is not answered, it is forwarded to a forwarding number or Voicemail Center.
- If forwarding condition is set to *Always*, Call Waiting is unavailable.

Advanced

Settings

- Activate or cancel Call Waiting (☎ P.14-6)
- Confirm current Call Waiting settings (☎ P.14-6)

Conference Call

Talk with up to parties simultaneously. This service requires separate subscription.

Making New Call During a Call

Connecting a second call places first one on hold.

1 During a call, tap Dial → Enter phone number

- To select from Phonebook, select Phonebook → Search and select Phonebook (☎ P.2-18) → Select Phone number.

2 Press /Tap Call

- Calling a third party is only possible with Conference Call (not available if a party is on hold).


Switching Party

1 While connected with multiple parties, tap Group call func → *Switch*

- If connected party ends call in Conference Call, party on hold remains on-hold. To talk with party on hold, tap *Hold* to cancel hold.

Talking with All Parties

1 While connected with multiple parties, tap Group call func → *Change to group call*

- To talk with one party again, tap Group call func → *Change to private call* → 

- To end all calls, tap Group call func and select *End all calls*.
- When one party ends the call during Conference Call, continue talking with remaining parties.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (☎ P.3-26)

- Ending Selected Call

Settings

- Set Preset Picture to appear when Video Call is on hold (☎ P.14-8)

Call Barring

Bar outgoing/incoming Voice, Video Calls or SMS by conditions listed below.

Item	Description
Outgoing call	
Bar all outgoing calls	Disables calling or sending SMS to all but emergency numbers.
Bar all international calls	Disables outgoing international calls and SMS.
Bar international calls	Disables calling or sending SMS to numbers outside Japan and the country where you stay.
Incoming call	
Bar all incoming calls	Blocks all incoming calls or SMS.
Bar all roaming calls	Blocks all incoming international calls and SMS.

- Setting Call Barring requires Network Password (4-digit number specified at subscription). Network Password can be changed (➡P.3-21).
- A message appears indicating that outgoing Call Barring is active. The message may appear after a while depending on service area.

Note

- If incorrect Network Password is entered 3 consecutive times, Call Barring is disabled. In this case, change Network Password and Center Access Code. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (➡P.15-26).
- If Call Forwarding or Voicemail is active, **Bar all outgoing calls** and **Bar All incoming calls** cannot be set (Optional Services override Call Barring settings).

Restricting Outgoing/Incoming Calls

Bar outgoing/incoming calls/transmissions by type (Voice Calls, Video Calls, SMS).

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Call barring*
- 2 Select a restriction type
 - For outgoing calls
Outgoing call → *Bar all outgoing calls*, *Bar all international calls*, or *Bar international calls*
 - For incoming calls
Incoming call → *Bar all incoming calls* or *Bar all roaming calls*
- 3 *On* or *Off*
- 4 Enter Network Password → Tap OK

Canceling All Barring

Cancel all barring for outgoing or incoming calls.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Call barring*
- 2 *Cancel all barring*
- 3 Enter Network Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

Checking Call Barring Status

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Call barring*
- 2 *Get status* → *All outgoing calls, All international calls, International calls, All incoming calls, or All roaming calls*

Changing Network Password

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Call barring* → *Set security code*
- 2 Enter current Network Password in Old field → Tap OK
- 3 Enter new Network Password in New field → Tap OK
- 4 Enter new Network Password again in Cnf field → Tap OK

Advanced

Settings

- Set Outgoing Call Barring (☎ P.14-6)
- Activate or cancel Incoming Call Barring (☎ P.14-6)
- Cancel all Call Barring (☎ P.14-6)
- Confirm current Call Barring settings (☎ P.14-7)
- Change Network Password (☎ P.14-7)

Caller ID

Show or hide your own phone number.

Showing & Hiding Caller ID

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Show my number*
- 2 *On or Off*

- After Step 1, select *Get status* to confirm current setting.
- Regardless of *Show my number* setting, you can show/hide your phone number every time you make a call (☎ P.3-22).

Advanced

Settings

- Show or hide your own number (☎ P.14-10)

Advanced Settings

Advanced Settings

Voice Call

Saving Entered Phone Number to Phonebook

(1 + seconds) → Enter a phone number including area code → Tap Add to phonebook → (P.2-24 Enter and Save Phone Number)

Creating New Message to Entered Number

(1 + seconds) → Enter a phone number → Tap More → **Create message** → **S! Mail** or **SMS** → (P.4-4 S! Mail , P.4-7 SMS)

Making International Calls from Japan

(1 + seconds) → Enter a phone number including area code → **Int. call** → Select a country/Select **Enter Code** and enter Country number → Confirm phone number →

- A separate subscription is required for international calls. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.15-26).
- Calls to SoftBank handset abroad is available only by the phone number, regardless of the country where the receiver stays.

Showing or Hiding Your Number for a Call

(1 + seconds) → Enter a phone number including area code → Tap More

To hide your own number

Hide my ID →

To show your own number

Show my ID →

- Otherwise, **Show my number** setting applies.
- Alternatively, press (1 + seconds) → Enter "186" → Enter phone number → , to show your number.
- Alternatively, press (1 + seconds) → Enter "184" → Enter phone number → , to hide your number.

Rejecting and Disconnecting Incoming Call

While handset is ringing, tap Reject

- The rejected call is recorded in Call Log.
- When Call Forwarding or Voicemail is not in use, tap Forward while handset is ringing, to reject the incoming call. Message indicating "busy" appears on caller's handset before call is disconnected. If caller's handset is incompatible, call is simply disconnected.

Adjusting Earpiece Volume

During a call, /

- Adjust Earpiece or Earphone (Optional) volume. Setting remains even after powered off.

Setting Mute

During a call, **Mute**

- During a call, tap **Mute** to switch to a normal call

Switching to Speaker Phone

During a call, **Speaker**

- To cancel Speaker Phone, tap **Speaker** again during a call.

Putting a Call on Hold

During a call, **Hold**

- When a call is put on hold, the party on hold hears a hold tone and neither party can hear the other's voice. A subscription to Call Waiting or Group Call is required to use this function. If you do not subscribe to either service, this function is disabled.
- Tap Hold to reconnect the call.

Talking in Low Voice

During a call, **Whisper**

- With **Whisper**, the volume of sent sounds is raised on the other party's side.
- During a call, tap **Whisper** again for normal call

Switching Headset/Phone

During a call, **Headset**

- Appears when Bluetooth®-compatible headset is in use.

Searching Phonebook during Call

During a call, tap Menu → **Phonebook** →
(☎P.2-18 Entry Search **3** to **5**)

Creating New Message during Call


During a call, tap Menu → **Messaging** →
Create new/Create new SMS → (☎P.4-4 S! Mail
2, P.4-7 SMS **2**)



Sending Push Tones

During a call, tap Send DTMF → Enter digits
→ Tap Send

- To search Phonebook, Tap Send DTMF and then tap Phonebook.

Recording Hearing Voice

During a call, **Record** → 


- Record voice of up to 2 minutes during a call.
- To pause recording, tap . Tap  to resume recording; Tap Save to save recording up to paused point.
- Recorded sound file is saved to **Ring songs · tones** in Data Folder.
- If Call Waiting is subscribed, recording stops by another incoming call, and incoming call window appears.
- Recording stops automatically after the call is ended, and voice file is saved.

Creating Text Memo during Call

During a call, tap Menu → **Notepad** → Tap
Add new → Enter text memo → Select an
item

Video Call

Showing or Hiding Caller ID



 (1 + seconds) → Enter a phone number
including area code → Tap More

■ To hide phone number

Hide my ID → Tap Video call

■ To show phone number

Show my ID → Tap Video call

- Alternatively, press  (1 + seconds) → Enter "186" → Enter phone number → Tap Video call, to make a call with your phone number shown.
- Alternatively, press  (1 + seconds) → Enter "184" → Enter phone number → Tap Video call, to make a call with your phone number hidden.

Toggling Internal/External Camera

During Video Call, 

Toggling My Image Pause/Play

During Video Call,  or 

Enlarging or Reducing My Image

During Video Call,  → Adjust Size

Adjusting Outgoing Image Brightness

During Video Call,  → Adjust Brightness

Adjusting Outgoing Image Color

During Video Call,  → Select an item

Setting Mute

During Video Call, tap Mute or Unmute

Switching Speaker Phone/Handset Earpiece

During Video Call, tap Speaker On or Speaker Off

- A confirmation appears to set **Speaker on?** Choose **Yes** to switch to Speaker phone call.
- Alternatively, during Video Call, tap More → **Settings** → Under **Speaker, On** or **Off** to toggle Speaker/Earpiece.

Putting a Video Call on Hold

During Video Call, tap Hold

- Alternative picture is sent during on hold and neither party can hear the other's voice.
- To reconnect the call, tap Answer.

Toggle My Image

During Video call, tap More → **My image**

■ To toggle My Image Camera

■ To toggle Alternative picture Alternative picture

■ To select My Image

Send picture → **Picture** → Select image to send → Tap OK

- When Memory Card is inserted, files can be selected from **Digital camera** folders after Pictures selected.

Changing Image Size during Video Call

During Video Call, tap More → **Switch screen**

- Switch incoming image small and My image large, or incoming image large and My image small.

Toggle Incoming Image Pause/Play

During Video call, tap More → **Pause incoming image** or **Play incoming image**

Transferring Headset/Handset Earpiece

During Video Call, tap More → **Transfer to handset** or **Transfer to phone**

- Appears when Bluetooth®-compatible headset is in use.

Setting Alternative Picture Instead of My Image

During Video Call, tap More → **Settings** → **Alternative picture**

■ To restore default image Preset picture → Tap OK

■ To select image from Data Folder Pictures → Select image → Tap OK

- With Memory Card inserted, files can be selected from **Digital camera** folder after **Pictures** selected.

Adjusting Incoming Video Quality

During Video Call, tap More → **Settings** → **Incoming video quality** → Select an item

Adjusting Outgoing Video Quality

During Video Call, tap More → **Settings** → **Outgoing video quality** → Select an item

Setting on Hold Picture

During Video call, tap More → **Settings** → **Hold setting** → **Hold during call** or **Hold answer**

■ To restore default image Preset picture → Tap OK

■ To select image from Data Folder Pictures → Select image → Tap OK

- With Memory Card inserted, files can be selected from **Digital camera** folder after **Pictures** selected.

Muting Handset Microphone

During Video Call, tap More → **Settings** → Under **Mute my voice, On** or **Off**

- Setting is not applied to the current Video Call. Effective from the next Video Call.

Adjusting Video Call Backlight Setting

During Video Call, tap More → **Settings** → Under **Backlight, On** or **Off**

- Set backlight during video Call. When **Off** is set, Display becomes dim.

Adjusting Call Retry Setting

During Video Call, tap More → **Settings** → **Retry with** → Select an item

Answering Video Call from Specified Party Automatically

During Video Call, tap More → **Settings** → **Auto answer** → Under **On/Off, On or Off**

- When a Video Call arrives from the specified party, a tone sounds and the call is automatically answered.

Adding Auto Answer List

During Video call, tap More → **Settings** → **Auto answer** → **Auto answer list** → Tap Add

■ To select from Phonebook

Phonebook → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Search Phonebook and select entry (📞P.2-18)

■ To select from call log

Call log → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → **Received or Dialed** → Select a log

■ To enter phone number directly

Direct input → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Enter phone number

- When a Video Call arrives from the specified party, a tone sounds and the call is automatically answered.

Deleting Entry in Auto Answer List

During Video call, tap More → **Settings** → **Auto answer** → **Auto answer list** → Tap Delete → Check phone number to delete → Tap Delete → **Yes**

Showing/Hiding My Image

During Video Call, tap More → **Settings** → Under **Show my image, On or Off**

- Setting is not applied to current Video Call. Effective from next Video Call.

Searching Phonebook during Video Call

During Video Call, tap More → **Phonebook** → (📞P.2-18 Entry Search **3**)

Sending Message during Video Call

During Video Call, tap More → **Create message** → **S! Mail** or **SMS** → (📞P.4-4 S! Mail **2**, P.4-7 SMS **2**)

Viewing Phonebook Entry Details

During Video call, tap More → **Phonebook** → (📞P.2-18 Entry Search **3** to **5**) → Select number

Sending Push Tones

During Video Call, tap More → **Send DTMF** → Enter digits → Tap Send

- To search Phonebook, select **Send DTMF** and then tap Search to search Phonebook and select entry (📞P.2-18).

Creating and Saving Text Memo in Video Call




During Video Call, tap More → **Memo** → Enter text memo → Select an item → Tap Save

Call Log Records



Sending Message from Call Log Records

 → **Received** or **Dialed** → Select a record →  → **S! Mail** or **SMS** → (📞P.4-4 S! Mail **5**, P.4-7 SMS **5**)

Adding International Code and Country Number to Call Log Record Numbers

 → **Received** or **Dialed** → Select a record →  → **International call** → Select a country/Select **Enter Code** to enter a country number → Select a country → Confirm the phone number → 

Showing Caller ID when Calling Call Log Record

 → **Received** or **Dialed** → Select a record →  → **Copy to dial**

Viewing Phonebook Entry Details via Call Log

 → **Received** or **Dialed** → Select a record → Tap View phonebook

Saving Call Log Record Numbers to Phonebook

 → **Received** or **Dialed** → Tap Add to phonebook → (📞P.2-18 Saving Entries from Call Log Records **4**)

Saving Call Log Record Numbers to Black List

 → **Received** or **Dialed** → Select a record → Tap Add to black list → **Yes**

Account Details

Editing Account Details

Tap Phone → *Account details* → Tap Edit → (P.2-17 Creating New Entries 2)

Sending Account Details as vFile

Tap Phone → *Account details* → Tap Send

■ To send via message

Via message → (P.4-4 S! Mail 2)

■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → (P.13-7 Sending Data 2)

■ To send via infrared

Via infrared (P.13-3)

Resetting Account Details

Tap Phone → *Account details* → Tap More → *Reset* → *Yes*

- All Account details other than phone number saved in USIM Card are reset.

Creating vFile and Save in Data Folder

Tap Phone → *Account details* → Tap More → *Save to Data Folder* → *Phone/Memory card* → *Yes*

- To save a file to *Memory card*, insert Memory Card.

Printing with Bluetooth®-Compatible Printer

Tap Phone → *Account details* → Tap More → *Print via Bluetooth* → (P.7-14 Printing via Bluetooth® 4)

Conference Call

Ending Selected Call

During Group call, tap Group call func → *End each call* →  to disconnect

Putting All Calls on Hold

During Group call, tap Group call func → *Hold all*

- To cancel on-hold, tap Group call func and select *Retrieve*.

Messaging

4

Messaging Basics	4-2
S! Mail & SMS	4-2
Sending & Receiving Messages	4-3
Managing Messages	4-3
Customizing Mail Address	4-4
Creating/Sending Messages	4-4
S! Mail	4-4
SMS	4-7
Using Templates	4-8
Receiving, Replying & Forwarding Messages	4-8
Viewing New Messages	4-9
Retrieving Messages Manually	4-10
Viewing from Message List	4-10
Replying to Received Messages	4-12
Forwarding Received Messages	4-12
Using Messages	4-13
Using Message Information	4-13
Locking/Unlocking Messages	4-14
Deleting Messages or Templates	4-15
Saving Attached Files to Data Folder	4-16
Managing Messages	4-16
Advanced Settings	4-17
Sending S! Mail	4-17
Sending SMS	4-21
Received Messages	4-22
Using/Managing Messages	4-23
Managing Folders	4-26

Messaging Basics

This handset supports S! Mail and SMS messaging. Learn how to send and manage text messages.

S! Mail & SMS

Use S! Mail to exchange long text messages with SoftBank and other E-mail compatible handsets, PCs and mobile devices. Send Graphic Mail and media files via S! Mail.

Note

Separate subscription required to use S! Mail.

Use SMS to exchange short text messages with SoftBank handsets.

		S! Mail ¹	SMS
Entry Item	Address	○	○
	Subject	○	×
	Attachment	○	×
	Text	○	○
Character Limits		Up to 15,000 double-byte 30,000 single-byte characters (30 KB) ²	Up to 70 single-/ double-byte characters, or up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric ³
Other Party		SoftBank mobile phone, other E-mail compatible mobile phone, PCs	SoftBank handset
Contents		Long text message, image, sound, Graphic Mail, and Feeling Mail ⁴	Short text message

1 Limit for sending message is 300 KB including address, subject, message text, attachments, etc. (This applies to replay and forward S! Mail messages).

2 Limit for text entry varies with attachment size etc.

3 When **Char-code** is set to **GSM 7 bit** (P.14-15).

4 Exchange Feeling Mail only with compatible handsets.

Note

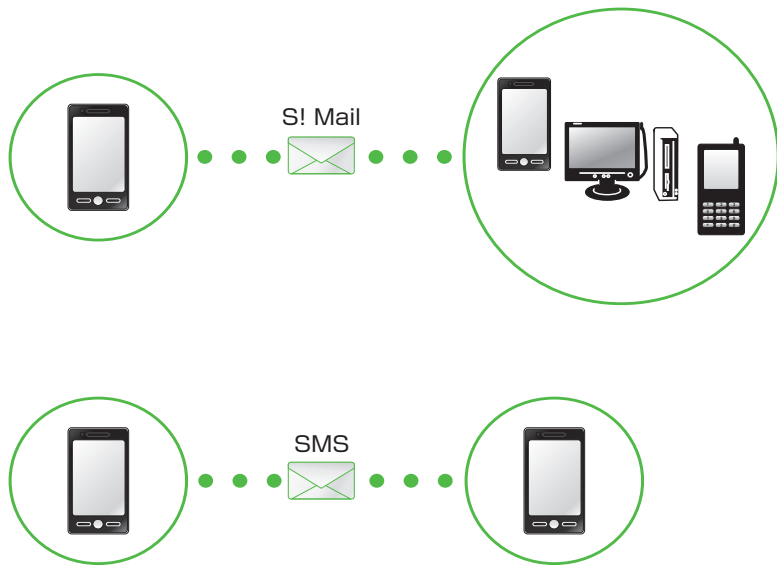
- Messages created on handset may not appear on other party's handset correctly.
- Received Hangul messages are viewable. Use only SMS to create new messages in Hangul.
- However, Hangul characters are automatically deleted when replying to/forwarding S! Mail.
- Hangul may be deleted from sent SMS or appear as spaces on other party's handset.

Sending & Receiving Messages

Note

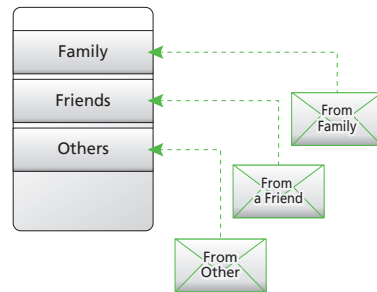
Separate subscription required to use S! Mail.

Messages are sent/received over the network as shown below.



Managing Messages

Set rules to automatically sort messages into folders (P.4-17).



Customizing Mail Address

Change the alphanumerics before @ of mail address (Account name). Default account name consists of random alphanumerics. For details, see SoftBank Website (<http://mb.softbank.jp/en/>). Customizing mail address may help reduce spam.

- 1 Tap **Messaging** → *Settings* → *Custom mail address*
- 2 Select *English* and follow onscreen instructions
 - After customizing mail address, SoftBank sends a confirmation message.
- 3 Tap **Messaging** → *Received msg.* → **Select a folder** → **Select message from Information** → *Yes or No*

Creating/Sending Messages

Drafts and sent messages are saved in different folders.
Sent messages appear in Sent msg. and drafts in Drafts.
Create and send S! Mail/SMS, Graphic Mail, and attach files.

S! Mail

Sending S! Mail to a Phonebook entry is described.

Note




- Received Hangul messages are viewable. However, replying to/forwarding received S! Mail automatically deletes Hangul characters. Use SMS to create new messages in Hangul.

- 1 Tap **Messaging** → *Create new*



S! Mail Creation Window

- 2 Tap **Recipient field**
- 3 *From phonebook* → **Search Phonebook and select an entry** (⇒ P.2-18 **Entry Search** ③)
- 4 **Select number or address**
- 5 Tap **Subject field** → **Enter subject**
- 6 Tap **Attach filed**, when attaching files to mail (⇒ P.4-5)
- 7 Tap **Enter text field** → **Enter text**
- 8 Tap **Send**

- SI mail can be sent from **Enter number/Enter address/From group/From history**.
- Alternatively, in Standby, touch and hold Messaging to open Message creation window.
- Enter SoftBank handset numbers or E-mail addresses in Recipient field. Up to 20 recipients can be add.
- If  or  is pressed with address, subject or text entered or a file attached, an exit confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to exit. To save to Draft after  is pressed, tap **Save**.
- Sent mail is saved in **Sent msg.** or **Unsent msg.** If **Auto delete** (P.14-13) is **On (Auto delete)** and memory is full, the oldest sent messages are deleted automatically (except protected) to make room for new ones. If Unsent msg. is full or messages cannot be deleted automatically, memory full confirmation appears. Delete items and then send message.
- During message creation, message size appears next to **Create msg.** in Message creation window.

Attaching Files

Attach media files directly, or Phonebook/Calendar/Tasks entries or Account details as vCard or vCalendar.

Send messages up to 300KB (including address, subject and text). Attach up to 20 files per SI Mail message.

1 Tap Messaging → Create new → Tap Attach field

2 Attach file

■ To attach Data Folder files

Data Folder → Select a file location → Select a file

- If you are prompted to resize the image, select a size.

■ To attach Images Taken by Camera

Take photo → take photo

■ To attach Movies recorded by Video

Record video → Record video

■ To attach Phonebook entries (vCard)

Phonebook details → Search Phonebook and select an entry (P.2-18) → Tap Add

■ To attach Calendar/Tasks entries (vCalendar)







Calendar item → Tap pulldown menu → **Schedule** or **Tasks** → Select an entry

■ To attach memo saved as VNT format

Notepad → Select file

■ To attach Account details

Account details → Tap Add

- To add files, tap Attach field → **Add file**, and repeat Step 2.
- When files are attached, file type indicators and file names appear in Attached file list.
 -  : Image  : Sound
 -  : Video  : vCalendar
 -  : vCard
 -  : Other

Note

- Some attachments may be lost depending on recipient handset status. For supported file types, see SoftBank Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).
- When attaching video, select a file recorded in Video (P.7-9). If file is incompatible, a warning message appears.
- When attaching Account Details, Hobby information is not attached.

Creating Graphic Mail

Example:

- Changing font size and background color.
- Inserting image and pictograms in Data Folder.
- Scrolling characters to left and right.
- For other items, see "Sending S! Mail" (P.4-17).

1 Tap Messaging → *Create new*
→ Tap Enter Text field

2 Tap More → *Graphic Mail*



Graphic Mail
creation Window

3 *Size* → *Large, Normal, or Small* → Enter text

- To continue, tap Add art.

4 Tap Add art → *BG color*

5 Select a background color

6 Tap Add art → *Image*

7 *Pictures* → Select a file

- If Memory Card is inserted, select from *Digital camera* folder.
- To capture image to insert, select *Camera*.
- If Memory Card is inserted, select *Pictures* and tap to select a Memory Card file.

8 Tap Add art → *My Pict* → Select a pictogram

9 Tap Add art → Tap Select area → Tap start character to modify → Tap Start point → Tap end character to modify → Tap End point → *Effect*

10 *Scroll*

11 *Right to left or Swing*

- In Graphic Mail creation window, tap Undo to reverse most recent change.
- In Graphic Mail creation window, tap Cancel → *Yes* to cancel all graphic settings and return to text entry window.
- Handwriting is not available.

Advanced

Advanced Settings P.4-17

- Viewing History Details
- Deleting Messaging History Records
- Inserting Information into S! Mail
- Moving Cursor to Top or End of Text
- Adding Words to Dictionary (Japanese)
- Setting Conversion
- Saving S! Mail Being Created to Drafts
- Sending Feeling Mail
- Resetting Feeling Setting
- Setting Message Actions
- Viewing 3D Pictograms before Sending
- Deleting All Text
- Viewing Graphic Mail
- Saving Graphic Mail as Template
- Using Template to Create S! Mail

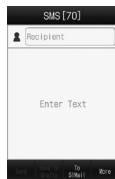
Settings

- Request or cancel Delivery Report (☞ P.14-12)
- Insert or hide Signature (☞ P.14-14)
- Edit Signature (☞ P.14-14)
- Set or cancel Auto Delete for sent messages when Sent memory is full (☞ P.14-13)
- Show or hide transmission progress bar (☞ P.14-12)
- Always show or hide send result (progress bar hidden) (☞ P.14-12)
- Set message sending priority (☞ P.14-14)
- Set sent message Mail Service Center expiry (☞ P.14-14)
- Set time to send a message via Mail Service Center (☞ P.14-14)
- Select reply setting (☞ P.14-12)
- Set "reply to" address (☞ P.14-12)
- Change Message text font size (☞ P.14-5)

SMS

Sending SMS to a Phonebook entry is described.

1 Tap Messaging → *Create new SMS*



SMS Creation Window

2 Tap Recipient field

3 *From phonebook* → Search Phonebook and select an entry (☞ P.2-18 Entry Search 3)

4 Select a phone number

5 Tap Enter Text field → Enter text

6 Tap Send

- Enter SoftBank handset numbers in Recipient field. Up to 20 Recipients can be added.
- When entered text exceeds entry limit (☞ P.4-2), S! Mail conversion confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to switch to S! Mail. When Hangul text is included, a confirmation to delete Hangul text appears. Choose **Yes** to delete Hangul text and switch to S! Mail.
- Sent mail is saved in **Sent msg.** or **Unsent msg.** If **Auto delete** (☞ P.14-13) is **On (Auto delete)** and memory is full, the oldest sent messages are deleted automatically (except protected) to make room for new ones. If Unsent msg. is full or messages cannot be deleted automatically, memory full confirmation appears. Delete items and then send message.

Advanced

Advanced Settings ☞ P.4-21

- Confirming History Details
- Deleting Messaging History Records
- Inserting Information into SMS
- Adding Words to Dictionary (Japanese)
- Setting Conversion
- Saving SMS to Drafts
- Converting SMS to S! Mail
- Viewing 3D Pictograms before Sending
- Deleting All Text

Settings

- Request or cancel Delivery Report (☞ P.14-12)
- Show or hide transmission progress bar (☞ P.14-12)
- Always show or hide send result (progress bar hidden) (☞ P.14-12)
- Set Mail Service Center message expiry time (☞ P.14-15)
- Set Message Center Number (☞ P.14-15)
- Change character code (☞ P.14-15)

Using Templates

Sending S! Mail with Templates to a Phonebook entry is described.

- 1 Tap Messaging → *Templates* → Select templates → Tap Mail**
- 2 Method for sending message (☞ P.4-4 S! Mail 2 to 8)**

Receiving, Replying & Forwarding Messages

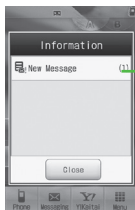
Retrieve complete S! Mail messages automatically or manually.

Auto download: Mail Service Center sends complete S! Mail messages and attachments to handset. Manual retrieval: Mail Service Center sends S! Mail Notice. Notice appears in Standby. Open Received msg. folder to view message. Retrieve complete message as required. Learn how to receive, confirm, reply to, or forward text messages.

Viewing New Messages

For new messages, a notice, including the number of messages received, appears in Standby.

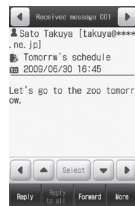
- Handset retrieves complete S! Mail messages, including attachments, by default. Depending on your contract, retrieval may incur charges. Set Manual Retrieval (☞P.4-10).



Information Window
(Received Messages)

Number of
Messages Received

1 Tap notification



Message Window
(S! Mail)

- If 3D Pictograms confirmation appears, select *Always*, *Only unread*, or *Disable*.

●3D Pictograms

When viewing new/unread messages, message text appears in 3D animation.

If *3D Picto. Auto play* (☞P.14-12) is set to other than *Disable*, 3D animation appears. After animation stops or Stop is tapped, Message window appears. Use Menu options in Message window.

- When a file is attached, a file name and thumbnail appear at the bottom of the message.
- If messages are received out of Standby, number of messages, sender numbers or E-mail addresses (names if saved in Phonebook), etc. scroll across Display top. Afterward ☐ appears (☞P.1-3, P.14-12).
- When a Delivery report arrives, ☐ flashes and disappears. In Standby, a notification appears.

- Received mail is saved in Received msg. If *Auto delete* (☞P.14-13) is *On (Auto delete)* and memory is full, unprotected messages are automatically deleted oldest first to make room for new ones. If messages cannot be deleted automatically, confirmation appears. Delete messages and retry.

Note

- In *Receiving options*, *Roaming auto settings*, if you select *Auto download*, take care to avoid high messaging fees when using handset overseas. Auto download is enabled (☞P.14-14) by default; handset automatically retrieves complete S! Mail messages, including attachments.

Retrieving Messages Manually

When **Receiving options** (P.14-14) is set to **Manual retrieval**, S! Mail is temporarily stored on Mail Server; part of the received message is sent to handset as a reception notification. Retrieve complete messages from Mail Server.

- 1 Tap Messaging → *Received msg.*
- 2 Select a folder → Select a notification



- 3 Retrieve mail

Message List Indicators

Unread Message Notification

: Priority high

: Priority standard

: Priority low

Read Message Notification

: Priority high

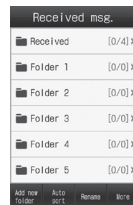
: Priority standard

: Priority low

Viewing from Message List

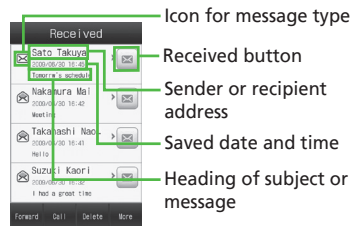
View messages from Received msg., Drafts, Sent msg., or Unsent msg.

- 1 Tap Messaging → *Received msg.*, *Sent msg.* or *Unsent msg.* → Select a folder as required









Mail Folder list window
(Received message)

- 2 Select a message



Message List Window
(Received messages)



- Secret folders do not appear when **Secret mode** is set to **Hide**. To show secret folders, tap More → **Unlock temporarily** → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Select a folder.
- To scroll or highlight items such as phone numbers in a message, tap  /  /  / . Tap **Select** to select the highlighted item.
- In Message window, tap  /  or scroll right/left for next/previous message.
- **No Messages** appears, when there are no messages in Received msg., Drafts, Sent msg., and Unsent msg. folders.



Message List



These indicators appear in message lists.

● Received Message Indicators

Unread S! Mail


  : Priority high



  : Priority standard



  : Priority low

  : Media File Inserted

Read S! Mail


  : Priority high

  : Priority standard

  : Priority low

  : Media File Inserted


Unread Message Notification


 : Priority high

 : Priority standard

 : Priority low


Read Message Notification

 : Priority high

 : Priority standard


 : Priority low


Unread SMS

 : Saved to Phone

 : USIM Card SMS

Read SMS

 : Saved to Phone



 : USIM Card SMS

Receiving

 : S! Mail

● Draft Message Indicators

S! Mail

  : S! Mail

  : Media File Inserted

SMS

 : SMS

● Unsent Message Indicators

S! Mail


  : S! Mail

  : Media File Inserted

 : Resending

SMS

 : SMS

 : USIM Card SMS

● Sent Message Indicators

S! Mail

  : S! Mail



  : Media File Inserted

SMS

 : SMS

 : USIM Card SMS


Delivery Report

  : Unread S! Mail

 : Unread SMS

- If Secret mode is active, only number or address appears for messages to/from Secret entries.


Replying to Received Messages

- 1 Tap Messaging → *Received msg.*
- 2 Select a folder → Tap  beside message to replay
- 3 Create a message (⊙P.4-4 S! Mail 5)

- Reuse received message to reply (⊙P.14-12).
- **Re:** appears in Subject field automatically.
- To send to all recipient, tap Reply to all at Step 2.
- Alternatively, tap Messaging → *Received msg.* → Select a folder → Select a message to reply → Tap Reply or Reply to all **S! Mail/S! Mail(History)/SMS/SMS(History)**.

Forwarding Received Messages

- 1 Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* → Select a folder
- 2 Select a message → Tap Forward
- 3 Create a message (⊙P.4-4 S! Mail 2)

- **Fw:** appears in Subject field automatically.
- To forward received SMS, select S! Mail or SMS.
- Alternatively, tap Messaging → *Received msg.* → Select a folder → Tap Forward →  beside the message to forward.

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings** ⊙P.4-22

- Forwarding Reception Notification or Server Mail
- Making Call to Sender
- Deleting Mail Server Messages via Notification

Settings

- Change font size (☞ P.14-13)
- Change scroll unit (☞ P.14-13)
- Show or hide Navigation Bar (☞ P.14-13)
- Set received message notice content or hide notice (☞ P.14-12)
- Select secret folder message notice setting (☞ P.14-12)
- Adjust 3D Pictogram auto play setting (☞ P.14-12)
- Select 3D Pictogram color settings (☞ P.14-12)
- Select 3D Pictogram Display speed (☞ P.14-12)
- Set S! Mail receiving options (☞ P.14-14)
- Set S! Mail receiving options during roaming (☞ P.14-14)
- Link External Light to incoming Feeling Mail (☞ P.14-13)
- Link External Light color to incoming Feeling Mail (☞ P.14-13)
- Link Vibration to incoming Feeling Mail (☞ P.14-13)
- Set whether to sound handset when Feeling Mail arrives (☞ P.14-13)
- Linking Ringtone to incoming Feeling Mail (☞ P.14-13)
- Set Feeling Mail ringtone duration (☞ P.14-13)
- Set attached image appearance (☞ P.14-14)
- Set attached image auto playback (☞ P.14-14)
- Set attached sound auto playback (☞ P.14-14)

Using Messages

Handset automatically sorts messages into five folders by type.

Folder	Message Type
Received msg.	Received messages are Saved
Drafts	Incomplete messages are Saved
Templates	Created Templates are Saved
Sent msg.	Sent messages are Saved
Unsent msg.	Failed/Canceled/Outgoing messages are Saved

Using Message Information

In Message creation window or Notification, highlight sender, recipient, phone number or E-mail address to save to Phonebook, make a call, send message, etc.

Saving to Phonebook

1 Tap Messaging → Received msg. → Select a folder → Select a message → Select phone number, E-mail address, or URL → Add to phonebook

2 Save a number to Phonebook

■ **To save as a new entry**

New → (☞ P.2-17 Creating New Entries 2)

■ **To update existing entry**

Update → Search Phonebook and select entry (☞ P.2-18) → Save a number to Phonebook (☞ P.2-17)

Saving to Bookmark

- 1 Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* → Select a folder → Select a message → Select URL → *Add to bookmark*
- 2 Enter a title

Using Page Links

Use sender's address, phone number, E-mail address, or URL embedded in message text or Received message window.

- 1 Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* → Select a folder → Select a message
- 2 Use linked information
 - **To make a Voice Call**
Select a phone number → *Voice call*
 - **To make a Video Call**
Select a phone number → *Video call*
 - **To edit a number before call**
Select a phone number → *Edit before call*
 - **To send a message**
Select a phone number or an E-mail address → *Create message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* (☎P.4-4 S! Mail 5, P.4-7 SMS 5)
 - **To access the Internet**
Select URL → *Go to URL* → *Yes*

- When selecting phone number to send a message, select S! Mail or SMS and create a message.
- Alternatively, tap items directly to select.

Locking/Unlocking Messages

Lock a message or all messages in a folder. When deleting a locked message, confirmation appears. Cancel lock to delete.

- 1 Tap Messaging → *Received msg., Drafts, Templates, Sent msg., or Unsent msg.* → Select folder as required
- 2 Tap Lock/Unlock (in some windows, tap More → *Lock/Unlock*) → Mark Lock or Unlock → Tap OK

Deleting Messages or Templates

Deleting Messages

Delete specified messages or all messages in message folder.

- 1 Tap **Messaging** → *Received msg.*, *Drafts*, *Sent msg.*, or *Unsent msg.* → **Select a folder as required**
- 2 Tap **Delete** (in some windows, tap **More** → *Delete*) → **Check message to delete** → Tap **Delete** → *Yes*

Deleting Templates

Delete specified templates or all saved templates.

- 1 Tap **Messaging** → *Templates*
- 2 Tap **Delete** → **Check template** → Tap **Delete** → *Yes*
 - If protected messages or templates are included in the specified messages, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to delete unprotected templates and choose *No* to delete all templates.

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings** ⓘ P.4-23

- Showing 3D Pictograms
- Adding Sender to Phonebook
- Viewing Sender and Recipient
- Copying Message Content
- Deleting Message
- Setting Character Code
- Moving to Top/Bottom of the Message
- Viewing Mail/Template Details
- Sorting Messages
- Locking/Unlocking Message/Template
- Changing Messages to Read/Unread
- Moving SMS Message to Handset/USIM Card
- Sending Draft Message
- Editing & Sending Sent Messages
- Viewing Delivery Report
- Sending Unsent Messages after Editing
- Resending Unsent Messages
- Viewing Error Details for Unsent Message
- Sending Saved Template via S! Mail
- Moving Template
- Copying Template
- Sending Template
- Sorting Template
- Managing Template

- Setting Secret to Templates Folder
- Updating Mail List
- Forwarding Sever Mail
- Deleting Mail List Messages

Settings

- Set or cancel Auto Delete for received messages when Received memory is full (ⓘ P.14-13)
- Set or cancel Auto Delete for sent messages when Sent memory is full (ⓘ P.14-13)

Saving Attached Files to Data Folder

- 1 Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* → Select folder → Select message
- 2 Tap Save (for some windows, tap More → Save → Items) → Check files to save → Tap Save
 - If files with same name exist, notification appears. Tap *OK* → Edit file name.

Managing Messages

Create folders in *Received msg.* and *Sent msg.*, and set rules to each folder to sort messages automatically. Set Security to created folders. *Received msg.* and *Sent msg.* folder cannot be deleted and the settings cannot be changed.

Creating Folders

- 1 Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.*
- 2 Tap Add new folder
- 3 Edit folder name
 - New folder appears at the bottom of list.
 - Even if folders with same name exist, notification does not appear.

Moving Messages

- 1 Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* → Select a folder as required
- 2 Tap More → Move to folder → Check message to move → Tap Move to folder
- 3 Select a destination folder
 - Received messages are saved to *Received msg.* folder, and sent messages are saved to *Sent msg.* folder. To move back to the original folder after moving messages to another folder, operate step 2 and select original folder.

Sorting Messages

Automatically sort sent/received messages to specified folder by number or address, etc. Sort messages by S! Mail subject or SMS text. Up to 20 rules per folder can be set.

1 Tap Messaging → *Received msg. or Sent msg.*

2 Tap Auto sort → Select a folder to move to

3 Set sorting rule

■ To select phone number/E-mail address from Phonebook

Tap Add rule → *Sender* (for some windows, *Recipient*) → *From phonebook* → Search Phonebook and select an entry (P.2-18) → Select phone number or E-mail address

■ To enter phone number/E-mail address directly

Tap Add rule → *Sender* or *Sender(Partial match)* (for some windows, *Recipient* or *Recipient(Partial match)*) → (*Enter number* or *Enter address* When *Sender* (for some windows, *Recipient*) is selected) → Enter phone number or E-mail address

■ To select phone number/E-mail address from Group in Phonebook

Tap Add rule → *Sender* (for some windows, *Recipient*) → *From group* → Select a group

● Groups saved on USIM Card cannot be set as a rule.

■ To select phone number/E-mail address from History

Tap Add rule → *Sender* (for some windows, *Recipient*) → *From history* → Tap pulldown menu → *Sent* or *Received* → Select a history

■ To select a rule from text

Tap Add rule → *Subject* → Enter text to set as a rule

4 Tap OK

Advanced

⌘ **Advanced Settings** P.4-26

- Changing Folder Name
- Setting Secret to Folder
- Deleting Folders
- Viewing Message or Folder Details
- Deleting Sorting Rules

⌘ **Settings**

- Change received message view (P.14-13)
- Change sent message view (P.14-13)

Advanced Settings

⌘ **Advanced Settings**

Sending S! Mail

Entering Address from Other Than Phonebook

Tap Recipient field in S! Mail creation window

■ To enter phone number directly

Enter number → Enter phone number

■ To enter E-mail address directly

Enter address → Enter E-mail address

■ To select phone number from Group in Phonebook

From group → *Phone* or *USIM* → Select group

● If the number of items stored in a group exceeds 21, check recipients to send to → Tap Add.

● When multiple phone numbers or E-mail addresses are saved in an entry, Selection window for address may appear. Select a phone number or a E-mail address.

■ To enter address from Message Log records

From history → Tap pulldown menu → *Sent* or *Received* → Select a record

Adding Address

Tap Recipient field in S! Mail creation window with address already entered → Tap Add recipient

■ To select from Phonebook

From phonebook → Search Phonebook and select entry (ⓂP.2-18) → Select phone number or E-mail address

■ To enter address from History records

From history → Tap pulldown menu → *Sent* or *Received* → Select a record

■ To select phone number from Group in Phonebook

From group → *Phone* or *USIM* → Select group


- When multiple phone numbers or E-mail addresses are saved in an entry, Selection window for address may appear. Select a phone number or an E-mail address.

■ To enter phone number directly

Enter number → Enter phone number

■ To enter E-mail address directly

Enter address → Enter E-mail address

- The number of addresses appears next to Recipient field  in S! Mail creation window.

Viewing History Details

Tap Recipient field in S! Mail creation window → *From history* → Tap pulldown menu → *Sent* or *Received* → Tap View → Select a record to view

Deleting Messaging History Records

In message creation window, tap Recipient field → *From history* → Tap pulldown menu → *Sent* or *Received* → Tap Delete


■ To delete a record

Select an address → Tap Delete → *Yes*

■ To delete all records

Mark all → Tap Delete → *Yes*

Changing Address Type to To, Cc, or Bcc

Tap Recipient field in S! Mail creation window with address already entered → Tap an address  to change → Select an item

Deleting Address

Tap Recipient field in S! Mail creation window with address already entered → Tap Remove

■ To delete a recipient

Select a recipient → Tap Remove → *Yes*

■ To delete all recipients

Mark all → Tap Remove → *Yes*

Viewing Attached File

Tap Attach field in S! Mail creation window → Select a file to view

Deleting Attached File

Tap Attach field in S! Mail creation window → Tap Remove

■ To delete an attached file

Select a file → Tap Remove → *Yes*

■ To delete all attached files

Mark all → Tap Remove → *Yes*

Inserting Information into S! Mail

While creating message in S! Mail creation window, tap More → *Insert*

■ To insert Notepad

Notepad → Select an item

■ To insert barcode

Bar code reader → (ⓂP.10-10 Bar Code Reader )

■ To insert Signature

Signature

■ To insert phone number from Phonebook

Phonebook → Search Phonebook and select an entry (ⓂP.2-18) → Select an item

■ To insert Account details

Account details → Select an item

■ To insert a part of E-mail address

Quick address list → Select an item

Moving Cursor to Top or End of Text

While creating message, in S! Mail creation window tap More → *Cursor position* → Select an item

Adding Words to Dictionary (Japanese)

While creating message in S! Mail creation window, tap More → **Add to dictionary** → (Ⓜ)P.2-14 Saving to User's Dictionary (2)

Setting Conversion

While creating message in S! Mail creation window, tap More → **Conversion**

■ To activate/cancel Prediction

Under **Prediction**, **On** or **Off**

■ To activate/cancel Learning

Under **Learning**, **On** or **Off**

■ To reset Learning

Reset learning → Enter phone password → Tap OK → **Yes**

■ To clear records of pictograms/symbols

Clear history → **Yes**

Saving S! Mail Being Created to Drafts

In S! Mail creation window, tap Save → **To Drafts**

- Only messages with recipient, subject, or text entered, or file attached can be saved.

Sending Feeling Mail

In S! Mail creation window, tap Settings → **Feeling settings** → Select a Feeling → Select pictogram

Resetting Feeling Setting

In S! Mail creation window, tap Settings → **Reset feeling**

Setting Message Actions

In S! Mail creation window, tap Settings → **Action settings**

■ To set whether to delete automatically after the other party reads the message

Under **Set auto delete**, **On** or **Off**

■ To set Reply request

Under **Reply request**, **On** or **Off**

- When **On** is set, select **Edit message** from **Reply request** to edit a message.

■ To restrict message forwarding

Under **Forward NG**, **On** or **Off**

- When **On** is set, select **Edit message** from **Forward NG** to edit a message.

■ To restrict message deletion

Under **Delete NG**, **On** or **Off**

- When **On** is set, select **Edit message** from **Delete NG** to edit a message.

■ To restrict message access with an open question

Quiz → **Quiz setting** → **Open question** → **Question** → Enter question → **Answer** → Enter answer → **Message (Correct)** → Enter message when answer is correct → **Message (Incorrect)** → Enter message when answer is incorrect → Tap OK

- To edit question, tap **Edit question**.

■ To restrict message access with a multiple choice question

Quiz → **Quiz setting** → **Multiple choice question** → **Question** → Enter question → **Answer** → Select correct number → Select Example1 to 4 field to enter choices → **Message (Correct)** → Enter message when answer is correct → **Message (Incorrect)** → Enter message when answer is incorrect → Tap OK

- To edit question, tap **Edit question**.
- When **Action settings** are set, the recipient's action can be set.

Requesting S! Mail Delivery Report

In S! Mail creation window, tap Settings → **Sending options** → Under **Delivery report**, **On** or **Off**

- Set **On** to receive a Delivery report when a message is sent from Mail Server to the other party. This option can be set to the message being created.

Setting Reply Settings

In S! Mail creation window, tap Settings → **Sending options** → Under **Reply settings**, **On** or **Off**

- Set the address in **"Reply to" address** (Ⓜ)P.14-12).

Setting Message Priority

In S! Mail creation window, tap Settings → **Sending options** → **Priority** → Select an item

Setting Mail Server Expiry Time

In S! Mail creation window, tap Settings → *Sending options* → *Expiry time* → Select an item

Setting Delivery Time

In S! Mail creation window, tap Settings → *Sending options* → *Delivery time* → Select an item

Setting whether to Delete Message from Server after Remote Forwarding

In S! Mail creation window, tap Settings → *Sending options* → *Remote Fwd action* → Select an item

- This function is available only when forwarding Server Mail message (☞P.4-26).
-

Viewing 3D Pictograms before Sending

In S! Mail creation window, tap More → *3D Pictogram*

Deleting All Text

In S! Mail creation window, tap More → *Remove text* → *Yes*

Changing Text Color

In Graphic Mail creation window, *Color* → Select a color → Enter text

Blinking Text

In Graphic Mail creation window, *Effect* → *Blink* → *On* → Enter text

- To enter normal text subsequently, *Effect* → *Blink* → *Off* → Enter text.
-

Aligning Text

In Graphic Mail creation window, *Effect* → *Align* → Select an item → Enter text

Inserting BGM/Flash@/Line

In Graphic Mail creation window, *Insert*

■ To insert BGM from Data Folder

BGM → *Ring songs · tones* or *Music* → Select a file

■ To record BGM to insert

BGM → *Record sound* → (ⓂP.10-8 Recording Sound ②)

■ To insert Flash®

Flash → Select a file

■ To insert line

Line

Canceling Inserted BGM

In Graphic Mail creation window with BGM, *Insert* → *BGM cancel*

Changing Color, Size, and Effect of Entered Text

In Graphic Mail creation window with text entered, tap Select area → Tap start character to modify → Tap Start point → Tap end character to modify → Tap End point

■ To change font color

Color → Select a color

■ To change font size

Size → Select an item

■ To change effect

Effect → Select an effect → Select an item

■ To cancel these modifications

Undo

Viewing Graphic Mail

In Graphic Mail creation window with text, tap More → *Preview*

Saving Graphic Mail as Template

In S! Mail creation window, tap Save → *As template* → Enter file name

- Available only when text is decorated (☞P.4-6).
-

Using Template to Create S! Mail

In S! Mail creation window, tap More → *Launch template* → Select a template

- If you are already using template, you are prompted to discard the modification so far. Choose *Yes* to discard it and invoke a new template.

Sending SMS

Specifying Recipient without Phonebook

Tap Recipient field in SMS creation window

■ To directly enter recipient phone number

Enter number → Enter phone number

■ To select recipient from phonebook group

From group → *Phone* or *USIM* → Select a group

- Check the recipient first if the group holds more than 20 members → Tap Add.
- If two or more phone numbers are saved for one recipient, you may be prompted to select one of them.

■ To enter from history

From history → Tap pulldown menu → *Sent* or *Received* → Select a log

Adding Recipient

Tap Recipient field in SMS creation window with address already entered → Tap Add recipients

■ To select from Phonebook

From phonebook → Search Phonebook and select entry (ⓍP.2-18) → Select phone number

■ To enter from history

From history → Tap pulldown menu → *Sent* or *Received* → Select a log


■ To select from Phonebook Group number

From group → *Phone* or *USIM* → Select a group

- If two or more phone numbers are saved for one recipient, you may be prompted to select one of them.

■ To enter phone number directly

Enter Number → Enter phone number

- The number of recipients appears next to Recipient field  in SMS creation window.

Confirming History Details

Tap Recipient field in SMS creation window → *From history* → Tap pulldown menu → *Sent* or *Received* → Tap View → Select a log to view

Deleting Messaging History Records

In message creation window, tap Recipient field → *From history* → Tap pulldown menu → *Sent* or *Received* → Tap Delete

■ To delete a record

Select an address → Tap Delete → *Yes*

■ To delete all records

Mark all → Tap Delete → *Yes*

Deleting Recipient

Tap Recipient field in SMS creation window with address already entered → Tap Remove

■ To delete a Recipient

Select a Recipient → Tap Remove → *Yes*

■ To delete all Recipients

Mark all → Tap Remove → *Yes*

Inserting Information into SMS

While creating message, in SMS creation window, tap More → *Insert*

■ To insert Notepad

Notepad → Select an item

■ To insert barcode

Bar code reader → ⓍP.10-10 Bar Code Reader 

■ To insert signature

Signature

■ To insert phone number from Phonebook

Phonebook → Search Phonebook and select an entry (ⓍP.2-18) → Select an item

To insert Account details

Account details → Select an item

To insert a part of address

Quick address list → Select an item

Adding Words to Dictionary (Japanese)

While creating message, in SMS creation window, tap More → *Add to dictionary* → (ⓂP.2-14 Saving to User's Dictionary ②)

Setting Conversion

While creating message, in SMS creation window, tap More → *Conversion*

To activate/cancel Prediction

Under *Prediction, On* or *Off*

To activate/cancel Learning

Under *Learning, On* or *Off*

To reset User's dictionary

Reset learning → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

To clear records of pictograms/symbols

Clear history → *Yes*

Saving SMS to Drafts

In SMS creation window, tap Save to Drafts

- Available only when either recipient or text is entered.

Converting SMS to S! Mail

In SMS creation window, tap To S!Mail

Requesting SMS Delivery Report

In SMS creation window, tap More → *Sending options* → Under *Delivery report, On* or *Off*

- Set *On* to receive a Delivery report when a message is sent from Mail Server to the other party. This option can be set to the message being created.

Setting Mail Server Expiry Time

In SMS creation window, tap More → *Sending options* → *Expiry time* → Select an item

Viewing 3D Pictograms before Sending

In SMS creation window, tap More → *3D Pictogram*

Deleting All Text

In SMS creation window, tap More → *Remove text* → *Yes*

Received Messages**Retrieving Messages Manually**

Tap Messaging → *Retrieve new*


Setting Display Size of Attached Image

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* → Select folder → Select message → Tap More → *Settings* → *Picture appearance* → Select an item

Forwarding Reception Notification or Server Mail

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* → Select folder → Select notification → Tap Forward → Select an item → (ⓂP.4-4 S! Mail ②)

Making Call to Sender

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* → Select folder → *Call* →  beside message

- The sender should be logged as a phone number.

Deleting Mail Server Messages via Notification

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* → Select folder → Select notification → Tap More → *Delete* → Select an item

Using/Managing Messages

Viewing Attachment

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.*, *Sent msg.*, or *Unsent msg.* → Select a folder as required → Select message → Select a file → *Open*

- To save a file to Data Folder before viewing, select a file in Message window and select *Save*.
- To save attachment to vCard or vCalendar before viewing, select a file in Message window and select *Register to Phonebook*, or *Register to Calendar*.
- To save vCard or vCalendar to Phonebook, Calendar, or Tasks after viewing, tap Register.
- When a file requiring Content Key is attached, a confirmation appears. To view the file, choose *Yes* and purchase or acquire Content Key.
- When a file which allows play/view only once is attached, a confirmation appears.

Saving Attached Files to Data Folder

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* → Select folder → Select message → Tap Save (for some windows, tap More → *Save* → *Items*) → Check files to save → Tap Save

- If files with same name exist, notification appears. Tap *OK* → Edit file name.

Saving Received/Sent Graphic Mail as Template

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* → Select folder → Select message → Tap Save (in some windows, tap More → *Save* → *As template*) → Enter file name

- Available only when text is decorated (⊕P.4-6).

Showing 3D Pictograms

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.*, *Sent msg.*, or *Unsent msg.* → Select a folder as required → Select message → Tap More → *3D Pictogram*

Adding Sender to Phonebook

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* → Select folder → Tap More → *Add to phonebook* → Select message → Select phone number or E-mail address

■ **To save as a new entry**
New → (⊕P.2-17 Creating New Entries ⊕)

■ **To update existing entry**
Update → Search Phonebook and select entry (⊕P.2-18) → Enter each item (⊕P.2-17)

- Alternatively, tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* → Select folder → Tap More → *Add to phonebook* →  beside message → Select phone number or E-mail address.

Viewing Sender and Recipient

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* → Select folder → Select message → Tap More → *View mail address*

Copying Message Content

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* → Select folder → Select message → Tap Copy (in some windows, tap More → *Copy*)

■ **To copy sender or recipient address**
Address → Select address to copy

■ **To copy subject**
Subject (⊕P.2-21 Specifying Range to Copy/Cut)

■ **To copy text**
Message text (⊕P.2-21 Specifying Range to Copy/Cut)

Deleting Message

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.*, *Sent msg.*, or *Unsent msg.* → Select folder as required → Select message → Tap Delete (in some windows, tap More → *Delete*) → *Yes*

Setting Font Size

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.*, *Sent msg.*, or *Unsent msg.* → Select folder as required → Select message → Tap More → *Settings* → *Font size* → Select an item

Changing Scroll Unit

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.*, *Sent msg.*, or *Unsent msg.* → Select folder as required → Select message → Tap More → *Settings* → *Scroll unit* → Select an item

Showing/Hiding Navigation Bar

Tap Messaging → **Received msg.**, **Sent msg.**, or **Unsent msg.** → Select folder as required → Select message → Tap More → **Settings** → Under **Navigation bar**, **On** or **Off**

Setting Character Code

Tap Messaging → **Received msg.** → Select folder → Select message → Tap More → **Char-code** → Select an item

Moving to Top/Bottom of the Message

Tap Messaging → **Received msg.**, **Sent msg.**, or **Unsent msg.** → Select folder as required → Select message → Tap More → **Scroll jump** → Select an item

Viewing Mail/Template Details

Tap Messaging → **Received msg.**, **Templates**, **Sent msg.** or **Unsent msg.** → Select folder as required → Select message or template → Tap Details (in some windows, tap More → Details)


- Alternatively, tap Messaging → **Received msg.**, **Drafts**, **Templates**, **Sent msg.**, or **Unsent msg.** → Select folder as required → Tap Details (in some windows, tap More → **Details**) → Select message or Templates

Sorting Messages

Tap Messaging → **Received msg.**, **Drafts**, **Sent msg.** or **Unsent msg.** → Select folder as required → Tap Sort by (in some windows, tap More → **Sort by**) → Select an item

- Sort messages by following items.
 - By time (**Time** ↓ / **Time** ↑)
 - By sender (**Sender**)
 - By read or unread messages (**Read/Unread**)
 - By subject (**Subject**)
 - By message size (**Size**)
 - By attachment (**Attach**)
 - By locked/unlocked message (**Lock**)
- When **Sender** or **Subject** is selected, messages are sorted by the order of single-byte symbol, single-byte number, single-byte alphabet, single-byte Katakana, double-byte symbol, double-byte Hiragana, double-byte Katakana, Kanji, double-byte number, and double-byte alphabet. When **Subject** is selected, messages with **Untitled** appear first.

Locking/Unlocking Message/Template

Tap Messaging → **Received msg.**, **Drafts**, **Templates**, **Sent msg.** or **Unsent msg.** → Select folder as required → Tap Lock/Unlock (in some windows, tap More → **Lock/Unlock**) →  to lock → Tap OK



- Tap  to unlock.



Changing Messages to Read/Unread

Tap Messaging → **Received msg.** → Select a folder → Tap More → **Switch to read/unread** →  to read /  to unread → Tap OK

- Setting toggles by each tap.

Moving SMS Message to Handset/USIM Card

Tap Messaging → **Received msg.**, **Sent msg.** or **Unsent msg.** → Select folder as required → Tap More → **Move to USIM/phone** →  /  to move



- Tap  to move to USIM Card, tap  to move to handset.
- Save up to 10 messages to USIM Card. The number of messages that can be saved varies by USIM Card.
- When moving received SMS messages in a personal folder to USIM Card, a confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to move to USIM Card.

Sending Draft Message

Tap Messaging → **Drafts** → Select message → Tap Send

- When recipient is not entered, Send is not available to tap.

Editing & Sending Sent Messages

Tap Messaging → **Sent msg.** → Select folder → Select message → Tap Edit → (ⓧP.4-4 S! Mail , P.4-7 SMS )

- Alternatively, tap Messaging → **Sent msg.** → Select folder → Tap Edit →  to send.


Viewing Delivery Report

Tap Messaging → **Sent msg.** → Select folder → Select a message with **Delivery report** setting → Tap Report

- Available only when SMS or S! mail with phone number in Recipient field is sent.

Sending Unsent Messages after Editing

Tap Messaging → **Unsent msg.** → Select message → Tap Edit → (P.4-4 S! Mail 2), P.4-7 SMS 2)

- Alternatively, tap Messaging → **Unsent msg.** → Tap Edit → Tap  to send.

Resending Unsent Messages

Tap Messaging → **Unsent msg.** → Tap Resend → Tap  to resend

Viewing Error Details for Unsent Message

Tap Messaging → **Unsent msg.** → Tap More → **Error details** → Select a message to view

Viewing Saved Template

Tap Messaging → **Templates** → Select template

Editing Saved Template

Tap Messaging → **Templates** → Select saved template → Tap Mail → Tap Enter Text field → Enter text → Tap OK → Tap Save → **As template** → Enter file name

Sending Saved Template via S! Mail

Tap Messaging → **Templates** → Select template → Tap Send via message → (P.4-4 S! Mail 2)

Moving Template

Tap Messaging → **Templates** → Tap Move → **Folders** or **Files** → Check folder or template to move → Tap Move → Select a destination

- To create new target folder, tap Create folder → Enter folder name.

Copying Template

Tap Messaging → **Templates** → Tap Copy → **Folders** or **Files** → Check folder or template → Tap Copy → Select a location to copy

Sending Template

Tap Messaging → **Templates** → Tap More → **Send**

■ To send via Mail

Via message → Select template → (P.4-4 S! Mail 2)

■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → Check template to send → Tap Send → (P.13-7 Sending Data 2)

■ To send via infrared

Via infrared → Check template to send → Tap Send → (P.13-3)

Sorting Template

Tap Messaging → **Templates** → Tap More → **Sort by** → Select an item

Managing Template

Tap Messaging → **Templates** → Select folder as required → Tap More → **Manage**

■ To change Folder or File Name

Rename → Select folder or file → Enter name

■ To create folder

Create folder → Enter folder name

■ To view Contents Key

Content key info → Select Content Key

■ To purchase or acquire Contents Key

Download Content key → Select template

Setting Secret to Templates Folder

Tap Messaging → **Templates** → Tap More → **Set/Unset secret** → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Check folders to set secret → Tap OK

- Secret folders are hidden in **Secret mode**. To cancel Secret mode temporarily, tap More → **Unlock temporarily** → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK.

Viewing Server Mail

Tap Messaging → **Server mail** → **Retrieve mail list** → When a confirmation appears, **Yes**

Updating Mail List

Tap Messaging → *Server mail* → *Retrieve mail list* → Tap Update

Receiving Mail List Message

Tap Messaging → *Server mail*

■ To receive a selected message



Retrieve mail list → When a confirmation appears, **Yes** → Tap Get → Select message to receive

■ To receive all mails

Retrieve all mails

- Alternatively, *Retrieve mail list* → When a confirmation appears, **Yes** → Tap Retrieve all

Forwarding Sever Mail

Tap Messaging → *Server mail* → *Retrieve mail list* → When a confirmation appears, **Yes** → Tap More → **Remote forward** →  to forward (ⓅP.4-4 S! Mail )

- **Fw:** appears in Subject field automatically.
- Set whether to delete message from Server after forwarding Server Mail message (ⓅP.4-20 Setting whether to Delete Message from Server after Remote Forwarding).

Deleting All Server Mail

Tap Messaging → *Server mail* → **Delete all** → Select an item → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → **Yes**

Deleting Mail List Messages

Tap Messaging → *Server mail* → *Retrieve mail list* → When a confirmation appears, **Yes** → Tap More → **Delete** → Check message to delete → Tap Delete → **Yes**

Viewing Server Mail Usage

Tap Messaging → *Server mail* → *Server mail memory*

- To update status, tap Update.

Viewing Memory Status

Tap Messaging → *Memory status* → Tap pulldown menu → *Size (KB)* or *Count*

- *Received msg.*, *Drafts*, *Sent msg.* *Unsent msg.* and *SMS (USIM)* memory appears.
- USIM Card *SMS (USIM)* appears by *Count* only.
- To delete contents of current item, tap Delete (ⓅP.12-15 Deleting Registered/Saved Data).

Managing Folders

Changing Folder Name

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* → Tap Rename → Select a folder → Enter name

Setting Secret to Folder

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* → Tap More → **Set/Unset secret** → Select a folder → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Tap OK

- Secret folders are *hidden* in *Secret mode*. To cancel Secret mode temporarily, tap More → **Unlock temporarily** → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK.

Deleting Folders

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* → Tap More → **Delete** → Select a folder to delete → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → **Yes**

Viewing Message or Folder Details

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* → Tap More → **Details** → Select a folder

Changing Sorting Rules

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.*

→ Tap Auto sort → Select a folder to have rules to change

■ To change phone numbers or E-mail or Partial match E-mail addresses to sort

Select Rule field → (P.4-17 Sorting Messages 3)

■ To change the text

Select Text field → Edit Text → Tap OK

Deleting Sorting Rules

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.*

→ Tap Auto sort → Select a folder to have rules to delete → Tap Delete → Check rules to delete → Tap Delete

Memo

Blank memo template with a green header and horizontal dotted lines for writing.

Internet Services

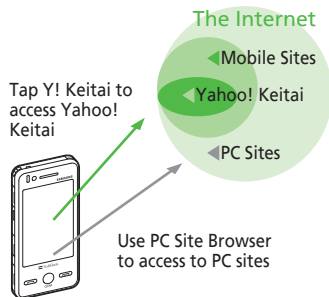


Internet Services	5-2
Web Certificates (SSL/TLS)	5-2
Opening Saved Pages	5-2
Yahoo! Keitai	5-3
Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu.....	5-3
Entering URL	5-3
Entering URL from History.....	5-3
PC Site Browser	5-4
PC Site Browser Homepage	5-4
Entering URL	5-4
Entering URL from History.....	5-4
Page Operations	5-5
Selecting Menu.....	5-5
Entering Text.....	5-5
Page Zoom.....	5-6
Multi Page (Tab).....	5-6
Buttons & Check Boxes.....	5-6
Streaming from Page Link	5-7
Bookmarks & Saved Pages	5-7
Saving Bookmarks	5-7
Accessing Bookmarks	5-7
Saving Pages	5-7
Opening Saved Pages	5-7
Advanced Settings	5-8
Yahoo! Keitai	5-8
PC Site Browser	5-10
Page Operations.....	5-12
Bookmarks	5-13
Saved Pages	5-15

Internet Services

Access Mobile sites via Yahoo! Keitai or Internet sites via PC Site Browser.

View Web page contents or download media files.



- In this guide, "Yahoo! Keitai" refers to SoftBank Mobile Internet portal and service itself. "PC sites" are sites accessible via PC Site Browser. "Internet" refers to both Internet and Mobile Internet sites.
- A separate subscription is required for Internet services.
- Before using Internet, retrieve Network information.

Note

- Internet connections incur Packet Communication fees.

Web Certificates (SSL/TLS)

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) and Transport Layer Security (TLS) are encryption protocols for secure Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information (credit card numbers, etc.) and authentication.

Confirm electronic certificates saved on handset (☞ P.5-10, P.5-12).

Note

● Using SSL/TLS

When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open a page.

Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage, SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp., VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., Entrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Inc. and SECOM Trust Systems Co., Ltd. are not liable for the security of SSL/TLS. No liability is assumed for any damage associated with SSL/TLS use.

Opening Saved Pages

Retrieved Mobile Internet pages are temporarily saved in cache. Cache remains even after a session ends or handset is turned off. When full, oldest pages are automatically deleted to make room for new ones.

When a saved page is opened again, it may open from Cache. For the latest content, reload the page.

- When another USIM Card is inserted, cache contents are automatically deleted.
- When a page with an expiry date is saved, page is automatically deleted upon expiry.

Yahoo! Keitai

Use Yahoo! Keitai to view page contents or download image/music files.

Alternatively, access Yahoo! Keitai from Main menu, Access History, or by entering URL.

Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

Access Mobile sites via Yahoo! Keitai main menu.

1 Tap Y!Keitai

2 Select an item

- When accessing Mobile site for the first time, a screen for retrieving Network Information appears at Step 1. After the retrieval, an information page appears.
- To open PC Site Browser from Yahoo! Keitai, tap More → *Switch to PC site browser* → *This page or Link* → *Yes* or *No*.

Note

- When *Send referer* is set to *Not send*, pages may not appear (P.5-10).

Entering URL

Enter URL in Yahoo! Keitai Enter URL window to access target page.

1 Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → Enter URL

- "http://" is set by default.

2 Enter URL

Entering URL from History

Accessed URLs from Yahoo! Keitai are saved in Yahoo! Keitai Access History.

Select site from Access History to access target page.

1 Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → History

2 Select site

Advanced

Advanced Settings (P.5-8)

- Showing or Hiding Keypad on Pages
- Copying Text
- Refreshing Page
- Entering URL to Open Another Site/Page
- Searching with New Window

- Searching Text
- Moving to Top/Bottom of Page
- Sending URL
- Deleting Access History
- Sending Access History
- Viewing Access History Details
- Zooming Page in/out
- Viewing Flash®
- Viewing Only Selected Frame
- Viewing Page Details
- Moving to Main Menu
- Exiting Browser

Settings

- Delete cache/Cookie/certificates (P.14-15)
- Show or hide Manufacture Number (P.14-15)
- Send or hide Referer (P.14-15)
- Select Cookie setting (P.14-15)
- Select Script setting (P.14-15)
- Confirm Root Certificate (P.14-16)
- Set Certificate retention period (P.14-16)
- Initialize Browser (P.14-15)
- Reset settings (P.14-16)


PC Site Browser

Use PC Site Browser to view page contents or download image/music files from PC sites. Alternatively, access PC Site Browser from Main menu, Access History, or by entering URL.

PC Site Browser Homepage

Access PC sites via PC Site Browser Homepage.

- 1 Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → *PC site browser* → *Homepage*
 - If a warning appears, choose *Yes* or *No*.
- 2 Select an item

- Activate PC Site Browser,  appears.
- In PC Site Browser, only document files can be downloaded or stream.
- Some sites may not appear correctly.
- To open Yahoo! Keitai from PC Site Browser, tap More → *Switch to Yahoo! Keitai* → If a warning appears, choose *Yes* or *No*.

Note

- When *Send referer* is set to *Not send*, pages may not open (⚙️P.5-12).
- Viewing rich contents sites may incur high Packet Communication fees.

Entering URL

Enter URL from PC Site Browser Enter URL window to access target page.

- 1 Tap Menu → Y!Keitai → *PC site browser* → *Enter URL*
 - "http://" is set in URL field by default.
- 2 Enter URL
 - If a warning appears, choose *Yes* or *No*.

Entering URL from History

Accessed URLs from PC Site Browser are saved in History.

Select site from History to access target page.

- 1 Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → *PC site browser* → *History*
- 2 Select site
 - When warning message appear, select *Yes* or *No*.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (ⓘ P.5-10)

- Zooming Page in/out
- Copying Text
- Searching Text
- Sending URL
- Moving to Top/Bottom of Page
- Deleting Access History
- Sending Access History
- Viewing Access History Details
- Viewing Flash®
- Viewing Only Selected Frame
- Viewing Page Details
- Opening Main Menu
- Changing Page Layout
- Exiting Browser

Settings

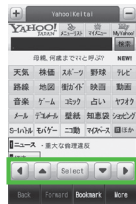
- Delete cache/Cookie/certificates (ⓘ P.14-16)
- Show or hide Manufacture Number (ⓘ P.14-16)
- Send or hide Referer (ⓘ P.14-16)
- Select Cookie setting (ⓘ P.14-16)
- Select Script setting (ⓘ P.14-16)
- Confirm Root Certificate (ⓘ P.14-16)
- Set Certificate retention period (ⓘ P.14-16)
- Show or hide warning (ⓘ P.14-17)
- Initialize Browser (ⓘ P.14-16)
- Reset settings (ⓘ P.14-16)

Page Operations

Text and pictures shown in page can be zoom in/out.

Alternatively, select menu to link target page, set function with radio button.

Selecting Menu



Yahoo! Keitai Screen

- 1 : Scroll to up/down/left/right, or move the cursor *Select*
- 2 Select Menu and tap Select

- Alternatively, tap an item directly to select the link.
- Alternatively, touch the screen directly to scroll.
- Press with no previous page, you are prompted to close Internet connection. Choose **Yes** to close it.
- Tap Back or press to return previous page.
- Highlight link and tap Select; move to target page.
- Tap Next to back to the status before tapping Back or pressing .
- In case of PC Site Browser, rotate handset to display image view horizontally to Landscape view. Operations are the same as Landscape view.
- In case of PC Site Browser, press to change to full screen view. Press it again to return to the previous view.
- In case of PC Site Browser, touching and holding an item will open it in a new tab (not available in full screen view).

Entering Text

Enter text or recognition password.



- 1 Select Text field
- 2 Enter text

Note

- Text entry and item selection varies by page.

Page Zoom

Zoom is available only in PC Site Browser.

1 Tap zoom

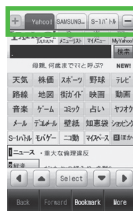
2 Tap / to adjust zoom level



- Alternatively, use  to adjust zoom.

Multi Page (Tab)


Use tabs at top of Display to open pages.
Open up to three pages simultaneously.



1 Tap

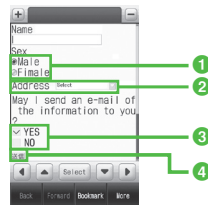
2 Select tab, access target information (P.5-12)

3 Select tab to switch Pages

- Tap  to close viewing tab.

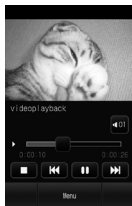
- Yahoo! Keitai and PC sites cannot be open simultaneously.
- Some pages may open in a new tab automatically.
- When multiple tabs are open, some pages may be partially obscured. Close unnecessary tabs.

Buttons & Check Boxes



- 1 Radio button**
Select an item only. Select an item with to select it (Appearing as .
- 2 Menu field**
Open a menu and select an item.
Highlight menu → select an item.
- 3 Check box**
Select multiple items. Select an item with to select it (Appearing as .
- 4 Command button**
Perform operations assigned to a button.
Highlight a command button → select an item.

Streaming from Page Link



- 1 Open a page containing a page link
- 2 Select a link

Advanced

Settings

- Change page font size (☞ P.14-15, P.14-16)
- Set page scroll unit (☞ P.14-15)
- Show or hide page navigation when zooming (☞ P.14-16)
- Show or hide page images (☞ P.14-15, P.14-16)
- Play or mute page sounds (☞ P.14-15, P.14-16)
- Set text size in Yahoo! Keitai pages (☞ P.14-5)
- Set text size in PC Site Browser (☞ P.14-5)

Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Save site URLs to Bookmarks. Save page content to Saved Pages. Open pages without establishing an Internet connection.

Saving Bookmarks

Save up to 50 bookmarks for Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser, each.

- 1 Open a page
- 2 Tap Bookmark → *Save*
- 3 Enter title

Accessing Bookmarks

- 1 Hold Y! Keitai → *PC site browser* as required → *Bookmarks*
- 2 Select a bookmark

Note

- Internet connections may incur Packet Communication fees.

Saving Pages

Save pages to view without connecting to the Internet.

Save up to 30 pages for Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser, each.

- 1 Open a page
- 2 Tap Menu (in some windows, tap More → *Saved pages*) → *Save*
- 3 Enter title

Opening Saved Pages

- 1 Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → *PC site browser* as required → *Saved pages*
- 2 Select a page

Note

- If USIM Card inserted when page was saved is replaced, saved page will not open.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (P.5-13)

- Opening Bookmarked Site
- Saving Bookmark by Direct Entry
- Editing Bookmark Title or URL
- Deleting Bookmarks
- Creating Folders in Bookmark List
- Sending Bookmark URL
- Sending Bookmark URL via Bluetooth®
- Sending Bookmark URL via Infrared
- Moving Bookmark to Folders
- Changing Bookmark Order
- Saving Bookmark to Data Folder
- Viewing Bookmark Details
- Opening Saved Pages in a Page
- Renaming Saved Pages
- Deleting Saved Pages
- Changing Order of Saved Pages

Advanced Settings

Advanced Settings

Yahoo! Keitai

Showing or Hiding Keypad on Pages

In a page, tap More → *Show keypad* or *Hide keypad*

- In some pages, tap numbers on Keypad, [X], or [#] to select an item.
- Move slider displayed to adjust the transparency of Keypad.

Copying Text

In a page, tap More → *Copy text*

To copy selected text

Tap the first character to copy → Tap Start point
→ Tap the last character to copy → Tap End point

To copy all text in text entry window

Tap All

Refreshing Page

In a page, tap More → *Refresh*

Entering URL to Open Another Site/Page

In a page, tap More → *Enter URL* → Enter URL

Entering URL from History

From Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → *Enter URL* → Tap More
→ *Insert* → *EnterURL logs* → Select URL

From a page

In a page, tap More → *Enter URL* → Tap More
→ *Insert* → *EnterURL logs* → Select URL

- In URL entry window, enter URL from History. Up to 10 URL logs appear, newest first. When limit is reached, the oldest page is deleted automatically.

Searching with New Window

In a page, tap More → *Web search* → Enter text

Searching Text

In a page, tap More → *Search* → Enter text to search

- Words that match are highlighted. Tap Prev. or Next to search for the previous or next match.

Moving to Top/Bottom of Page

In a page, tap More → *Jump* → Select an item

Sending URL

In a page, tap More → *Send URL* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (P.4-4 S! Mail 2, P.4-7 SMS 2)

Opening Previously Viewed Page

From Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → **History** → Select URL

From a page

In a page, tap More → **History** → Select URL

- Up to 50 accessed URLs are saved.

Deleting Access History

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → **History** → Tap Delete → Check history to delete → Tap Delete → **Yes**

- Alternatively, in a page, tap More → **History** → Tap Delete → Check history to delete → Tap Delete → **Yes**.

Sending Access History

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → **History** → Tap Send URL → **S! Mail** or **SMS** → Select history to send → **Yes** → (📧P.4-4 S! Mail 📱, P.4-7 SMS 📱)

- Alternatively, in a page, tap More → **History** → Tap Send URL → **S! Mail** or **SMS** → Select history to send → **Yes**.

Viewing Access History Details

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → **History** → Tap Details → Select history

- Alternatively, in a page, tap More → **History** → Tap Details → Select history.

Zooming Page in/out

In a page, tap More → **Zoom in/out** → Adjust size

Viewing Flash®

In a page, open Flash® file, and tap More → **Flash® menu**

To pause/play

Pause or **Play**

To play from beginning

Play from start

Viewing Only Selected Frame

In a page, tap More → **Frame in**

- Some pages may be divided into multiple sections. Such a section is referred as "Frame".
- To return to the normal display, tap More → **Frame out**.

Viewing Page Details

In a page, tap More → **Details**

To view Page information

Page information

To view Server certificate

Server certification

Moving to Main Menu

In a page, tap More → **Yahoo! Keitai**

Show or hide Navigation Bar

In a page, tap More → **Settings** → Under **Navigation bar**, **On** or **Off**

Changing Font Size

In a page, tap More → **Settings** → **Font size** → Select an item

Changing Scroll Unit

In a page, tap More → **Settings** → **Scroll unit** → Select an item

Changing Character Code

In a page, tap More → **Settings** → **Encoding** → Select an item

- If page text appears garbled, changing character encoding may solve the problem.

Setting Show/Play of Image/Sound

In a page, tap More → **Settings** → **Downloads**

To set image

Under **Display image**, **On** or **Off**

To set sound

Under **Play sounds**, **On** or **Off**

Setting the Saving Location

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → **Yahoo! Keitai browser settings** → **Save to** → **Phone/Memory card/Ask each time**

- Alternatively, in a page, tap More → **Settings** → **Save to** → **Phone/Memory card/Ask each time**

Clearing Cache

In a page, tap More → **Settings** → **Memory manager** → **Clear cache** → **Yes**

Deleting Cookies

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Memory manager* → *Delete cookies* → *Yes*

Deleting Certificates

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Memory manager* → *Delete certificates* → *Yes*

Setting Manufacture Number Notification

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Security* → Under *Manufacture number, On or Off*

Sending/Not Sending Referer Information

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Security* → *Send referer* → Select an item

- Referer is a link source URL information. It is sent to Web server when accessing websites.

Enabling Cookies

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Security* → *Cookies* → Select an item

- Select *Confirm* for acceptance confirmation every time before a Cookie is saved.
- Cookie automatically saves identification information of visitors to handset. Cookies contain user information and allow sites to recognize users and track preferences.

Enabling Script

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Security* → *Script* → Select an item

Checking Root Certificates

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Security* → *Root certificates* → Select a certificate

- View electronic certificate preinstalled on handset.

Certificate Retention

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Security* → *Certificate retention* → Select an item

Initializing Saved Information

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Initialized browser* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

- Initialize browser settings or information such as Bookmarks or Saved pages.

Resetting Yahoo! Keitai Settings

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Reset settings* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

Exiting Browser

In a page, tap More → *Exit*

PC Site Browser

Zooming Page in/out

In a page, tap Zoom → Adjust size

Copying Text

In a page, tap More → *Copy text*

■ To copy selected text

Tap the first character to copy → Tap Start point
→ Tap the last character to copy → Tap End point

■ To copy all text in text entry window

Tap All

Entering URL from History

■ From PC Site Browser

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → *PC site browser*
→ *Enter URL* → Tap More → *Insert* →
EnterURL logs → Select URL

■ From a page

In a page, tap URL field → Tap More → *Insert*
→ *EnterURL logs* → Select URL

- In URL entry window, enter URL from History. Up to 10 URL logs appear, newest first. When limit is reached, the oldest page is deleted automatically.

Searching Text

In a page, tap More → *Search* →
Enter text to search

- Words that match are highlighted. Tap Prev. or Next to search for the previous or next match.

Sending URL

In a page, tap More → *Send URL* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (☎P.4-4 *S! Mail* 2, P.4-7 *SMS* 2)

Moving to Top/Bottom of Page

In a page, tap More → *Quick movement* → Drag a frame to an area to view → Tap Select

Opening Previously Viewed Page

■ From PC Site Browser

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → *PC site browser* → *History* → Select URL

■ From a page

In a page, tap More → *History* → Select URL

- Up to 50 accessed page URLs are saved.

Deleting Access History

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → *PC site browser* → *History* → Tap Delete → Check history to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

- Alternatively, in a page, tap More → *History* → Tap Delete → Check history to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*.

Sending Access History

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → *PC site browser* → *History* → Tap Send URL → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → Select history to send → *Yes* → (☎P.4-4 *S! Mail* 2, P.4-7 *SMS* 2)

- Alternatively, in a page, tap More → *History* → Tap Send URL → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → Select history to send → *Yes*.

Viewing Access History Details

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → *PC site browser* → *History* → Tap Details → Select history

- Alternatively, in a page, tap More → *History* → Tap Details → Select history.

Viewing Flash®

In a page, open Flash® file, and tap More → *Flash® menu*

■ To pause/play

Pause or *Play*

■ To play from beginning

Play from start

Viewing Only Selected Frame

In a page, tap More → *Frame in*

- Some pages may be divided into multiple sections. Such a section is referred as a "Frame".
- To return to the normal display, tap More → *Frame out*.

Viewing Page Details

In a page, tap More → *Details*

■ To view Page information

Page information

■ To view Server certificate

Server certification

Opening Main Menu

In a page, tap More → *Homepage*

Changing Font Size

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Font size* → Select an item

Setting the Guide Show or Hide When Zoom

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → Under *Page navigation, On or Off*

Changing Character Code

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Encoding* → Select an item

- If page text appears garbled, changing character encoding may solve the problem.

Setting Show/Play of Image/Sound

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Downloads*

■ To set image

Under *Display image, On or Off*

■ To set sound

Under *Play sounds, On or Off*

Setting the Saving Location

Tap Menu → Y!Keitai → *PC site browser* → *PC site browser settings* → *Save to* → *Phone/Memory card/Ask each time*

- Alternatively, in a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Save to* → *Phone/Memory card/Ask each time*

Clearing Cache

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Memory manager* → *Clear cache* → *Yes*

Deleting Cookies

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Memory manager* → *Delete cookies* → *Yes*

Deleting Certificates

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Memory manager* → *Delete certificates* → *Yes*

Setting Manufacture Number Notification

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Security* → Under *Manufacture number, On* or *Off*

Sending/Not Sending Referer Information

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Security* → *Send referer* → Select an item

- Referer is a link source URL information. It is sent to Web server when accessing websites.

Enabling Cookies

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Security* → *Cookies* → Select an item

- Select *Confirm* to display acceptance confirmation every time before Cookie is saved.
- Cookie automatically saves identification information of visitors to handset. Cookies contain user information and allow sites to recognize users and track preferences.

Enabling Script

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Security* → *Script* → Select an item

Checking Root Certificates

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Security* → *Root certificates* → Select a certificate

- View electronic certificate preinstalled on handset.

Certificate Retention

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Security* → *Certificate retention* → Select an item

Setting to Show Warning Messages

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Warning messages* → Under *Activate PC site browser* or *Switch to Yahoo! Keitai, On* or *Off*

- Always show or hide warning when activating PC Site Browser or switching between Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser or vice versa.

Initializing Saved Information

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Initialized browser* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

- Initialize browser settings or information such as Bookmarks or Saved pages.

Resetting PC Site Browser

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Reset settings* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

Changing Page Layout

In a page, tap More → *Small screen* or *PC screen*

Exiting Browser

In a page, tap More → *Exit*

Page Operations

Saving Phone Number/E-mail Address

In a page containing phone number/E-mail address, select phone number or E-mail address → *Save Number* → *Phone* or *USIM*

■ To save as a new entry

New → (ⓈP.2-17 Creating New Entries ②)

■ To update entry

Update → Search Phonebook and select entry (ⓈP.2-18) → Enter each item (ⓈP.2-17)

- Available phone numbers and E-mail addresses appear underlined.

Sending Mail to Number/E-mail Address

In a page containing phone number/E-mail address, select phone number or E-mail address → *Create Message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (ⓈP.4-4 S! Mail ⑤, P.4-7 SMS ⑤)

- Available phone numbers and E-mail addresses appear underlined.

Calling Phone Number

In a page containing phone number, select phone number → *Voice Call* or *Video Call*

- Available phone numbers appear underlined.

Using URL to Open Another Page

Select URL in a page

- Available URLs appear underlined.

Saving Images or Other Files from Pages

To save images on a page

In a page, tap More → *Save files* → *Save items* → Select image to save → Tap Save

- For Yahoo! Keitai, select an image to save only when multiple images are there.

To save background images

In a page, tap More → *Save files* → *Save BG image* → Tap Save

To save background sound

In a page, tap More → *Save files* → *Save items* → Tap Save

- They cannot be saved with PC Site Browser.

To save linked files



In a page, select a link → Tap Save

- For Auto Save files, tap link to save files.
- If file details appear, select from these options: (Available options vary by file type.)
Display: Open file (e.g., image file)
Play: Play file (e.g., media file)
Save to pictogram: Save item as a Pictogram
Back to browser: Return to page
Set as: Save file to Wallpaper or Ringtone
- If files with same name exist, notification appears, choose *Yes* to save it with a different name. Choose *No* to edit the file name.

Bookmarks

Opening Bookmarked Site

In a page, tap Bookmark → *Open list* → Select a bookmark

- Tap  or  in Bookmark list to toggle between List view and Thumbnail view.

Saving Bookmark by Direct Entry

In Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → *Bookmarks* → Tap Add → Tap URL field → Enter URL → Tap Title field → Enter title → Tap Save

In PC Site Browser

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → *PC site browser* → *Bookmarks* → Tap Add → Tap URL field → Enter URL → Tap Title field → Enter title → Tap Save

In a page

Tap Bookmark → *Open list* → Tap Add → Tap URL field → Enter URL → Tap Title field → Enter title → Tap Save

Editing Bookmark Title or URL

In Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → *Bookmarks* → Tap Edit → Select bookmark to edit → Tap URL field → Enter URL → Tap Title field → Enter title → Tap Save

In PC Site Browser

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → *PC site browser* → *Bookmarks* → Tap Edit → Select bookmark to edit → Tap URL field → Enter URL → Tap Title field → Enter title → Tap Save

In a page

Tap Bookmark → *Open list* → Tap Edit → Select bookmark to edit → Tap URL field → Enter URL → Tap Title field → Enter title → Tap Save

Deleting Bookmarks

In Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → *Bookmarks* → Tap Delete → Check bookmarks to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

In PC Site Browser

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → *PC site browser* → *Bookmarks* → Tap Delete → Check bookmarks to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

In a page

Tap Bookmark → *Open list* → Tap Delete → Check bookmarks to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

- In Thumbnail view, select a bookmark to delete → *Yes*.

Creating Folders in Bookmark List

In Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → *Bookmarks* → Tap More → *Create folder* → Enter folder name

In PC Site Browser

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → *PC site browser* → *Bookmarks* → Tap More → *Create folder* → Enter folder name

In a page

Tap Bookmark → *Open list* → Tap More → *Create folder* → Enter folder name

Sending Bookmark URL

In Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → **Bookmarks** → Tap More → **Send** → **Via message** → **S! Mail** or **SMS** → Select bookmark to send → (P.4-4 S! Mail 2, P.4-7 SMS 2)

In PC Site Browser

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → **PC site browser** → **Bookmarks** → Tap More → **Send** → **Via message** → **S! Mail** or **SMS** → Select bookmark to send → (P.4-4 S! Mail 2, P.4-7 SMS 2)

In a page

In a page, tap Bookmark → **Open list** → Tap More → **Send** → **Via message** → **S! Mail** or **SMS** → Select bookmark to send → (P.4-4 S! Mail 2, P.4-7 SMS 2)

Sending Bookmark URL via Bluetooth®

In Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → **Bookmarks** → Tap More → **Send** → **Via Bluetooth** → Check bookmarks to send → Tap Send → (P.13-7 Sending Data 2)

In PC Site Browser

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → **PC site browser** → **Bookmarks** → Tap More → **Send** → **Via Bluetooth** → Check bookmarks to send → Tap Send → (P.13-7 Sending Data 2)

In a page

Tap Bookmark → **Open list** → Tap More → **Send** → **Via Bluetooth** → Check bookmarks to send → Tap Send → (P.13-7 Sending Data 2)

- In Thumbnail view, select a bookmark to send → **Yes**.

Sending Bookmark URL via Infrared

In Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → **Bookmarks** → Tap More → **Send** → **Via infrared** → Check bookmarks to send → Tap Send (P.13-3)

In PC Site Browser

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → **PC site browser** → **Bookmarks** → Tap More → **Send** → **Via infrared** → Check bookmarks to send → Tap Send (P.13-3)

In a page

In a page, tap Bookmark → **Open list** → Tap More → **Send** → **Via infrared** → Check bookmarks to send → Tap Send (P.13-3)

- In Thumbnail view, select a bookmark to send → **Yes**.

Moving Bookmark to Folders

From Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → **Bookmarks** → Tap More → **Move** → Check bookmarks to move → Tap Move → Select a destination folder

From PC Site Browser

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → **PC site browser** → **Bookmarks** → Tap More → **Move** → Check bookmarks to move → Tap Move → Select a destination folder

From a page

Tap Bookmark → **Open list** → Tap More → **Move** → Check bookmarks to move → Tap Move → Select a destination folder

- To create a new folder to move an item, tap Create Folder → Enter a new folder name.
- In Thumbnail view, select a bookmark to move → Select a destination folder.

Changing Bookmark Order

In Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → **Bookmarks** → Tap More → **Change order** → Drag a bookmark to desired location → Tap Done

In PC Site Browser

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → **PC site browser** → **Bookmarks** → Tap More → **Change order** → Drag a bookmark to desired location → Tap Done

In a page

In a page, tap Bookmark → **Open list** → Tap More → **Change order** → Drag a bookmark to desired location → Tap Done

Saving Bookmark to Data Folder

In Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → **Bookmarks** → Tap More → **Save to Data Folder** → **Phone** → Select bookmark to save → **Yes**

In PC Site Browser

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → **PC site browser** → **Bookmarks** → Tap More → **Save to Data Folder** → **Phone** → Select bookmark to save → **Yes**

In a page

In a page, tap Bookmark → **Open list** → Tap More → **Save to Data Folder** → **Phone** → Select bookmark to save → **Yes**

- To save a file to **Memory Card**, insert Memory Card.

Viewing Bookmark Details

In Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → **Bookmarks** → Tap More → **Details** → Select bookmark

In PC Site Browser

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → **PC site browser** → **Bookmarks** → Tap More → **Details** → Select bookmark

In a page

In a page, tap Bookmark → **Open list** → Tap More → **Details** → Select bookmark

Saved Pages

Opening Saved Pages in a Page

In a page, tap Saved pages (in some windows, tap More → **Saved pages**) → **Open list** → Select Saved pages

- In Saved Pages, tap  or  to toggle List/Thumbnail view.

Renaming Saved Pages

In Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → **Saved pages** → Tap Rename → Select Saved pages to edit → Enter name

In PC Site Browser

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → **PC site browser** → **Saved pages** → Tap Rename → Select Saved pages to edit → Enter name

In a page

In a page, tap Saved pages (in some windows, tap More → **Saved pages**) → **Open list** → Tap Rename → Select Saved pages to edit → Enter name

Deleting Saved Pages

In Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → **Saved pages** → Tap Delete → Select Saved pages to delete → **Yes**

In PC Site Browser

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → **PC site browser** → **Saved pages** → Tap Delete → Select Saved pages to delete → **Yes**

In a page

In a page, tap Saved pages (in some windows, tap More → **Saved pages**) → **Open list** → Tap Delete → Select Saved pages to delete → **Yes**

- In the list, check a Saved pages to delete → Tap Delete → **Yes**

Changing Order of Saved Pages

In Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → **Saved pages** → Tap Change order → Drag Saved pages to desired location → Tap Done

In PC Site Browser

Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → **PC site browser** → **Saved pages** → Tap Change order → Drag Saved page to desired location → Tap Done

In a page

In a page, tap Saved pages (in some windows, tap More → **Saved pages**) → **Open list** → Tap Change order → Drag Saved pages to desired location → Tap Done

Memo

A series of 15 horizontal dotted lines for writing.

Digital TV



Enjoy One Seg in Wide Screen	6-2
One Seg	6-2
Precaution for Watching TV	6-3
Reception	6-3
Battery	6-3
Charging	6-3
Antenna	6-3
Channel Setup (Area Setup)	6-4
Using TV for the First Time (Area Setup)	6-4
Watching TV	6-4
Watching TV	6-4
G-Guide Mobile (Japanese).....	6-6
Data Broadcast (Japanese).....	6-6
TV Links	6-6
Record/Playback Programs	6-7
Precautions	6-7
Recording Programs	6-8
Playing Recorded Programs.....	6-8
TV Timer/TV Timer Recording	6-9
Precautions	6-9
Setting Timer via EPG	6-9
Manual Timer Settings.....	6-10
Viewing Reservation	6-10
Receiving Call While Watching TV	6-11
Receiving Call.....	6-11
Receiving Mail.....	6-11
Advanced Settings	6-11
While Watching TV.....	6-11
TV Timer/TV Timer Recording.....	6-14

Enjoy One Seg in Wide Screen

This handset supports One Seg terrestrial digital broadcasts. One Seg is referred to as "Digital TV" in this guide. In this chapter, methods to watch Digital TV are described.

Setting up Channels

Set up channels to watch Digital TV (➡P.6-4).



Watching TV

In Standby, press for 1 + seconds to activate TV (➡P.6-4).

One Seg

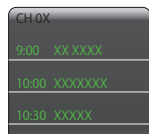
One Seg is a terrestrial digital broadcast service supporting mobile television and Data Broadcasts in Japan. The 6 MHz band assigned to each digital channel is divided into 13 segments: 12 dedicated to HDTV broadcasting and the remaining "One Seg" to mobile devices.

One Seg service began on April 1 2006, in the three largest urban areas and 13 prefectures in Japan.

For details, access the Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting Website:

- The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting Website:
<http://www.dpa.or.jp/english/> (PC)
<http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/> (Mobile) Japanese

Downloading Electric Program Guide



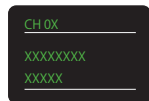
Download an electric program guide to find the desired TV program (➡P.6-6).

Recording/Playing/Reservation



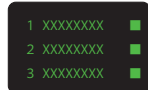
Record and reserve TV Programs with TV timer recording. Play recorded programs (➡P.6-7).

Watching Data Broadcasts



Watch Data Broadcasts to get program-related information (➡P.6-6).

TV Link



Join a program through TV links (➡P.6-6).

Precaution for Watching TV

Please confirm the following precautions before using TV.

- This handset supports One Seg terrestrial digital television broadcast service available only in Japan.
- Do not use TV while driving a vehicle or riding a bicycle. (Mobile phone use while driving is prohibited by the revised Road Traffic Law since November 1 2004.) For TV use while walking, road safety precautions should always apply.
- Incoming transmissions may affect audio/visual signal. Use of another handset near this handset may also affect TV.
- Use Stereo Earphone Microphone (Optional) where viewing Digital TV with Speaker is inappropriate.

Reception

Digital TV may not be viewable in the following places:

- Too far from or too close to broadcasting stations.
- In mountainous areas or near tall buildings.
- Aboard trains or in moving vehicles.

- Near high-voltage lines, neon Lights, or wireless base stations.
- Near railroad tracks or highways.
- In underground shopping malls or tunnels.
- Anywhere jamming signal is broadcast or reception is blocked.

Battery

When battery level is , Digital TV is not available.

- If battery runs out while watching, TV automatically ends.

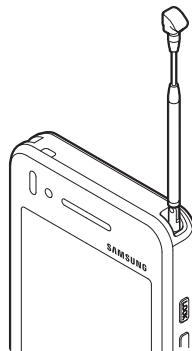
Charging

Charge battery while viewing Digital TV.

- Use SoftBank approved AC Charger.
- Keep AC Charger cord away from Antenna; may cause interference.
- Charging takes longer when TV is active.

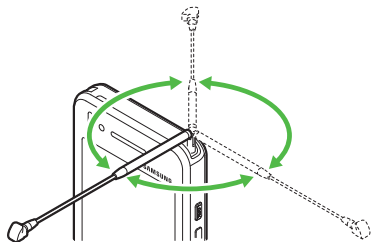
Antenna

- Handset features a whip Antenna that divides into two segments. Fully extend Antenna until fixed.



- After use, hold base of Antenna to retract it; pressing down on it with force may cause damage. Retract it and replace top bead into handset.
- Extend Antenna when viewing Digital TV, unless a broadcasting station is close. In this case, retract Antenna for better reception.

- For best reception, fold and rotate 360°.



Channel Setup (Area Setup)

Using TV for the First Time (Area Setup)







Handset contains local channel information. Before using TV for the first time, specify your area to set up channels.

- 1  (1 + seconds)
- 2 Confirmation appears, choose *Yes*
- 3 Select a region
- 4 Select a province
- 5 Select a local area
 - Channel search starts.
 - To cancel channel search, tap *Cancel*.
- 6 Tap *Next* → *Enter name* → *Select an area*

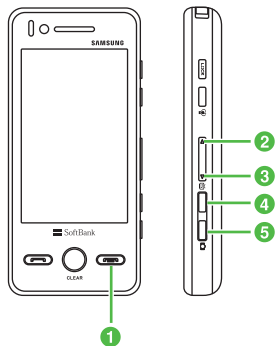
Watching TV

When Channels are set, watching TV, Program guide, Data Broadcast, and TV links available.

Watching TV

- 1  (1 + seconds)
- 2 Tap *Channel field* → *Select a channel*
 - To change a channel one by one, tap  / .
- 3 To exit TV,  → *Yes*
 - To adjust volume while watching TV, press  / .

Key Assignments

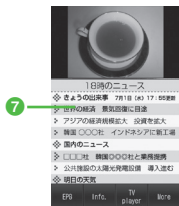


No.	Function
1	Exit TV
2 3	Adjust Volume
4 (1 + seconds)	Activate TV
5 (1 + seconds)	Record/End recording

TV Window



Portrait/Show 3 to 6
(With Subtitle)



Portrait/Show
Data Broadcast





Landscape/Show 3 to 6



Landscape/Hide 3 to 6

- 1 TV Image
- 2 Subtitle
- 3 Station Name/Program Name
- 4 Channel
 - When no channel is set,  appears.
- 5 Signal Strength
- 6 Volume
- 7 Data Broadcast

- To change to Portrait view or Landscape view, hold handset vertically or horizontally.
- Tap Display or press any buttons other than  or , then 3 to 6 appear for a few seconds.
- Data Broadcast is only available in Portrait view.

G-Guide Mobile (Japanese)

"Gガイドモバイル" (G-GUIDE Mobile) is a convenient application that combines Program guides for the terrestrial analog and digital broadcasting. Search TV programs by genre or keyword and retrieve them anytime and anywhere.

1 → Program guide

- Alternatively, in TV window, tap EPG to show Program guide.
 - When Program guide is activated for the first time, initial setting window for *Gガイドモバイル* (G-GUIDE Mobile) appears. Perform initial settings to access Program guide.
- To highlight item in EPG, tap \uparrow / \downarrow / \leftarrow / \rightarrow . Then, tap \bigcirc to select the highlighted item.
- Highlight program to watch, tap *TV起動* to show TV window. Also, tapping *Select* displays the detailed information of the highlighted program.

Data Broadcast (Japanese)

In addition to audio/visuals, Data Broadcast is available. Follow onscreen instructions to get program-related information or enjoy interactive TV services.

1 While watching TV, / to highlight an item → Select

- Internet connection confirmation may appear for Data Broadcast/transmissions from broadcaster. Information is free, however, accessing links/related services incurs Internet connection fees.

Note

- No Communication fees apply for receiving Data Broadcast. However, Communication fees apply for using interactive services provided by Data Broadcast or services based on the Internet.

TV Links

Procedures to save links vary by program. Check information in Data Broadcasts.

Saving TV Links

- ### 1 For a program offering Data Broadcast, select a link source

Opening TV Links

- ### 1 → TV links → Select TV links

Advanced

Advanced Settings (P. 6-11)

- Rejecting a Call while Watching TV
- Viewing Program Information
- Selecting Channels via Thumbnail View
- Updating Channels in the Area
- Renaming Areas
- Deleting Areas
- Resetting All Channel Details
- Viewing Area Details
- Changing Channel Numbers
- Deleting Channel Details
- Viewing Channel Details
- Setting Subtitle Display
- Changing to Data Full Screen View
- Returning to Data Broadcast Top Page
- Viewing TV Links
- Switching to Bluetooth®-Compatible Headset
- Starting Recording While Watching Current Programs
- Ending TV Application
- Deleting TV Links
- Viewing TV Link Details

Settings

- Select connection notification type (P. 14-18)
- Show or hide Manufacture Number (P. 14-18)
- Delete station data (P. 14-18)
- Show or hide indicators in Landscape view (P. 14-18)
- Set whether to display 4:3 videos in Landscape view (P. 14-18)
- Set whether to display 4:3 videos in Portrait view (P. 14-18)
- Adjust Display brightness (P. 14-18)
- Adjust sound quality (P. 14-18)
- Select language (P. 14-18)
- Select output device (P. 14-18)
- Handle Incoming Calls & Alarms (P. 14-19)
- End TV after set duration (P. 14-19)

Record/Playback Programs

Precautions

- Format and insert Memory Card before recording (P. 12-11).
- Never remove Memory Card while recording. Damage or accidental data loss may result.
- Recording is only available with sufficient remaining memory.
- Recording stops when battery runs low; charge battery while recording.
- Recorded programs cannot be copied/forwarded or attached to S! Mail.
- Handset allows up to 12 hours recording per one program. Note that 12 hours recording requires about 2GB of memory card.
- Recording time is approximate 90 minutes with full 256 MB Memory Card.



Copyrights

This mobile phone encryption technology prevents unauthorized use through data encryption and authentication. Use only ISDB-T Mobile Video Profile (SD-Video standard) compatible device to playback recorded data. Handset divides recorded files based on this standard.

Note

- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only, and prohibit unauthorized use.
- Recorded content may be lost or damaged by accident or malfunction. SoftBank is not liable for any damage resulting from accidental loss/alteration.
- Recorded data cannot be copied to another recordable media, such as other Memory Cards, etc.

Recording Programs








- 1** In TV window,  (1 + seconds)
 - Recording starts.
- 2** Tap Save or  (1 + seconds) to end recording

- Both TV image and Data Broadcast information (if any) are recorded. Recording without text is also available (☞P.14-18).
- Changing volume, window size, or sound settings does not affect recordings.
- Recorded videos are stored in SD_VIDEO folder if they are saved in Memory Card.

Note

- If Memory/Battery runs low, recording stops (recorded clip is saved).
- When Voice Call request is accepted, recording continues. Confirmation appears for incoming TV Call.
- With movie set for ringtone, TV recording takes priority over the movie ringtone (default ringtone may sound).

Playing Recorded Programs

- 1**  → TV player
 - Alternatively, in TV window, tap TV player to show TV player.
- 2** Select a file
 - Tap  to play a file stored in Memory Card.
 - Playing video is resumed from previously stopped point.
 - Tap  to pause,  to play.
 - Tap  /  to fast forward/rewind. Tap once for x2, twice for x10.
 - Tap  to stop fast forwarding/rewinding.
 - Tap Stop to stop a playing.

- To view detailed information on the recorded program, perform Step **1**, then tap Details → Select a file.
- To change the file name, perform Step **1**, then tap Rename → Select a file to change → Enter a new file name.
- To delete the recorded file, perform Step **1**, then tap Delete → Check a file to delete → Tap Delete.

Advanced **Settings**

- Set recording type (☞P.14-18)
- Select save location (☞P.14-18)

TV Timer/TV Timer Recording

Precautions

Save up to five reservations. However, if **Once** is selected under data in **Reservation list**, only TV programs within 1 week can be recorded/reserved with timer. Set each reservation for up to four hours (dependent on Memory Card capacity). Four hours of recording time requires approximately 680 MB.

Precautions for Timer Recording

- End the current operations.
- Adjust Antenna to gain good TV reception.
- Confirm battery is adequately charged (or record while charging).
- Check there is enough free space on Memory Card.

Saving location for recorded programs

- If the saving location for recording video is set to Memory Card without Memory Card inserted, they will be saved in handset.
- If there is not enough free space on set saving location (phone or memory card), recorded video is saved in the alternative memory (memory card or phone).

Start/End Time

Digital TV receives programs slightly after scheduled start time; recording may start before reserved program.

Recording ends a few seconds after Timer end time.

Precautions for Timer

- Confirm Key lock is canceled.
- Confirm **Auto lock** is set to **Off**.

Via EPG (P.6-6)

Use EPG to Record or view program.

Note

- If Key Lock is activated, TV program does not start even at the start time. However, recording starts.


Setting Timer via EPG

1  → **Reservation list**

2 **Tap New** → **Via EPG**

- See EPG application's help menu for operational instructions.


Manual Timer Settings

- 1  → *Reservation list*
- 2 Tap **New** → *Manual*
- 3 Under *Recording, On or Off*
 - Set *On* to record, *Off* to watch.
- 4 *Date* → *Once* → Tap **date field** → Enter date
- 5 *Start time* → Enter Start time
- 6 *End time* → Enter End time
- 7 *Channel* → Select a channel
 - Tap **Manual** to enter a channel number.
- 8 Tap **Save**

- Display and Alarm activate at alarm notification time before reservation.

Exit all active functions; Handset returns to Standby.

Viewing Reservation










- 1  → *Reservation list*
- 2 *Reserve or Result* → Select an item to view
 - Switch *Reserve* or *Result* tabs to view reservations before/after Start time.

Advanced

Advanced Settings P.6-14

- Editing Reservations
- Deleting Reservations
- Viewing Memory Remaining


Settings

- Set Alarm ( P.14-17)
- Set alert tone ( P.14-17)
- Set volume ( P.14-17)
- Set vibration ( P.14-17)
- Set notification light ( P.14-17)
- Set reminder time ( P.14-17)
- Set alarm duration ( P.14-17)
- Set alarm sound or vibration in Manner mode ( P.14-17)
- Set Save Location ( P.14-18)

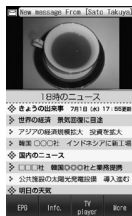
Receiving Call While Watching TV


Receiving Call



Incoming call window appears. Press  to answer a call.
The other party's phone number appears during the call. End the call to return to Digital TV.

Receiving Mail



Sender's address, etc. appears at top of Display.
Tap the ticker to view messages. Press  to return to TV window.

- When returning to Standby leaving messages unread, total number of new and unread messages is shown on Received msg.
- Voice Call or incoming message may affect the quality of TV audio or visual reception. Handset use near handset while TV is active, may affect audio or visual reception quality.

Advanced Settings

Advanced Settings

While Watching TV

Receiving a Call

 while watching TV

- When the call ends, handset returns to TV window.

Rejecting a Call while Watching TV

Tap Reject in incoming call window

Viewing Program Information

In TV window, tap Info.

To view Program Details

Select a program

To set timer recording

Tap Record → Select a program

- If you select a program that is currently on air, the recording immediately starts.

To set timer watching

Tap Program → Select a Program

To view Reservation List

Tap Reserved list → *Reserve/Result*

To view free memory space

Tap Memory remain → *Phone/Memory card*

Selecting Channels via Thumbnail View

In TV window, tap More → **Channel preview** → Select a channel

Changing Reception Areas

In TV window, tap More → **Set channels** → **Change area** → Select an area

Setting Reception Areas

In TV window, tap More → **Set channels** → **Change area** → Select an available area → **Yes** → Select a region → Select a province → Select a local area → Tap Next → Enter a name → Tap OK

- Up to 10 areas can be set.

Updating Channels in the Area

In TV window, tap More → **Set channels** → **Change area** → Tap Update

■ To update all channels

Update all → Select an area → **Yes**

- Delete saved channel then update starts.

■ To update further

Update further → Select an area

- Add newly received channel; or overwrite saved channel with same No.
- Alternatively, tap More in TV window → **Set channels** → **Channel switch** → Tap Update → **Update all** or **Update further** → **Yes** as required

Renaming Areas

In TV window, tap More → **Set channels** → **Change area** → Tap Rename → Select an area → Enter name → Tap OK

Deleting Areas

In TV window, tap More → **Set channels** → **Change area** → Tap Delete → Select an area → **Yes**

Resetting All Channel Details

In TV window, tap More → **Set channels** → **Change area** → Tap More → **Reset** → **Yes**

Viewing Area Details

In TV window, tap More → **Set channels** → **Change area** → Tap More → **Details** → Select an area

Switching Channels

In TV window, tap More → **Set channels** → **Channel switch** → Select a channel

Changing Channel Numbers

In TV window, tap More → **Set channels** → **Channel switch** → Tap Move → Drag channel to desired location → Tap OK

Deleting Channel Details

In TV window, tap More → **Set channels** → **Channel switch** → Tap Delete → Check channels to delete → Tap Delete → **Yes**

Viewing Channel Details

In TV window, tap More → **Set channels** → **Channel switch** → Tap Details → Select a channel

Saving Channel Details

In TV window, tap More → **Set channels** → **Save channel** → Select a channel → **Yes**

Setting Channel Selection

In TV window, tap More → **Set channels** → **Select setting** → Select an item

Setting Subtitle Display

In TV window, tap More → **Show subtitle** or **Hide subtitle**

- **Show subtitle** and **Hide subtitle** are TV program dependent feature.
- Sometimes subtitle area is indicated without subtitle.

Changing to Data Full Screen View

In TV window, tap More → **Data view**

- Tap TV for TV image.

Returning to Data Broadcast Top Page

In TV window, tap More → **Back to top**

Viewing TV Links

In TV window, tap More → **TV links** → Select target TV link → **Yes**

- Tap TV links to connect to the network.

Switching to Bluetooth®-Compatible Headset

In TV window, tap More → *Transfer to headset* → Drag device to connect to 

- If *Transfer to headset* is set, volume adjustment on handset is unavailable. Adjust on headset.
- Only Bluetooth® stereo headphones are compatible with "SCMS-T" the copyright protection standard.
- Playback with monaural headset is unavailable.
- If no device is registered, search and register new device.
- To set handset as sound output device while watching TV, tap More → *Transfer to Phone*.

Setting TV Alarm

In TV window, tap More → *Settings* → *TV alarm*

To set Alert tone

Alert tone → Select a save location → Select a file

To set Volume

Adjust volume in Volume field

To set Vibration

Vibration → Select an item

To set Light

Under *Light*, *On* or *Off*

To set Reminder time

Reminder time → Select an item

To set Duration

Duration → Select an item

To set Manner mode setting

Manner mode setting → *Alarm sound/Vibration* → *On* or *Off*

Setting Data Broadcast Preference

In TV window, tap More → *Settings* → *Set broadcast data*

To set recording type

Set recording → Select an item

To select save location

Image location → Select an item


To select connection notification type

Notify connection → Select an item

To set manufacture No. notification

Under *Manufacture number*, *On* or *Off*

To delete station data

Delete station data → Select  to delete → *Yes*

- To delete all stations, tap Delete all → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

Setting Screen

In TV window, tap More → *Settings* → *Display*

To set Display pictogram

Under *Display pict*, *On* or *Off*

To set Landscape view

Landscape style → Select an item

To set Portrait view

Portrait style → Select an item

To adjust the screen brightness

Adjust the screen brightness in the brightness control field

- This setting only appears when the backlight brightness is set to *Manual*.

Changing Sound Setting

In TV window, tap More → *Settings* → *Sound*

To adjust sound quality

Sound mode → Select an item

To select language

Sound language → Select an item

Setting the Saving Location for Recorded Files

In TV window, tap More → *Settings* → *Save recording to* → Select an item

Handling Incoming Calls & Alarms

In TV window, tap More → **Settings** → **Calls & Alarms** → Select an item → Select action

Setting Auto Power Off

In TV window, tap More → **Settings** → **Auto power off** → Select an item

Starting Recording While Watching Current Programs

In TV window, tap More → **Start recording** → Tap Save

- Alternatively, while recording, tap More in TV window → **Stop recording** → **Yes** to end recording.

Ending TV Application


In TV window, tap More → **End application**

Deleting TV Links

 → **TV links** → Tap Delete → Check TV link to delete → Tap Delete → **Yes**

- Alternatively, while watching TV, tap More → **TV links** → Tap Delete → **Yes**


Viewing TV Link Details

 → **TV links** → Tap Details → Select a link to view

- Alternatively, while watching TV, tap More → **TV links** → Tap Details.


TV Timer/TV Timer Recording

Daily or Weekly Timer Recording


 → **Reservation list** → Tap New → **Manual** → Date → select **Once** or **Everyday** or **Selected days**

- If **Selected days** is selected, select a day to set.

Entering Program Name

 → **Reservation list** → Tap New → **Manual** → **Program** → Enter Program name

Setting Alarm Timer

 → **Settings** → **TV alarm** → Under **Alarm, On**

Editing Reservations

 → **Reservation list** → Tap Edit → Select a reservation → (P.6-10 Manual Timer Settings ) → Tap Save

Deleting Reservations

 → **Reservation list** → Tap Delete → Check reservations to delete → Tap Delete → **Yes**

Viewing Memory Remaining

 → **Reservation list** → Tap Memory remain → **Phone/Memory card**

Camera & Imaging



Capturing Picture, Recording Movie & Editing	7-2
Camera	7-3
Using Display as Viewfinder	7-3
Single Shot	7-5
Normal	7-6
Scene	7-6
Face Shot	7-6
Multi Shot	7-7
Capturing Still Images with Frame	7-7
Photo Combination	7-7
Panorama Shot	7-8
Viewing Captured Pictures (Quick Play)	7-8
Video	7-9
Using Display as Viewfinder	7-9
Recording Video	7-10
Video Mode	7-11
Viewing Recorded Video (Quick Play)	7-11
Editing Images	7-12
Editing Still Images	7-12
Oekaki Anime	7-12
Printing Still Images	7-14
Printing via Bluetooth®	7-14
Printing via USB	7-15
Advanced Settings	7-15
Capturing Still Images	7-15
Recording Videos	7-17
Editing Still Images	7-18

Capturing Picture, Recording Movie & Editing

Use handset camera to capture pictures and record movies. Edit pictures and print them via Bluetooth® or USB-compatible printers.

Capturing Pictures & Recording Movie Clips

Select Scene, Multi Shot, etc. (➡P.7-3).

Record up to two hours per clip (➡P.7-9).



Editing Pictures



Editing pictures: Resize or draw, etc. (➡P.7-12).

Printing Pictures

Send pictures to printer via Bluetooth® or USB cable (➡P.7-14).



Capturing options and corresponding image sizes:

Capture Mode	Image Size
Normal Scene Face shot	Mail (240x320/320x240)
	Wide S (240x400/400x240)
	Wallpaper (480x800/800x480)
	0.3M (480x640/640x480)
	1M (960x1280/1280x960)
Multi shot Photo combi Frame shot	2M (1200x1600/1600x1200)
	3M (1536x2048/2048x1536)
	5M (1920x2560/2560x1920)
	Wallpaper (480x800/800x480)
0.3M (480x640/640x480)	
Video	SQCIF (128x96)
	QCIF (176x144)
	QVGA (320x240)
	VGA (640x480)
	S! Mail (176x144)
	S! Mail (128x96)

Camera

For taking still pictures, select Shooting mode: **Normal** to shoot single picture, **Multi shot** or **Photo combi** to shoot multi-shot, **Frame shot** to shoot picture with frame, **Night** to shoot in sunset or night situation. Captured images are saved to **Pictures**. Insert Memory Card to save images to **Digital camera**.

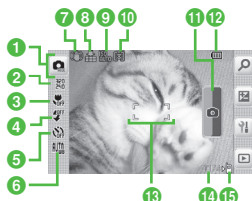
Note

Avoid getting too close to light. Eyesight may be affected.

Using Display as Viewfinder

Hold handset sideways to change Display to Landscape view. Hold handset vertically to change Display to Portrait view.

- The view does not change between Portrait and Landscape view during Multi-shot, Photo Combination, or video recording.
- Operations are described in Landscape view in this guide.



Still Image Viewfinder

1 Mode

: Normal

: Scene

: Auto*

: Landscape*

: Sports*

: Night*

: Indoor*

: Beach/Snow*

: Dusk/Dawn*

: Text*

: Face shot

: Type (Natural)*

: Type (Dramatic)*

: Multi shot

: 6/9 Photos (6 photos)*

: 6/9 Photos (9 photos)*

: Speed (Fast)*

: Speed (Normal)*

: Speed (Slow)*

: Speed (Manual)*

: Frame shot

: Photo combi

: Panorama shot


*Displayed between shooting mode and shooting size.

2 Size (the size varies on the view)


 : 5M (2560×1920) *


 : 3M (2048×1536) *


 : 2M (1600×1200) *

 : 1M (1280×960) *

 : Wallpaper (800×480)

 : 0.3M (640×480)

 : Wide S (400×240) *

 : Mail (320×240) *

* Only when the shooting mode is set to **Normal**, **Scene** or **Face shot**.

3 Focus

 : Macro  : AF

4 Light

 : On  : Off

5 Timer

 : Off  : 3 seconds

 : 5 seconds  : 10 seconds

6 White balance

 : Auto  : Daylight

 : Incandescent  : Fluorescent


 : Cloudy

7 Anti-shake


 : Anti-shake On

None: Anti-shake Off

8 Quality

 : Superfine

 : Fine

 : Normal

 : Economy

9 ISO

 : Auto  : 100  : 200  : 400  : 800

10 Exposure metering

 : Matrix  : Center-weight

 : Spot

11 Shutter


12 Battery Level

13 Focus frame

14 Available remaining shooting number

15 Save to

 : Phone or Ask each time

 : Memory card or Digital camera

- Tapping the icons (2 to 6) at the left side of Viewfinder opens a menu.
- Tapping an image on Viewfinder shows or hides icons/the current settings.

Single Shot



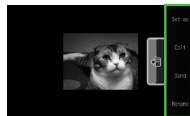
Tapping the icon at the left side of Viewfinder opens a menu.



In Picture settings, Tap OK



Tap Shutter



Save image confirmation appears only if *Auto save* is *Off*.

- Adjusting size and brightness are available for still pictures (☞P.14-19).
- To attach picture to message (☞P.4-5) and to print (☞P.7-14), set *Auto save* (☞P.14-19) to *Off*.

Shooting Mode	Description
Normal	Capture still image and select size for purpose; attach images to S! Mail, save as Wallpaper, etc.
Scene	Capture still image that suits for taking a portrait (person) or scene.
Face shot	Capture still image that suits for taking person.
Multi shot	Press shutter once to capture six or nine sequential images.
Frame shot	Capture still image with Frame.
Photo combi	Capture sequential images manually. Select Frame to automatically combine images into a composite image.
Panorama shot	Ideal for landscape. Capture up to six images to automatically composite into a single panoramic image.

Normal

Captured images are saved to Pictures. Insert Memory Card to save images (**0.3M** images and larger) to **Digital camera**.

- When Memory Card is not inserted and save location is set to **Digital camera**, **Mail** and **Wide S**, images are automatically saved to **Pictures** folder.

1 (2 + seconds)

- Alternatively, tap Menu → **Camera** → **Camera**.
- Adjust settings before capturing as required.

2 Frame image in Viewfinder

- Press  /  to zoom in/out.





3 /

- Images are saved automatically.



• When **Auto save** is **Off** (⊕P.14-19)

Still Image Saved Confirmation window is displayed after step 3.

To redo, press .

To save, tap .

• Using Auto Focus

When **Focus** is set to **AF**, Auto Focus is available; automatically focusing a subject at the center of the frame. Half-press  to focus on. Then press  to take a picture.

Frame turns green when image is in focus. Frame turns brown if image is not in focus.

Scene

1 (2 + seconds)

2 → **Scene**

3 Tap icon area left of Viewfinder → **Scene** → **Select a scene** → Tap OK

- Adjust settings before capturing as required.
- To close the menu, tap an area other than menu items.

4 Frame image in Viewfinder


- Press  /  to zoom in/out.


5 /

- Images are saved automatically.

• When **Auto save** is **Off** (⊕P.14-19)

Still Image Saved Confirmation window is displayed after step 5.

To redo, press .

To save, tap .

- Macro, Anti-shake, ISO, Exposure metering, and Wide dynamic range are not available for a scene shooting.

Face Shot

Changing shooting types for Face shot.

1 (2 + seconds)

2 → **Face shot**

3 Tap icon area left of Viewfinder → **Type** → **Select type** → Tap OK

- Adjust settings before capturing as required.
- To close the menu, tap an area other than menu items.

4 Frame image in Viewfinder


- Press  /  to zoom in/out.


5 /

- Images are saved automatically.

• When **Auto save** is **Off** (⊕P.14-19)










Still Image Saved Confirmation window is displayed after step 5.

To redo, press .

To save, tap .

- Anti-shake, ISO, Exposure metering, and Wide dynamic range are not available for Face shot.


Multi Shot

- 1  (2 + seconds)
- 2  → *Multi shot*
- 3 Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder → *6/9 photos* → Select image count → Tap OK
- 4 *Speed* → *Fast, Normal, Slow or Manual*
 - Adjust settings before capturing as required.
 - To close the menu, tap an area other than menu items.
- 5 **Frame image in Viewfinder**
 - Press  /  to zoom in/out.
- 6  / 
 - Images are saved automatically when capturing images end.
 - If *Speed* is set to *Manual*, repeat Step 6. Tap  to stop shooting and save the images. To redo, tap  or press .

•When *Auto save* is *Off* (⊕P.14-19)





Still Image Saved Confirmation window is displayed after step 6.

To redo, tap  or press .

To save, check image and tap .


- Anti-shake, and Wide dynamic range are not available for Multi shot.


Capturing Still Images with Frame

- 1  (2 + seconds)
- 2  → *Frame shot*
- 3 Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder → *Frames* → Select a frame → Tap OK
 - Adjust settings before capturing as required.
 - To close the menu, tap an area other than menu items.
- 4 **Frame image in Viewfinder**
 - Press  /  to zoom in/out.
- 5  / 
 - Images are saved automatically.

•When *Auto save* is *Off* (⊕P.14-19)










Still Image Saved Confirmation window is displayed after step 5.

To redo, press .

To save, tap .



- Anti-shake, and Wide dynamic range are not available for Frame shot.


Photo Combination

- 1  (2 + seconds)
- 2  → *Photo combi*
- 3 Tap the icon area located at the top of Viewfinder → *Style* → Select a style → Tap OK
 - Adjust settings before capturing as required.
 - To close the menu, tap an area other than menu items.
- 4 **Frame image in Viewfinder** → Apply selected frame and press 
 - Press  /  to zoom in/out.
- 5 **Repeat step 4 to capture images** →  / 
 - To redo, tap  or press .
 - Images are saved automatically when capturing images end.

•When *Auto save* is *Off* (⊕P.14-19)

Still Image Saved Confirmation window is displayed after step 5.

To redo, tap  or press .

To save, tap .

- Anti-shake, and Wide dynamic range are not available for Photo Combination.

Panorama Shot

1 (2 + seconds)

2 → **Panorama shot**

- Viewfinder appears in Landscape.
- Adjust settings before capturing as required.
- To close the menu, tap an area other than menu items.

3 **Frame image in Viewfinder**

- Press / to zoom in/out.

4 /

5 **Move handset to capture an image (vertically or horizontally)**
→ **Adjust small black border inside big border to automatically capture image**

6 **Repeat step 5 to capture range** → /

- To redo, tap or press .
- Capturing ends. Alternatively, capturing six images automatically ends capturing.
- Panorama images are created and saved automatically.
Depending on the number of images to be captured, producing may take time.

• When *Auto save* is *Off* (P.14-19)

Still Image Saved Confirmation window is displayed after step 6.

To redo, tap or press .

To save, tap .

- Anti-shake, and Wide dynamic range are not available for Panorama shot.
- Move handset slowly to capture panoramic image.
- Panorama is ideal for capturing landscapes. Stand at least 10 meters from subject. If too close panoramic image creation may fail.
- Low light or high contrast may hinder panoramic image creation.

Viewing Captured Pictures (Quick Play)

Use Quick Play to view still images.

1 (2 + seconds) →

2 / to view Image

- With Memory Card inserted, *Memory card* or *Digital camera* is selectable.
- Alternatively, check still image from Data Folder (P.12-4).

Advanced

Advanced Settings (P.7-15)

- Sending Captured Still Images
- Entering File Name of Captured Still Image
- Setting Captured Still Image as Wallpaper etc.
- Editing Quick Play Still Image
- Using Oekaki anime with Quick Play Still Image
- Using Quick Play Still Image as Wallpaper, etc.
- Viewing Quick Play Image Details
- Playing Quick Play Image Slide Show
- Sending Quick Play Still Images
- Deleting Quick Play Images
- Exiting Quick Play

Settings

- Set Anti-Shake (P.14-19)
- Activate or cancel Auto Save (P.14-19)
- Set Contrast (P.14-19)
- Set Saturation (P.14-19)
- Set Sharpness (P.14-19)
- Adjusting Brightness (P.14-19)
- Setting Shooting Size (P.14-19)
- Select Quality (P.14-20)
- Set ISO (P.14-20)
- Set Exposure metering (P.14-20)
- Set Wide Dynamic Range (P.14-20)
- Set save location when Memory Card is inserted (P.14-20)
- Show or hide Guideline (P.14-20)
- Set Face Link Display (P.14-20)
- Set Shutter Sound (P.14-20)

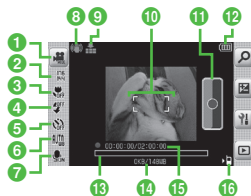
Video

Capture clips easily. Files are saved in 3GP format to Video folder in Data Folder. When recording a video to attach or insert into an S! Mail, set Shooting size to **S! Mail** (P.14-19).

Note

Avoid getting too close to light. Eyesight may be affected.

Using Display as Viewfinder



Video Viewfinder

- 1 Mode
 : Video
- 2 Size (the size varies on the view)
 - 640 : VGA (640×480) *
 - 480 : VGA (640×480) *
 - 320 : QVGA (320×240) *
 - 240 : QVGA (320×240) *
 - 176 : QCIF (176×144)
 - 144 : QCIF (176×144)
- 3 Focus
 : Macro : AF
- 4 Light
 : On : Off
- 5 Timer
 : Off : 3 seconds
 : 5 seconds : 10 seconds
- 6 White balance
 : Auto : Daylight
 : Incandescent : Fluorescent
 : Cloudy
- 7 Sound
 : On : Off
- 8 Anti-shake
 : Anti-shake On
 None: Anti-shake Off
- 9 Quality
 : Fine : Normal : Economy
- 10 Focus frame
- 11 Shutter

128 : SQCIF (128×96)
 176 : S! Mail (176×144)
 128 : S! Mail (128×96)
 * Only for Landscape view

- 12 Battery Level
- 13 Progress bar
- 14 Expected video size/Available memory at the time you started the shooting
 - If Size is set to **S! Mail**, the shooting data size/available shooting size appear.
- 15 Elapsed recording time/Available recording time
 - If Size is set to **S! Mail**, only the elapsed recording time appears.
- 16 Save to
 - ▶ : Phone or Ask each time
 - ▶ : Memory card or Digital camera

- Tapping the icons (2 to 7) at the left side of Viewfinder opens a menu.
- Tapping an image on Viewfinder shows or hides icons/the current settings.

Shooting Mode	Description
Video	Record video that suits for attaching to S! Mail or save to handset.

Recording Video



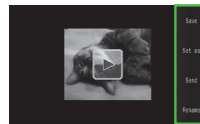
Tapping the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder.



Tapping Shutter



Tap OK at Video setting



Video Saved Confirmation window to save, send, and register image is displayed, only when **Auto save** is **Off**.

- Adjusting size and brightness are available for video (P.14-19).
- To attach video to mail (P.4-5), and to print (P.7-14), set **Auto save** (P.14-19) to **Off**.

Video Mode

Up to 2 hours can be recorded for 1 clip.

1 Tap Menu → *Camera* → *Video camera*

- Adjust settings before capturing as required.

2 Frame image in Viewfinder

- Press  /  to zoom in/out.

3 /


- To pause while recording, tap . To resume the recording, tap .

4 or Tap

- Video is saved automatically. When recordable time has elapsed, recording automatically ends.

•When *Auto save* is *Off*



Video Saved Confirmation window is displayed after step 4.

To redo, press .

To save, tap save.

•Using Auto Focus

When *Focus* is set to *AF*, Auto Focus is available; automatically focusing a subject at the center of the frame (the focus is locked while recording a video).

Press  halfway to focus on. Then press  all the way to start recording.

Frame turns green when image is in focus. Frame turns brown if image is not in focus.

- Wide dynamic range are not available for recording video.

Viewing Recorded Video (Quick Play)

View Recorded Video by Quick Play

1 Tap Menu → *Camera* → *Video camera* → Tap

2 / to view Video

- Alternatively, check video from Data Folder (P.12-4).

Advanced

  P.7-17

- Sending Recorded Video
- Entering File Name of Recorded Video
- Using Recorded Video as Ringtone
- Using Quick Play Video as Ringtone
- Viewing Quick Play Video Details
- Sending Quick Play Video
- Deleting Quick Play Video
- Exiting Quick Play

Settings

- Set Anti-Shake (☞ P.14-19)
- Activate or cancel Auto Save (☞ P.14-19)
- Set Contrast (☞ P.14-19)
- Set Saturation (☞ P.14-19)
- Set Sharpness (☞ P.14-19)
- Adjusting Brightness (☞ P.14-19)
- Setting Shooting Size (☞ P.14-19)
- Select Quality (☞ P.14-20)
- Set save location (☞ P.14-20)
- Show or hide Guideline (☞ P.14-20)

Editing Images

Change image size and brightness. Alternatively, draw on images or add motion.

Editing Still Images



Edit still images saved in Data Folder. Set picture brightness, size and effect.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a folder
- 2 Select a file
- 3 Tap Edit → *Image editor*
- 4 Edit image
 - **To set Effects on image**
Tap Effect → *Filter, Style, Warp* or *Finger warp* → Select an effect or drag image → Tap Done
 - For some effects, adjust the effect level.
 - **To adjust an image automatically**
Tap Adjust → *Auto level*
 - **To adjust an image**
Tap Adjust → *Brightness, Contrast* or *Color* → Adjust image → Tap Done

■ **To resize an image**

Tap Transform → *Resize* → Select a size
 ● After selecting *Customize*, enter *Width* and *Height*, and tap Done.

■ **To rotate an image**

Tap Transform → *Rotate* →  or  → Tap Done

■ **To flip an image**

Tap Transform → *Flip* →  or  → Tap Done
 ● To undo, tap  or press .

5 Tap Save → Enter file name

Oekaki Anime

Draw lines/shapes or insert text on still image. In addition, add motions to drawings to create Flash® images.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Oekaki anime*
- 2 Tap Canvas → *Pictures* or *Digital camera* → Select a still image
 - To select a file from *Digital camera* folder, insert Memory Card.

3 Select image size

To set image to Wallpaper, etc.

Normal

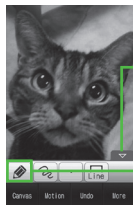
- Images are automatically resized to smaller than 800 x 480 pixels.

To attach image to messages to send

S! Mail

- Images will be resized to sendable size.

4 Draw



Touch Panel
Close Icon

Mode Switch
Icon

Oekaki anime
Window

To draw lines

Tap Mode switch icon → *Pen* → →
Select a line type → → Select a line
width → → Select a line color →
Draw lines

To draw shapes

Tap Mode switch icon → *Shape* → →
Select a shape → → Select a line
width → → Select a Contour color
→ → Select a color → Draw shapes
• Drag as if tracing a diagonal line.

To insert text

Tap Mode switch icon → *Text* → →
Enter text → → Select a font size →
 → Select a font style → → Select
a font color → Drag text to desired place

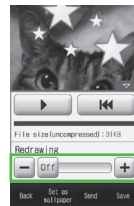
To insert stamps

Tap Mode switch icon → *Stamp* → →
→ *Preset stamp* → → Select a stamp
→ Tap an area to paste the stamp

To add a motion to the pasted stamp

Tap Motion → Tap a stamp to add a
motion → Tap OK → *Preset* → Select a
motion → Tap OK
• Each icon represents the current
setting. Changing settings changes the
corresponding icon.

5 Tap More → Preview → Confirm the image



Setting
Redrawing
speed

Preview

- Redrawing allows you to perform the following operations:
 - / : Pause/Resume
 - : Play from the beginning

6 Tap Save → Save as Flash® or Save as image → Enter file name

- To save a file to *Memory card*, insert
Memory Card.

- Cropping and Editing Still Images
- Using Oekaki anime with Camera Images
- Using Oekaki anime with Colored Background
- Undoing Edit Operation of Oekaki anime
- Setting Created Image to Wallpaper
- Saving and Sending Created Image

Printing Still Images

Print still images saved on handset by connecting a printer via Bluetooth® or USB.

For more information about printer operations and paper setting, see printer User Manual.


Printing via Bluetooth®

- Print images with Bluetooth® printer.
- Pair Bluetooth® printer beforehand.

1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → **Select a file location**

2 Tap More → *Print*

3 Via Bluetooth → **Check files to print** → **Tap Print**

4 Drag device to connect to 

- If no device is registered, search and register new device.

5 Set items as required

■ **To set whether to print a Frame or not**

Under *Frame, On or Off*

■ **To set paper size**

Paper size → Select a paper size

■ **To set the number of copies**

Number of copies → Enter the number of copies (1 to 99)

■ **To set the number of pages to print per sheet**

Page format → Select an item

- When selecting *Duplicate*, select *Pages per sheet* → Select a setting (1 to 16 up).

■ **To set whether to print the date or not**

Under *Print date, On or Off*

■ **To set print quality**

Print quality → Select an item

6 Tap Preview → **Tap Print**

Printing via USB

- 1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location
- 2 Tap More → *Print*
- 3 *Via USB* → Check files to print → Tap Print → *Yes*
- 4 Connect handset to a printer via USB
- 5 Set items as required
 - To set whether to print a Frame or not
Under *Frame, On* or *Off*
 - To set paper size
Paper size → Select a paper size
 - To set the number of copies
Number of copies → Enter the number of copies (1 to 99)
 - To set the number of pages to print per sheet
Page format → Select an item
 - When selecting *Duplicate*, select *Pages per sheet* → Select a setting (1 to 16 up)
 - To set whether to print the date or not
Under *Print date, On* or *Off*
 - To set print quality
Print quality → Select an item
- 6 Tap Preview → Tap Print

Advanced Settings

Advanced Settings

Capturing Still Images

Setting Macro

Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder → *Focus* → *Macro*

Setting Light

Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder → *Light* → *On* or *Off*

Setting Timer

Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder → *Timer* → Select an item

Setting White Balance

Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder → *White balance* → Select an item

Setting Effect (Color Tone)

Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder → *Effects* → Select an item

Sending Captured Still Images

After taking Still Image, tap Send

- To operate above, set *Auto save* to *Off* (⊕P.14-19).
- To send via message
Via message → (⊕P.4-4 S! Mail ②)
 - If the captured image size exceeds 300 KB, a window for resizing the image appears after saving the image to Data Folder. Resize the image before attaching it (⊕P.4-5 Attaching Files)
 - To send via Bluetooth®
Via Bluetooth → (⊕P.13-7 Sending Data ②)
 - To send via infrared
Via infrared (⊕P.13-3)





Entering File Name of Captured Still Image

After taking Still Image, tap Rename → Enter file name

- To operate above, set *Auto save* to *Off* (⊕P.14-19).

Setting Captured Still Image as Wallpaper etc.

After taking Still Image, tap Set as

- To operate above, set *Auto save* to *Off* (⊕P.14-19)
- To set image to Wallpaper
Wallpaper → Tap Rotate as required →  or  to toggle direction or tap Zoom →  or  to adjust zoom level → Tap Set
 - To set image to Incoming image
Caller ID → Search Phonebook and select an entry (⊕P.2-18) → Tap Set
 - To set image to Alternative picture
Still image → Tap OK

Viewing Quick Play Still Image

(2 + seconds) → → / to view Image

- The data saved in media set as *Save to* will be viewed. To change the media, change *Save to* (☞P.14-20).

Editing Quick Play Still Image

(2 + seconds) → → / to view Image → Tap Image editor → (☞P.7-12 Editing Still Images 4)

- When Memory Card is inserted, window to select *Memory Card/Phone/Digital camera* appears after tapping .

Using Oekaki anime with Quick Play Still Image

(2 + seconds) → → / to view Image → Tap Oekaki anime → (☞P.7-13 Oekaki Anime 3)

- The data saved in media set as *Save to* will be viewed. To change the media, change *Save to* (☞P.14-20).

Using Quick Play Still Image as Wallpaper, etc.

(2 + seconds) → → / to view Image → Tap Set as

■ To set image to Wallpaper

Wallpaper → Tap Rotate as required → or to toggle direction or tap Zoom → or to adjust size → Tap Set

■ To set image to Incoming image

Caller ID → Search and select a phonebook (☞P.2-18) → Tap Set

■ To set image to Alternative picture

Still image → Tap OK

- The data saved in media set as *Save to* will be viewed. To change the media, change *Save to* (☞P.14-20).

Viewing Quick Play Image Details

(2 + seconds) → → / to view Image → Tap Details

- The data saved in media set as *Save to* will be viewed. To change the media, change *Save to* (☞P.14-20).

Playing Quick Play Image Slide Show

(2 + seconds) → → Tap Slide show

- Press during playback to cancel Slide show.
- The data saved in media set as *Save to* will be viewed. To change the media, change *Save to* (☞P.14-20).

Sending Quick Play Still Images

(2 + seconds) → → / to view image → Tap Send

■ To send via message

Via message → (☞P.4-4 S! Mail 2)

■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → (☞P.13-7 Sending Data 2)

■ To send via infrared

Via infrared (☞P.13-3)

- The data saved in media set as *Save to* will be viewed. To change the media, change *Save to* (☞P.14-20).

Deleting Quick Play Images

(2 + seconds) → → / to view image → Tap Delete → *Yes*

- The data saved in media set as *Save to* will be viewed. To change the media, change *Save to* (☞P.14-20).

Exiting Quick Play

Tap Back to Camera during Quick play

Recording Videos

Setting Macro

Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder → **Focus** → **Macro**

Setting Light

Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder → **Light** → **On/Off**

Setting Timer

Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder → **Timer** → Select an item

Setting White Balance

Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder → **White balance** → Select an item

Setting Effect (Color Tone)

Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder → **Effects** → Select an item

Setting Sound Recording

Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder → **Sound** → **On/Off**

Viewing Recorded Video before Saving

After recording video, 

- To operate following, set **Auto save** to **Off** (⊕P.14-19).

Sending Recorded Video

After recording video, tap Send

- To operate above, set **Auto save** to **Off** (⊕P.14-19).

■ To send via message

Via message → (⊕P.4-4 S! Mail ②)

■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → (⊕P.13-7 Sending Data ②)

■ To send via infrared

Via infrared (⊕P.13-3)

Entering File Name of Recorded Video

After recording video, tap Rename → Enter file name

- To operate above, set **Auto save** to **Off** (⊕P.14-19).

Using Recorded Video as Ringtone

After recording video, tap Set as

- To operate above, set **Auto save** to **Off** (⊕P.14-19).

■ To set video to Voice ringtone

Voice ringtone


■ To set video to Video ringtone

Video ringtone

■ To set video to Caller ringtone


Caller ringtone → Select phonebook (⊕P.2-18)

Viewing Recorded Video via Quick Play

Tap Menu → **Camera** → **Video camera** → 
→  /  to view a video

- The data saved in media set as **Save to** will be viewed. To change the media, change **Save to** (⊕P.14-20).

Using Quick Play Video as Ringtone

Tap Menu → **Camera** → **Video camera** → 
→  /  to view a video → Tap Set as

■ To set video to Voice ringtone

Voice ringtone

■ To set video to Video ringtone



Video ringtone

■ To set video to Caller ringtone

Caller ringtone → Search and select a phonebook (⊕P.2-18)




- The data saved in media set as **Save to** will be viewed. To change the media, change **Save to** (⊕P.14-20).

Viewing Quick Play Video Details

Tap Menu → **Camera** → **Video camera** → 
→  /  to view a video → Tap Details

- The data saved in media set as **Save to** will be viewed. To change the media, change **Save to** (⊕P.14-20).

Sending Quick Play Video

Tap Menu → **Camera** → **Video camera** → 
→  /  to view a video → Tap Send

■ To send via message

Via message → (P.4-4 S! Mail 2)

■ To send via Bluetooth®




Via Bluetooth → (P.13-7 Sending Data 2)

■ To send via infrared

Via infrared (P.13-3)

- The data saved in media set as *Save to* will be viewed. To change the media, change *Save to* (P.14-20).

Deleting Quick Play Video

Tap Menu → **Camera** → **Video camera** → 
→  /  to view a video → Tap Delete → **Yes**

- The data saved in media set as *Save to* will be viewed. To change the media, change *Save to* (P.14-20).

Exiting Quick Play

Tap Back to Camcorder during Quick play

Editing Still Images

Cropping and Editing Still Images

Tap Menu → **Data Folder** → Select a file location → Select a file → Tap Edit → **Image editor** → Tap Transform → **Crop**

■ To adjust cropping area

Touch and hold inside cropping frame and drag → Tap Crop → Tap Save → Enter an image name

■ To change cropping size or shape

Stretch cropping frame → Tap Crop → Tap Save → Enter an image name








Using Oekaki anime with Camera Images

Tap Menu → **Oekaki anime** → Tap Canvas → **Take photo** → Capture an image → **Normal/S! Mail**




Using Oekaki anime with Colored Background

Tap Menu → **Oekaki anime** → Tap Canvas → **Color canvas** → Select a background color

Editing Entered Text

In Oekaki anime window, tap  → **Text** → Tap text you already entered → Tap  /  / 
/  /  /  → Change the Font size, Font, Font color, or the location of the text

Adding Emoticon Clip Art to Still Images

In Oekaki anime window, tap  → **Stamp** →  → **Photo stamp** →  as required

■ To select from saved still images

Pictures or **Digital camera** → Select a still image for a stamp → Tap Yes/No as required → Tap area to paste it

- To select a file from **Digital camera** folder, insert Memory Card.

■ To capture an image by Camera

Take photo → Take a still picture → **Yes** (When cropping, crop)/**No** (When not cropping) → Tap an area to paste it as a stamp

- Each icon represents the current setting. Changing settings changes the corresponding icons.

Adding Motions to Lines or Shapes You Drew

In Oekaki anime window, tap Motion → Tap Window → Drag to enclose a line or shape to add a motion → Tap OK → **Preset** → Select a motion → Tap OK

- Drag as if tracing a diagonal line of the area to add the motion.

Moving along with a Line

In Oekaki anime window, tap Motion → Tap Window

■ For lines or shapes

Drag to enclose the desired line or shape → Tap OK → **Motion line** → Draw a motion line starting from the selected line or shape → **Preview** → Tap OK

- Drag as if tracing a diagonal line of the desired area.

■ For stamps

Tap the desired stamp → Tap OK → **Motion line** → Draw a motion line starting from the selected stamp → **Preview** → Tap OK

- To delete the motion line and draw again, tap **Undo**.
-

Deleting Motions

In Oekaki anime window, tap Motion → Tap a line, shape, or stamp to remove the motion → Tap OK

■ To delete Preset

Preset →  → Tap OK

■ To delete Motion line

Motion line → **Off** → Tap OK

Undoing Edit Operation of Oekaki anime

In Oekaki anime window, tap Undo

- Undo the last operation performed in Oekaki anime window such as drawing a line or selecting a setting option.

Deleting Lines, Shapes, Text, or Stamps

In Oekaki anime window, tap Mode switch icon → **Delete**

■ For lines or shapes without any motion

Drag to enclose the line or shape to delete

- Drag as if tracing a diagonal line of the area to delete.

■ For lines or shapes with motions

Tap a line or shape to delete

■ For text or stamps

Tap text or stamp to delete

Setting Created Image to Wallpaper

Tap More → **Preview** → Tap Set as wallpaper → **Flash®/Image** → Enter file name

Saving and Sending Created Image

Tap More → **Preview** → tap Send

■ To send via Message

Via message → **Flash®/Image** → (📧P.4-4 S! Mail )

■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → **Flash®/Image** → (📶P.13-7 Sending Data )

■ To send via infrared

Via infrared → **Flash®/Image** → (📡P.13-3)

Changing Saving Location for Created Images

In Oekaki anime window, tap More → **Settings** → Under **Save to, Phone, Memory card, or Ask each time**

- When no Memory Card is inserted, the saving location is automatically set to **Phone**.
-

Setting Oekaki Process Playback Speed

In Oekaki anime window, tap More → **Settings** → Adjust Oekaki process playback speed

Compressing Files

In Oekaki anime window, tap More → **Settings** → Under **File compression, High/Normal** → Tap OK

Media Player



Using Media Player	8-2
Downloading Media Files	8-3
Playing Music	8-4
Media Player Music Window.....	8-4
Playing Music	8-5
Playing Movie	8-6
Media Player Movie Window	8-6
Playing Movie.....	8-7
Using Playlist	8-8
Creating Playlist	8-8
Playing Playlist	8-8
Streaming	8-9
Streaming from Page Link	8-9
Entering URL	8-9
Accessing from Bookmark.....	8-9
Accessing from History.....	8-9
Advanced Settings	8-10
Music Playback.....	8-10
Movie Playback	8-11
Streaming.....	8-12

Using Media Player

Music player is equipped with this handset.

Download music or movie from Yahoo! Keitai and create your own playlists.

In this chapter, usage of media player is described.

Playing Media Files



Play music or movie via media player (➡P.8-5, P.8-7).

Select a music or movie file from folders or playlists.

Downloading Media Files



Access Yahoo! Keitai and download music or movie.

Download movie content or play it in Streaming (➡P.8-3).

Creating Playlists



Add your favorite music or movie to a playlist and create your own music or movie album (➡P.8-8).

Player	File (Extension)
Music	MPEG4 Audio (mp4, m4a, or 3gp (sound only)), SoftBank Music Contents (smc), Windows Media Audio(wma)
Movie	MPEG4 (mp4, 3gp), H.263, H.264, Windows Media Video (wmv)

●To play a music file in a format other than above, select it from **Ring songs · tones**. Even compatible files must be saved in **Ring songs · tones** to play.

Note

Movie files exceeding 640 x 480 (mp4 or 3gp) or 320 x 240 (wmv) in resolution cannot be played.

Downloading Media Files

Access Yahoo! Keitai to download music or movie and copy them to handset.

Downloading Music & Movie

Access Yahoo! Keitai and download music or movie.

1 Tap Menu → *Media Player*

2 Download music or movie

■ To download music

Music → *All music* → *Download music* or *Music search*

- Select *Music search* to access Music search and search by genre or artist name.

■ To download movie


Movie → *All movies* → *Download movies*

Note

- Downloading music or movie may incur high Packet Communication fees since they have large data size.

Saving WMA/WMV Media Files from Handset to Memory Card

1 Insert Memory Card into handset

- Tap Menu → *Data Folder* →  to confirm folders are created.

2 Connect handset to a PC via USB

3 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *USB mode* → *MTP synch mode* → *Yes*

4 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

5 Save PC WMA/WMV Files to the specified Memory Card Folder

6 While connecting, tap Exit

7 Remove USB cable

- Receiving calls or messages is not available in the MTP synch mode.
- Save files to the following folders by type:
WMA file : WMAudio
WMV file : WMVideo

Saving other Media Files to Phone or Memory Card

To convert music or movie file formats, software is necessary.

- SoftBank does not guarantee proper operation with any specific software.
- For software specifications or operations, please check for websites of software companies.

1 Insert Memory Card into handset

- Follow instruction (☎P.12-11).

- Save files to the following folders by type:

Music file: PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Music
PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Sounds & Ringtones

Movie file: PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Movie

- If you copy WMA/WMV music or movie directly to Memory Card, you may not able to play them. Make sure to save them to Memory Card through the MTP synch mode (☎P.8-3).
- After saving files, insert Memory Card into handset and load saved files to play the files.

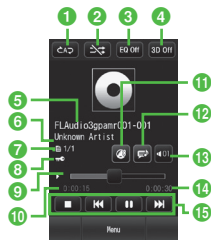
Playing Music

Folder structure is as follows.

Folder	Description
Last played/Now playing	Last played or currently played file
All music	Up to 9999 Music files
Playlists	View playable file on Music in created folders
Artists	All Music files by Artist
Albums	All Music files by Album
Genres	All Music files by Genre
Folder	All files in Ring songs·tones and Music folders of Data Folder and Memory Card, as well as WMAudio in Memory Card
Recent music	100 recently played files (Most recent first)
Most played music	100 most frequently played files (Most frequent first)

•Files in Memory Card may take longer to load.

Media Player Music Window



Music Playback

- Repeat mode
Tap to toggle settings.
 → : Off
 ↺ : One
 ↻ : Repeat all
- Setting Shuffle
Tap to toggle settings.
 ↺ : Shuffle On
 ↻ : Shuffle Off
- Sound effect
Tap to toggle settings.
This is not available when using Bluetooth®-compatible stereo headphone.

- 3D sound settings
Tap to toggle settings.
This is not available when using Bluetooth®-compatible stereo headphone.
- Title (File name when title is unknown)
- Artist's name
- File number/Total number of files
- Copy protection
- Progress bar
Drag or tap to specify start point.
- Elapsed playing time
- Web link provided
Tap to open related Website.
- Lyrics available
Tap to show lyrics.
- Volume level
Tap to adjust volume.
- Total playing time

15 Operation keys

 : Stop

 : Play

 : Pause

 : Cue/Previous song

• Tap within 3 seconds after playback starts to play previous song. Tap after 3 seconds to play beginning of current song.

Touch and hold  : Rewind

 : Next song

Touch and hold  : Fast Forward

- Rotate handset 90 degrees to automatically rotate Display image into Landscape view. Operations are the same as those in Portrait view.

Playing Music

1 Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Music*

2 Play a file

■ To play most recently played file

Last played

- While playing, *Last played* will be *Now playing*.

■ To select from all files

All music → Select a file

■ To select from playlists

Playlists → Select a playlist → Select a file

■ To select from list of Artists

Artists → Select an Artist → Select a file

■ To select from list of Albums

Albums → Select an Album → Select a file

■ To select from list of Genres

Genres → Select a genre → Select a file

■ To select from Folder List









Folder → Select a folder → Select a file

■ To select from list of recently played files

Recent music → Select a file

■ To select from list of often played files

Most played music → Select a file

- Tap  next to *All music* or a playlist name to play all files in the list.
- When Memory Card is inserted, Memory Card files appear in *All music* list and *Folder* list with .
- While Media Player is active, press  repeatedly to hide Music Playback window. Also, press  to choose whether to exit Music Playback window or keep playing the music as BGM. In Standby, press  to end Media Player. End confirmation appears, choose *Yes*.
- When a list is displayed while playing music, tap  to return to Music Playback window.
- If a call arrives while playing music on Player window, playback pauses and handset rings. After call ends, paused Music Playback window returns. For BGM, playback resumes automatically after call ends.
- Alarm time arrives during playing music on Music Playback window, playback pauses, Alarm sounds and indicator appears. Press any key to stop Alarm and to clear the indicator. For BGM, playback resumes.
- When *Auto lock* is set to *On*, press  /  to adjust the volume while playing music as BGM with Touch Panel locked, etc.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (P.8-10)

- Searching File by Text
- Adding Files to Playlist
- Sending Files
- Setting Files to Ringtone in Normal Mode
- Sorting Files
- Purchasing or Downloading Content Key
- Viewing File Details
- Changing Order of Files in Playlist
- Renaming Playlist
- Deleting Playlist
- Stopping Playback
- Switching to Bluetooth® -Compatible Stereo Headphone during Playback

Settings

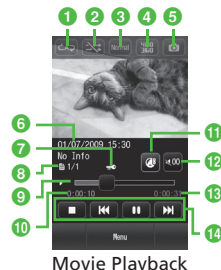
- Set Repeat mode (P.14-21)
- Set Shuffle (P.14-21)
- Set Equalizer (P.14-21)
- Set 3D sound (P.14-21)

Playing Movie

Folder structure is as follows.

Folder	Description
Last played	Play most recently played file
All movies	View all playable file on Movie up to 9999
Playlists	View playable file on Movie in created folders
Folder	View files on Movie folders of Data Folder and Memory Card, as well as WMVideo in Memory Card
Recent movie	View up to 100 recently played file (Most recently played file appears first)
Most played movie	View up to 100 frequently played file (Most frequently played file appears first)





Media Player Movie Window



- 1 Repeat mode**
Tap to toggle settings.
Off : Off
One : One
Repeat all : Repeat all
- 2 Setting Shuffle**
Tap to toggle settings.
Shuffle On : Shuffle On
Shuffle Off : Shuffle Off
- 3 Playback speed**
Tap to change setting.
- 4 Display size**
Tap to change setting.

- 5 Save as still image
 - Tap to save a still image.
 - Protected movies cannot be played as a still image.
- 6 Movie title (or file name if no title) and author
- 7 Copy protection
- 8 File number/Total number of files
- 9 Progress bar
 - Drag or tap to specify start point.
- 10 Elapsed playing time
- 11 Web link provided
 - Tap to open related Website.
- 12 Volume level
 - Tap to adjust volume.
- 13 Total playing time

14 Operation keys

-  : Stop
-  : Play
-  : Pause
-  : Cue/Previous movie

- Tap within 3 seconds after playback starts to play previous movie. Tap after 3 seconds to play beginning of current movie.

Touch and hold  : Rewind

 : Next movie

Touch and hold  : Fast Forward

- Rotate handset 90 degrees to automatically rotate Display image into Landscape view. Operations are the same as those in Portrait view.
- In Portrait view, tap movie for **1** to **5** icons. In Landscape view, tap movie for items other than image, including playback navigation or progress bar.

Playing Movie

1 Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Movie*

2 Play a file

■ To play most recently played file

Last played

■ To select from all files

All movies → Select a file

■ To select from playlists

Playlists → Select a playlist → Select a file

■ To select from folder list



Folder → Select a folder

■ To select from list of recently played files

Recent movie → Select a file

■ To select from list often played files

Most played movie → Select a file

- Tapping  next to *All movies* or a playlist name plays all files in the list.
- When Memory Card is inserted, Memory Card files appear in *All movies* list and *Folder* list with .

Advanced

Advanced Settings (P.8-11)

- Searching File by Text
- Adding Files to Playlist
- Sending Files
- Setting Files to Ringtone in Normal Mode
- Sorting Files
- Purchasing or Acquiring Content Key
- Viewing File Details
- Changing Order of Files in Playlist
- Renaming Playlist
- Deleting Playlist
- Stopping Playback
- Switching to Bluetooth® -Compatible Stereo Headphone during Playback

Settings

- Set Repeat mode (P.14-21)
- Set Shuffle (P.14-21)
- Set Backlight (P.14-21)
- Set Portrait style (P.14-21)
- Set Landscape style (P.14-21)
- Show or hide movies thumbnails (P.14-21)
- Access or ignore linked information (P.14-21)

Using Playlist

Create Playlist to make your own album.

Creating Playlist

Up to 20 playlists and 100 files in each playlist can be created.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Music or Movie* → *Playlists* → Tap Create
- 2 Enter playlist name
- 3 Select created playlist
- 4 Tap Add
- 5 Check files to save → Tap Add to playlist

Playing Playlist

- 1 Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Music or Movie* → *Playlists*
- 2 Select a playlist
- 3 Select a file

● Playlist cannot be played if included file has been deleted, or file is added from Memory Card and Memory Card is removed. Insert Memory Card and load file to play.

Streaming

Enjoy audio visual media while it is downloaded.
Access compatible files via page links, etc.

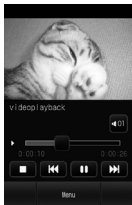
Streaming from Page Link

- 1 Open a page containing a page link
- 2 Select a link

Entering URL

- 1 Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Streaming* → *Enter URL*
 - "rtsp://" is set in URL field by default.

- 2 Enter URL



Streaming

- Operation while streaming is the same as that of Media Player (P.8-4, P.8-6).

Note

- Even if streaming is paused, Internet connection remains active, incurring Packet Communication fees.

Accessing from Bookmark

Up to 20 links in Streaming Bookmark can be saved.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Streaming* → *Bookmark*
- 2 Select a bookmark

Accessing from History

Up to 20 previously accessed links can be held.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Streaming* → *History*
- 2 Select history

Advanced

Advanced Settings (P.8-12)

- Saving File to Bookmark while Streaming
- Accessing Streaming Saved as Bookmark
- Accessing Previously Accessed Streaming
- Editing Streaming Bookmark URL
- Saving Streaming Bookmark by Direct Entry
- Deleting Streaming Bookmark URL
- Editing History of Streaming
- Deleting History of Streaming

Advanced Settings

Advanced Settings

Music Playback

Searching File by Text

Tap Menu → **Media Player** → **Music** → **All music** → Tap Search files → Check **Title** or **Artist** → Tap Search field → Enter title or artist name → Tap Search

Adding Files to Playlist

Tap Menu → **Media Player** → **Music** → **All music** → Tap Add to playlist → Check a file to add → Tap Add to playlist → Select a playlist

- To create a new playlist and add files to it. Tap Create in the window to add files → Enter playlist name → Select a created playlist.

Sending Files

Tap Menu → **Media Player** → **Music** → **All music** → Tap Send

To send via message

Via message → Select a file → (P.4-4 S! Mail 2)

To send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → Check files → Tap Send (P.13-7 Sending Data 2)

To send via infrared

Via infrared → Check files → Tap Send (P.13-3)

Setting Files to Ringtone in Normal Mode

Tap Menu → **Media Player** → **Music** → **All music** → Tap More → **Set as** → Select a file → Select an item

- Alternatively, tap Menu → **Set as** while music is paused in Music playback window.
- This operation is not available for files that cannot be added to ringtone.

Sorting Files

Tap Menu → **Media Player** → **Music** → **All music** → Tap More → **Sort by** → Select an item

- Perform the same operation in other folders.
- After returning to Standby, files will be resorted to default.

Purchasing or Downloading Content Key

Tap Menu → **Media Player** → **Music** → **All music** → Tap More → **Download Content key** → Select a file

Viewing File Details

Tap Menu → **Media Player** → **Music** → **All music** → Tap More → **Details** → Select a file

- Alternatively, during playback, Tap Menu → **Details**.
- Perform the same operation in other folders.

Changing Order of Files in Playlist

Tap Menu → **Media Player** → **Music** → **Playlists** → Select a playlist → Tap Reorder → Hold file to select, then drag to desired location → Tap OK

Renaming Playlist

Tap Menu → **Media Player** → **Music** → **Playlists** → Tap Rename → Select a Play list → Enter playlist name


Deleting Playlist

Tap Menu → **Media Player** → **Music** → **Playlists** → Tap Delete → Check a playlist → Tap Delete → **Yes**


Stopping Playback

During playback, tap 

Switching to Bluetooth®-Compatible Stereo Headphone during Playback

In Music playback window, tap Menu → **Transfer to headset** → Drag device to connect to 

- When no device is registered, search and register new device.
- when **Transfer to headset** is set, volume adjustment on handset is unavailable. Adjust on the headphones.
- Playback with monaural headphones is unavailable.
- Some files may not be played.

- To switch output to handset while playing music, tap Transfer to Phone.
- When headphone is registered or connected before, switching to Bluetooth® -compatible stereo headphone is available without dragging device to connect to .

Setting Repeat Mode

In Music playback window, tap Menu → **Settings** → **Repeat mode** → Select an item

Setting Shuffle

In Media Player Music Window, tap Menu → **Settings** → Under **Shuffle, On or Off**

Setting Equalizer

In Music playback window, tap Menu → **Settings** → **Equalizer** → Select an item

- This is not available when you use a Bluetooth® -compatible stereo headphone.

Setting Stereophonic Sound

In Music playback window, tap Menu → **Settings** → Under **3D sound, On or Off**

- This is not available when you use a Bluetooth® -compatible stereo headphone.

Movie Playback

Searching File by Text

Tap Menu → **Media Player** → **Movie** → **All movies** → Tap Search files → Check **Title** or **Author** → Tap Search field → Enter title or author's name → Tap Search

Adding Files to Playlist

Tap Menu → **Media Player** → **Movie** → **All movies** → Tap Add to playlist → Check a file to add → Tap Add to playlist → Select a playlist

- To create a new playlist and add files to it, tap Create in the window to add files → Enter playlist name → Select playlist


Sending Files

Tap Menu → **Media Player** → **Movie** → **All movies** → Tap Send

■ To send via message

Via message → Select a file → (ⓂP.4-4 5! Mail )

■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → Check a file → Tap Send (ⓂP.13-7 Sending Data )

■ To send via infrared

Via infrared → Check a file → Tap Send (ⓂP.13-3)

Setting Files to Ringtone in Normal Mode

Tap Menu → **Media Player** → **Movie** → **All movies** → Tap More → **Set as** → Select a file → Select an item

- Alternatively, tap Menu → **Set as** in Music playback window.
- This operation is not available for files that cannot be added to ringtone.

Sorting Files

Tap Menu → **Media Player** → **Movie** → **All movies** → Tap More → **Sort by** → Select an item

- Perform the same operation in other folders.

Purchasing or Acquiring Content Key

Tap Menu → **Media Player** → **Movie** → **All movies** → Tap More → **Download Content key** → Select a file

Viewing File Details

Tap Menu → **Media Player** → **Movie** → **All movies** → Tap More → **Details** → Select a file

- Alternatively, during playback, tap Menu → **Details**.
- Perform the same operation in other folders.

Changing Order of Files in Playlist

Tap Menu → **Media Player** → **Movie** → **Playlists** → Select a playlist → Tap Reorder → Hold file to select, then drag to desired location → Tap OK

Renaming Playlist

Tap Menu → **Media Player** → **Movie** → **Playlists** → Tap Rename → Select a playlist → Enter playlist name


Deleting Playlist

Tap Menu → **Media Player** → **Movie** → **Playlists** → Tap Delete → Check a playlist → Tap Delete → **Yes**

Stopping Playback

During playback, tap 

Switching to Bluetooth®-Compatible Stereo Headphone during Playback

In Movie playback window, tap Menu → **Transfer to headset** → Drag device to connect to 

- When no device is registered, search and register new device.
- when **Transfer to headset** is set, volume adjustment on handset is unavailable. Adjust on the headphones.
- Playback with monaural headphones is unavailable.
- Some files may not be played.
- To switch output to handset while playing music, tap Transfer to Phone.

Setting Repeat Mode

In Movie Playback window, tap Menu → **Settings** → **Repeat mode** → Select an item

Setting Shuffle

In Movie Playback window, tap Menu → **Settings** → Under **Shuffle, On** or **Off**

Setting Backlight

In Movie Playback window, tap Menu → **Settings** → **Backlight** → Select an item

Setting Portrait Style

In Movie Playback window, tap Menu → **Settings** → **Portrait style** → Select an item

Setting Landscape Style

In Movie Playback window, tap Menu → **Settings** → **Landscape style** → Select an item

Setting Thumbnail Display

In Movie Playback window, tap Menu → **Settings** → Under **Thumbnail display, On** or **Off**

Accessing or Ignoring Linked Information

In Movie Playback window, tap Menu → **Settings** → Under **Web link, On** or **Off**

Streaming

Playing the Last Played Streaming

Tap Menu → **Media Player** → **Streaming** → **Last played**

Saving File to Bookmark while Streaming

While streaming, tap Menu → Tap Add bookmark → Tap Title field → Enter title → Tap URL field → Enter URL → Tap Save

Accessing Streaming Saved as Bookmark

While streaming, tap View bookmark → Select bookmark

Accessing Previously Accessed Streaming

While streaming, tap Menu → Tap View history → Select history

Editing Streaming Bookmark URL

Tap Menu → **Media Player** → **Streaming** → **Bookmark** → Tap Edit bookmark → Select bookmark to edit → Tap Title field → Edit title → Tap URL field → Edit URL → Tap Save

- Alternatively, while streaming, tap Menu → Tap View bookmark → Edit bookmark → Select a bookmark to edit → Tap Title field → Edit title → Tap URL field → Edit URL → Tap Save.

Saving Streaming Bookmark by Direct Entry

Tap Menu → **Media Player** → **Streaming** → **Bookmark** → Tap Add bookmark → Tap Title field → Enter title → Tap URL field → Enter URL → Tap Save

- Alternatively, while streaming, tap Menu → Tap View bookmark → Tap Add bookmark → Tap Title field → Enter title → Tap URL field → Enter URL → Tap Save.

Deleting Streaming Bookmark URL

Tap Menu → **Media Player** → **Streaming** → **Bookmark** → Tap Delete → Check bookmarks to delete → Tap Delete → **Yes**

- Alternatively, while streaming, tap View bookmark → Tap Delete → Check bookmarks to delete → Tap Delete → **Yes**.

Editing History of Streaming

Tap Menu → **Media Player** → **Streaming** → **History** → Tap Edit history → Select history to edit → Tap Title field → Edit title → Tap URL field → Edit URL → Tap Save

- Alternatively, while streaming, tap Menu → Tap View history → Tap Edit history → Select history to edit → Tap Title field → Edit title → Tap URL field → Edit URL → Tap Save.

Deleting History of Streaming

Tap Menu → **Media Player** → **Streaming** → **History** → Tap Delete → Check URL to delete → Tap Delete → **Yes**

- Alternatively, while streaming, tap Menu → Tap View history → Tap Delete → Check URL to delete → Tap Delete → **Yes**.

Memo

A series of 12 horizontal dotted lines for writing.

Entertainment

9

Entertainment Functions	9-2
S! Applications (Japanese)	9-3
Downloading S! Appli.....	9-3
S! Appli.....	9-3
Games	9-3
Number Place World.....	9-3
Touch Golf Pangya.....	9-4
Hidden Catch4.....	9-4
Dice.....	9-4
Random Ball.....	9-5
S! Quick News	9-5
Opening List.....	9-5
Viewing Update Information.....	9-5
Registering S! Quick News List.....	9-5
Refreshing Entries Manually.....	9-6
Deleting Entries.....	9-6
S! Information Channel	9-6
Service Registration.....	9-6
New Received Information.....	9-6
Using Weather Indicator.....	9-6
S! Friend's Status	9-7
Saving Members.....	9-7
Changing My Status.....	9-9
Deleting Member.....	9-10
Near Chat	9-10
About Near Chat.....	9-10
Using Near Chat.....	9-11
Sending Near Chat Request.....	9-11
Receiving Near Chat Request.....	9-11
BookSurfing®	9-12
Using BookSurfing®.....	9-12
Downloading e-Books.....	9-12
e-Books Viewer.....	9-12

Biorhythm	9-12
Registering Birthday.....	9-12
Checking Biorhythm.....	9-12
Widgets	9-13
Adding Widget Item.....	9-13
Changing Widget Display by Package.....	9-16
Move Widget to Standby.....	9-16
Wallpaper Widget.....	9-17
S! Friend's Status Widget.....	9-17
S! Quick News Widget.....	9-18
Mini Player Widget.....	9-18
Dual Clock Widget.....	9-19
S! Information Channel Widget.....	9-19
Weather Widget.....	9-19
Calendar Widget.....	9-19
Alarm Widget.....	9-19
Tasks Widget.....	9-20
Memo Widgets.....	9-20
Top 3 Widgets.....	9-20
Using Standby Widgets as Shortcuts.....	9-21
Advanced Settings	9-21
S! Quick News.....	9-21
S! Information Channel.....	9-22
S! Friend's Status.....	9-22
Widgets.....	9-24

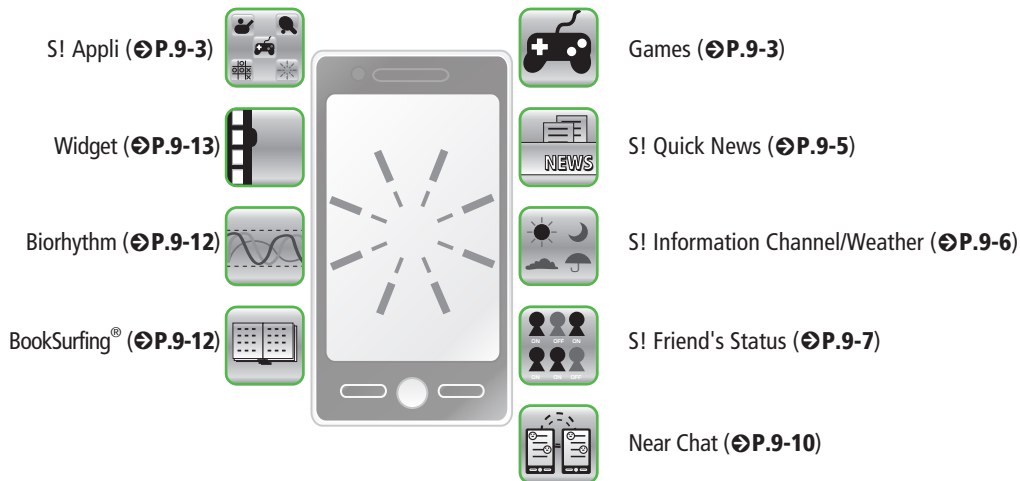
Entertainment Functions

Access the Internet to view or download content. Subscribe to content for automatic updates. Learn how to download and use content.

Note

These services require separate subscription:

- S! Quick News
- S! Information Channel
- S! Friend's Status



S! Applications (Japanese)

Play downloaded or registered SoftBank S! Appli games.

- For detailed instruction, see S! Appli Help or information on Internet download site.

Downloading S! Appli

- 1 Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Appli* → *S! Appli List* → *Download S! Appli*
 - Follow onscreen instruction

S! Appli

Activate S! Appli

- 1 Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Appli* → *S! Appli List*
- 2 Select S! Appli item

Play Network connection type S! Appli

- Network (Internet) access confirmation appears. Follow onscreen instructions.


Incoming call while S! Appli activation

- S! Appli will be paused and incoming call window appears.

To check S! Appli Demand history

- Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Appli* → *Demand history*

Exit S! Appli

- 1 While S! Appli activation 
- 2 *Exit*

To pause S! Appli

- From window, select *Pause*

To resume paused S! Appli

- Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Appli* → *Resume*

To end paused S! Appli

- Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Appli* → *Finish*

Games

Five games are preinstalled on handset.

Note

- Some games require shaking handset. If shaken too hard, handset may impact a person or object, causing damage/injury. Do not shake handset too hard. Hold firmly in a safe place while playing games.

Number Place World

Fill out 81 grids with numbers. Fill out all 9x9 grid with number 1 to 9. 1 to 9 can be used only once in each column, row and box with 3X3 grid.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *Number Place World*
- 2 Follow onscreen instructions.



Touch Golf Pangya

This is a golf game anyone can enjoy without knowledge of golf.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *Touch Golf Pangya*
- 2 Follow onscreen instructions



Hidden Catch4

Clear three stages: *間違い探し* Finding difference between 2 pictures; *変わる絵* Finding changes with time; *隠し絵* Finding spirits.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *Hidden Catch4*
- 2 Follow onscreen instructions



Dice

Shake handset to cast two dice in the window.

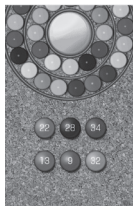
- 1 Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *Dice*
- 2 Shake handset



Random Ball

Set range of numbers and quantity of balls.
For example, use it for Bingo Ball spinner.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *Random Ball*
- 2 *Range* → *Set Min and Max* → Tap OK → *Balls* → Enter quantity → Tap OK → Tap OK
- 3 Shake handset



S! Quick News

View Yahoo! Keitai content update information.

- Check for updates of items saved in S! Quick News (P.9-18).
- S! Quick News requires a separate subscription.

Opening List

- 1 Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Quick News*



S! Quick News List

- : Quick News unread
- : General unread
- : Quick News read
- : General read
- : S! Quick News/Pause Auto-updata

Note

- To use S! Quick News, Packet Communication fees apply.

Viewing Update Information

- 1 Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Quick News*
- 2 Select content
- 3 Select an entry
 - Tap List/Index to return to S! Quick News list/Contents list.
 - To connect to Internet and check for update, select an item → choose *Yes*.
 - To view information on the previous page, tap Previous.
 - To view information on the next page, tap Next.
 - Tap Show keypad to display Keypad.

Registering S! Quick News List

Register up to 1 newflash and 4 general news items in S! Quick News list.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Quick News*
- 2 *Register contents* → *Yes*
- 3 Select content → Follow onscreen instructions

Refreshing Entries Manually

- 1 Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Quick News*
- 2 Tap Refresh → Select contents to refresh → Tap OK
 - Tap Cancel to cancel refresh in process.

Deleting Entries

- 1 Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Quick News*
- 2 Tap Delete → Select contents to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings** (☞ P.9-21)

- Viewing Content Details
- Refreshing S! Quick News List
- Viewing S! Quick News from List

S! Information Channel

S! Information Channel delivers subscribed content such as overnight news. Weather Indicator appears in Standby.

- This service is only available in Japan.
- S! Information Channel requires a separate subscription.

Service Registration

- 1 Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Information Channel* → *Weather* → *Register/Cancel*
- 2 Follow onscreen instruction

New Received Information


S! Information Channel content is received automatically; notification appears in Standby.

- 1 Tap a notification
- 2 Follow onscreen instruction
 - Operations are same as Yahoo! Keitai.

Using Weather Indicator

Upon subscription to S! information channel, Weather indicator appears in Standby.

 : Shine (daytime)

 : Shine (nighttime)

 : Cloudy



 : Rain

 : Snow

 : Thunderstorm

 : Then

 : Sometimes

Example:  /  → Cloudy, sometimes rain

- In addition to the above, other information such as rainfall probability or seasonal information appears.

Note

- When using S! Information Channel, Packet Communication fees apply.

Advanced

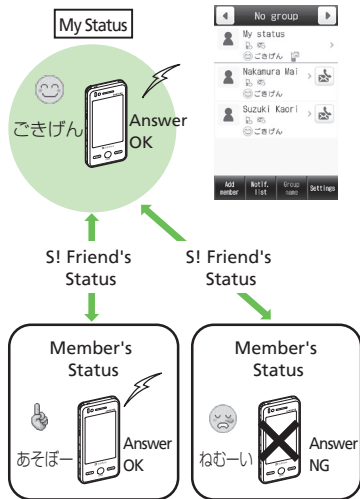
Settings

- Set Weather Indicator update notification (☞ P.14-22)
- Set Weather Indicator automatic update (☞ P.14-22)

S! Friend's Status

Check members' current mood or availability.

- S! Friend's Status requires a separate subscription.
- Available on S! Friend's Status-compatible models.



- Adding entries to Members List, to make their status available. Status is updated automatically.

Note

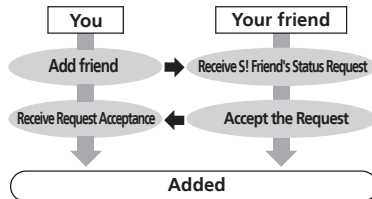
- Confirm *IP service setting* (P.14-23) is set to **On** before using the service.

Saving Members

Add a member to S! Friend's Status members list to share information with other members.

- Up to 30 members can be added.

Registering Flow



- When added to member list, your S! Friend's Status (My Status) will be sent, and information will be shared with each other.
- Notification is sent to person added or removed from S! Friend's Status members list.

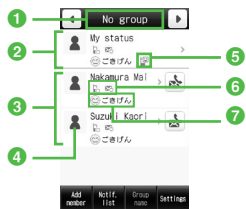
See S! Friend's Status Notification types below:

Type	Description
S! Friend's Status Request	You are added to S! Friend's Status members list.
Request Acceptance	Your request for S! Friend's Status members list is accepted.
Request Rejection	Your S! Friend's Status members list request is rejected or no reply has been received within 2 hours.
Cancel Request	You are removed from S! Friend's Status members list.
Offline Notification	S! Friend's Status is not available due to network trouble.

Note

- When network connection status (P.9-22) is **Offline**, adding members to the list is not available. When adding members, make sure to set network connection status to **Online**.

Opening Member Status



Members List Window



Member Status Window

- 1 Group name of S! Friend's Status
- 2 Your information (My Status) (➔P.9-9)
- 3 Member's information
- 4 Image saved in Account details appears in My Status. Image, name, and phone number saved in Phonebook appears in Member Status.

- 5 S! Friend's Status Widget setting status Appears when Widget disp. On is set to *Yes*.
- 6 Answer status Call or message answer status
- 7 Status icon and status label indicates your/member's status.
- 8 Network connection status indicates your/member's connection status
- 9 Comment

Registering from Phonebook

- 1 Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Friend's Status*

- When no member is saved, choose *Yes* and go to Step 3.

- 2 Tap Add member

- 3 Add members

■ To use Phonebook

From phonebook → Search Phonebook and select entry (➔P.2-18) → Select phone number

■ To enter phone number

New entry → Enter phone number → Tap OK

- 4 Send request confirmation appears, choose *Yes*

- After Request is accepted and Request Acceptance received, member is added.
- S! Friend's Status information changes to *Waiting* and status to *Unknown*.

- If you do not wish to show your status upon initial registration by default, change My Status first.

Note

- When 30 members are saved, none can be added. Delete members to add new ones.
- If handset is incompatible, Request Rejection notification appears.

Registering from Received Request

Add members via S! Friend's Status Request.

- When received, add sender confirmation appears. Follow these steps to add members.



S! Friend's Status Request Window

1 Tap notification list → Select S! Friend's Status Request

2 S! Friend's Status Request appears, choose *Yes*

- Request Acceptance received and new member is added to the list.
- Choose *No* to reject the Request. Request Rejection is sent (Member is not added).
- To check later, select *Check Later*.

- Request Rejection is automatically sent:
 - Not available to reply within two hours.
 - 30 members are already saved.

Note

- For *No*, Request Rejection is sent. The person who sent Request cannot be added to members list for 24 hours.
- If Request Rejection is not received within 24 hours, Request is resent.

Changing My Status

Set S! Friend's Status information as follows.

My Status Details Window

1 Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → S! Friend's Status → My status



My Status Details Window

- 1 Image
Show images saved in Account details.
- 2 Standby Window Setting Status
Appears when *Widget disp.* is *On*.
- 3 Network connection status (☞P.9-22)
- 4 Status icon and status label
Change pictograms (status icon) and short sentence (status label). Change status icon and label in Status setting by tapping Edit (☞P.9-23).
- 5 Answer status
Change Answer status of call or message.
- 6 Comment
Edit Short message (up to 15 characters).

Changing My Status Information

- 1 Open My Status Details Window → Select item to change (except network connection status) → Change setting → Tap Update

- Changed My Status is sent to members.

Set following items.

Item	Settings
Status setting	16 combinations of status icons and labels
One time setting	
	All OK Call: Answer OK Mail: Reply OK
	Mail only OK Call: Answer NG Mail: Reply OK
	All NG Call: Answer NG Mail: Check later
	User Setting -*
Call	Answer OK, Urgency only, Answer NG
Mail	Reply OK, Check later
Comment	Max. 15 characters

*Change answer settings in **One time setting** (ⓘ P.9-23).

Deleting Member

- 1 Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Friend's Status* → Select member to delete → Tap Unregister → Yes

- The removed member cannot be added to the list for 24 hours.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (ⓘ P.9-22)

- Toggling My Status in Widget Screen On/Off
- Adding S! Friend's Status Member to Widget
- Viewing S! Friend's Status Notification
- Deleting S! Friend's Status Notification
- Adding Members to Phonebook
- Editing Members in Phonebook
- Editing Group Names
- Setting My Image
- Setting S! Friend's Status Member Images

Settings

- Set IP service setting (ⓘ P.14-23)

Near Chat

- This application employs the use restriction function that enables supervising adults to restrict the usage by children under 18 years old.
- For details on password restriction, see Near Chat S! Appli instructions.
- Users may receive unsolicited connection requests from unknown sources, as Near Chat employs Bluetooth® technology. You can reject such requests.

About Near Chat

Exchange real-time text messages wirelessly with compatible devices within 10 meters.

- This application employs Bluetooth® technology. Therefore, connection fees do not apply.
- Near Chat S! Appli is required. This application is pre-installed in handset.

Note

- Near Chat range may vary by ambient conditions.
- The pre-installed Near Chat S! Appli cannot be deleted.
- Near Chat may not be available or act differently with some devices due to operation, Display, and action difference.

Using Near Chat

Setup

First, activate these settings.

- Bluetooth
- Bluetooth Visibility
- S! Appli request setting

- Activating Near Chat activates Bluetooth. Bluetooth remains active even after Near Chat ends.

Note

- When Bluetooth® On/Off is *Off*, you cannot use Near Chat S! Appli.
- When Bluetooth® On/Off is *On* and *My phone's visibility* in Bluetooth settings is *Show my phone*, handset is visible to other Bluetooth® devices. Connection requests from other devices may be received.
- When *My phone's visibility* is *Hide my phone* and *S! Appli request* is *Off*, Near Chat will not start from other device requests.

S! Appli Request

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth*
- 2 Tap More → *Settings*
- 3 Under *S! Appli request*, *On* or *Off*

Sending Near Chat Request

- 1 Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *Near Chat* → *Yes*



- If *Bluetooth On/Off* is *Off*, choose *Yes*

- 2 Send Near Chat request via S! Appli
- 3 To exit Near Chat, exit S! Appli (ⓅP.9-3)

Receiving Near Chat Request

For details on Near Chat operations, see Near Chat S! Appli instructions.

- 1 When notification of Near Chat request appears, press *Yes*



- 2 When a confirmation appears, press *Yes*
- 3 To exit Near Chat, exit S! Appli (ⓅP.9-3)

- After 30 seconds of inactivity, notification appears.

BookSurfing®

Using BookSurfing®

Download and view e-books, comics, photobooks (CCF files) saved in Books. Enlarge/reduce images, scroll page, browse images with sound/vibration effects.

To browse CCF files, acquire Content Key. Content Key is not required to browse handset pre-installed.

After changing phone models, move CCF files via Memory Card. Re-download Content Key to browse those files. Note that some contents may require re-downloading CCF files.

Downloading e-Books

1 Tap Menu → *Entertainment*
→ *BookSurfing*

2 作品を探す (Web から)
→ はい

- Follow on screen instruction.

e-Books Viewer

1 Tap Menu → *Entertainment*
→ *BookSurfing*

- For operation after activation, see BookSurfing®'s help.

Biorhythm

We have the rhythm about Physical, Emotional & Intellectual condition with 23, 28, 33 day cycle. You and your friend's monthly Biorhythm will be displayed by graph after registering birthday. Perfect day and Caution day will be displayed by attention.

Registering Birthday

1 Tap Menu → *Entertainment* →
Biorhythm → *Input birthday*

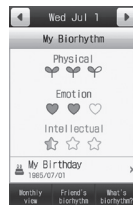
2 Enter Birthday

- Birthday Registration window is displayed only when birthday is not registered. When birthday has already been registered, today or monthly (graph/Attention!) Biorhythm will be displayed.

Checking Biorhythm

Today

1 Tap Menu → *Entertainment*
→ *Biorhythm*



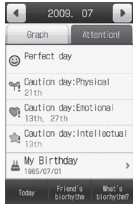
- Tap ◀ / ▶ to change the date of displaying biorhythm.

Monthly

- 1 Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *Biorhythm* → Tap Monthly view → ◀ / ▶



- Tap ◀ / ▶ to change the month of displaying biorhythm.



- Tap *Graph/Attention!* to change view.

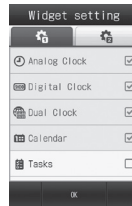
Widgets

Save functions as Standby Widgets and tap to start.

Adding Widget Item

Select items from Widget Setting list. Save up to 17 items as Widgets.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Widget setting*



- 2 Check items to register → Tap OK

Registerable Functions

Function	Description
Analog Clock	Show analog clock.
Digital Clock	Show digital clock.
Dual Clock	Show two clocks as specified in world map. Tap Clock to set area (P.9-19).
Calendar	Show Calendar. Choose view.
Tasks	Show all tasks.
Alarm	Show Alarm settings.
Memo(Yellow)	Show yellow memo.
Memo(Blue)	Show blue memo.
Memo(Red)	Show red memo.
Countdown timer	Tap to activate timer.
Light	Tap to blink a back light in 30 seconds.
Wallpaper	Open Data Folder to set Wallpaper.
S! Information Channel	Access S! Information Channel.
S! Friend's Status	Access S! Friend's Status.
S! Quick News	Access S! Quick News.
Top3	Show three of the most frequent calling and mailing company.
Mini player	Use Music Player in Standby.
Oekaki anime	Launch Oekaki anime.
Photo Album	Launch Photo Album.
Music Player	Tap to show music file select menu.

Function	Description
Movie Player	Show movie tile select menu.
Data Folder	Open Data Folder.
Camera	Activate Camera.
TV	Tap to start TV.
S! Appli	Tap to show S! Appli select menu.
Near Chat	Tap to activate Near Chat.
BookSurfing	Tap to activate BookSurfing®.
Biorhythm	Tap to activate Biorhythm.
Number Place World	Tap to activate Number Place World.
Pangya	Tap to activate Pangya.
Hidden Catch4	Tap to activate Hidden Catch4.
Dice	Launch Dice.
RandomBall	Launch RandomBall.
S! Mail	Open Received msg.
Notepad	Open Notepad.
Voice recorder	Activate Voice recorder.
Calculator	Open Calculator.
Converter	Open Converter.
Stopwatch	Launch Stopwatch.
Dictionary	Open Dictionary.
Bluetooth	Tap to activate Bluetooth®.

Function	Description
Infrared	Tap to show Infrared menu.
Phonebook	Open Phonebook.
Bookmark (Y keitai)	Show bookmarks.
S-1 BATTLE	Tap to show S-1 BATTLE information window.
Content Value Package	Tap to show information window of Content Value Package.
Simple Select Video	Tap to show information window of Simple Select Video.
Bookmark (PC Site Browser)	Show bookmarks.
Settings	Open Settings menu.
Widget setting	Tap to show Widget setting menu.

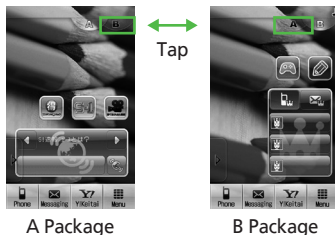
Note

- To use S! Friend's Status or S! Quick News, subscription and setting are required.

Changing Widget Display by Package

There are 2 types of Display pattern (A Package/ B Package) for Widget Display and a location of Widget is set by packages.

1 Tap A package icon/B package icon



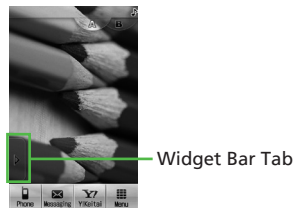
- Widget location set by packages is preserved even if package is changed or handset power off.

Move Widget to Standby

Drag Widgets from Widget Bar and drop in Standby to activate functions or use as shortcuts.

- Tap Digital Clock or Analog Clock Widgets to display in Standby. These Widgets have no other function.

1 Tap Widget Bar Tab



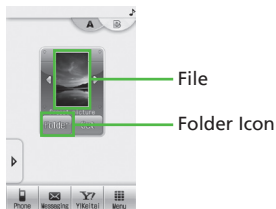
2 Drag Widget from Widget Bar to Standby



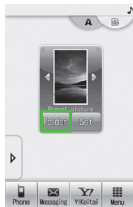
3 Tap Standby Widget

- Standby Widget may overlap.
- Drag Standby Widgets to arrange them.
- Change Widget order in Widget Bar. Drag Widgets to rearrange them.

Wallpaper Widget



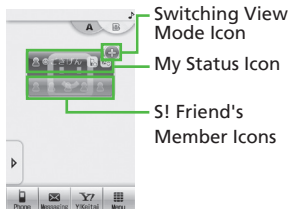
- 1 Tap Widget Bar Tab
- 2 Drag *Wallpaper settings* Widget from Widget Bar to Standby
- 3 *Folder*



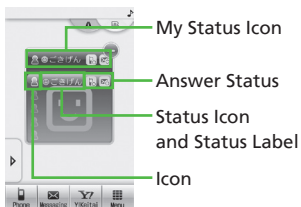
- 4 Select *Preset picture/Pictures*
- 5 Tap ◀ / ▶ to select a file
- 6 *Set*

S! Friend's Status Widget

Check or operate S! Friend's Status in Standby. Up to 6 people including "Me" may appear.



Member Standby Widget



Member List Standby Widget

- 1 Tap Widget Bar Tab
- 2 Drag *S! Friend's Status* Widget from Widget Bar to Standby Display
 - S! Friend's Status icon is displayed in Standby.

- 3 Tap *S! Friend's Status* changing Display icon
 - S! Friend's Status member list appears.

Viewing My Status to Widget Icon

- 1 Tap
- 2 Tap *My Status disp. On* → *Yes*
 - To hide your status, tap *My Status disp. Off* → *Yes*.

Registering Member to Widget Icon

- 1 Tap
- 2 Tap *Add* → Tap a field to register a member
- 3 Add a member

■ To register from Phonebook

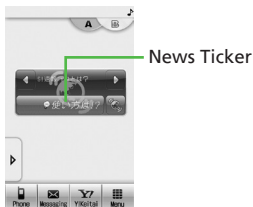
From phonebook → Search and select an entry (P.2-18) → Select the number

■ To register from S! Friend's Status member list

From member list → Choose an S! Friend's Status member

S! Quick News Widget

S! Quick News Widget appears in Standby by default.



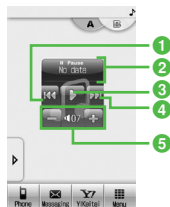
1 Tap News Ticker

- Contents list appears.

2 Check news (⌂P.9-5 Viewing Update Information 3)

- If S! Quick News Widget appears in Widget Bar, drag it to Standby beforehand.

Mini Player Widget



- 1 Cue/Previous track
Tap within first 3 seconds of track playback for previous track; after 3 seconds for beginning of current track.
- 2 Title (or file name is displayed if there is no title), Artist name/Launch Media Player.
- 3 Play/Pause
- 4 Next track
- 5 Volume level

1 Tap Widget Bar Tab

2 Drag *Mini player* Widget from Widget Bar to Standby

3 Play music

- Press / to adjust the volume.
- In Standby, press → **Yes** to stop playback.

- Playback with *Mini player* Widget starts from first song in **All music** or last played point.


Dual Clock Widget



- To change the region for Clock, tap Clock → Tap a city to register → **Set as 1st clock/Set as 2nd clock** → Tap OK



S! Information Channel Widget



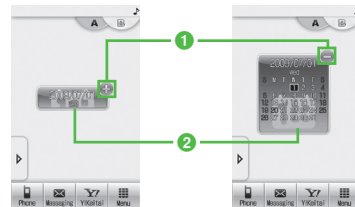
- Tap  for S! Information Channel/Weather menu.
- For details on subscribing to S! Information Channel, see "Service Registration" (➔P.9-6).

Weather Widget






- Tap Weather Indicator for weather information. Tap  for S!Information/Weather menu.
- If unsubscribed, tap ticker or  for S! Information Channel menu. Upon subscription to S! Information Channel, Weather Indicator appears in Standby. For details on subscribing to S! Information Channel, see "Service Registration" (➔P.9-6).
- See "Using Weather Indicator" (➔P.9-6).

Calendar Widget



Daily View

Monthly View

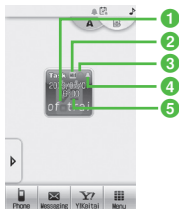
- 1  / : Toggle view
Tap to toggle Daily View/Monthly View
- 2  Calendar
Tap this to launch Calendar.

Alarm Widget



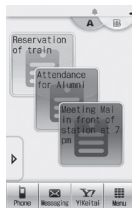
- Time set for Alarm appears. If more than 1 alarm is set, alarm closest to current time appears.
- Tap Widget to activate Alarm (➔P.10-4).

Tasks Widget



- 1 Title
- 2 Priority
- 3 Status
 - :Complete
 - :Incomplete
 - :Expired
- 4 Alarm set
- 5 Due date
 - If multiple tasks are set, task with closest due time appears.

Memo Widgets



- Show yellow/blue/red memos.
- Tap Widgets to edit contents.

Top 3 Widgets

Top three Widgets appear in Standby by default.



- Show three most frequently called/messaged contacts.

Making a Video Call

1 Tap  tab

2 Tap name

- Tap name to dial.

Creating/Sending Mail

1 Tap  tab

2 Tap name

- Tap name to open Message creation window.

Using Standby Widgets as Shortcuts

Tap these Widgets to launch corresponding functions:

- Countdown timer
- Light
- Oekaki anime
- Photo Album
- Music Player
- Movie Player
- Data Folder
- Camera
- TV
- S! Appli*
- Near Chat
- BookSurfing
- Biorhythm
- Number Place World
- Pangya
- Hidden Catch4
- Dice
- RandomBall
- S! Mail
- Notepad
- Voice recorder
- Calculator
- Converter
- Stopwatch
- Dictionary (English or Japanese dictionary)

- Bluetooth
- Infrared
- Phonebook
- Bookmark (Y Keitai or PC Site Browser)*
- S-1 BATTLE*
- Content Value Package*
- Simple Select Video*
- Settings
- Widget setting

* Tapping Widgets may open websites, and communication fee might be charged.

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings** (☞ P.9-21)

- Canceling S! Quick News Settings

Settings

- Set Frequently Used Functions to Widget Bar (☞ P.14-5)

Advanced Settings

Advanced Settings

S! Quick News

Viewing Content Details

In S! Quick News list, tap Details → Select content

Refreshing S! Quick News List

In S! Quick News list, select content → Tap Refresh

- Tap Cancel to cancel.

Viewing S! Quick News from List

In S! Quick News list, select content → *Website* → *Yes*

- Tap List or  to view S! Quick News List.

Refreshing S! Quick News List Automatically

Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Quick News* → Tap Settings → *Auto refresh*

■ To refresh Newsflash automatically

Flash news → Select an item

■ To refresh general news automatically

General → *On* or *Off*

- Auto refresh is executed based on the set time. To confirm next time for refresh, tap Details in S! Quick News list, and select content.
- Set *General* to *On* to refresh automatically once a day.

- **Flash news** auto refresh is not executed between midnight and early AM. If **General** is set, news is refreshed automatically during that period.
- Auto refresh is not performed while roaming. Instead, refresh manually (📶P.9-6).
- Auto refresh may fail outside service area or where signal conditions are poor.
- If auto refresh fails, update news manually (📶P.9-6).
- Removing/replacing USIM Card cancels auto refresh.

Deleting S! Quick News List

Tap Menu → **Entertainment** → **S! Quick News**
 → Tap Settings → **Delete S! Quick News List**
 → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → **Yes**

S! Information Channel

Viewing after Indicator Disappears

Tap Menu → **Entertainment** → **S! Information Channel/Weather** → **What's New?**

Viewing Information Previously Received

Tap Menu → **Entertainment** → **S! Information Channel/Weather** → **History** → Select an item

Receiving Failed Information

Tap Menu → **Entertainment** → **S! Information Channel/Weather** → **Get Latest Contents** → **Yes**

Displaying Weather Indicator

Tap Menu → **Entertainment** → **S! Information Channel/Weather** → **Weather Indicator** → **Weather**

Updating Weather Indicator Manually

Tap Menu → **Entertainment** → **S! Information Channel/Weather** → **Weather Indicator** → **Manual update** → **Yes** → Follow onscreen instruction

S! Friend's Status

Setting S! Friend's Status Connection

Open My Status details → **Online/Offline** in Network connection status field → **Yes**

- Set to **Online** to edit or update My Status.

Toggling My Status in Widget Screen On/Off

Open My Status details → Tap Widget disp. On or Widget disp. Off → **Yes** or **No**

- Choose Widget disp. On/Widget disp. Off → **Yes** to show or hide My status in Widget screen respectively.

Adding S! Friend's Status Member to Widget

Tap Menu → **Entertainment** → **S! Friend's Status** → select a member to set → Tap Widget disp. On → **Yes** → Select save location

- If Widget is full, add members by overwriting the existing one.

Viewing S! Friend's Status Notification

Tap Menu → **Entertainment** → **S! Friend's Status** → Tap Notif. list → Select a notification list to view

- Tap each notification to check notification details.
- Request notification can also be selected (📶P.9-9).

Deleting S! Friend's Status Notification

Tap Menu → **Entertainment** → **S! Friend's Status** → Tap Notif. list → Tap Delete → Check notification to delete → Tap Delete

Making Voice/Video Call & Messaging

Tap Menu → **Entertainment** → **S! Friend's Status** → select a member

■ To make a call

Tap Phone field of Answer status → Voice call/
Video call

■ To send a message

Tap Message field of Answer status → S! Mail or SMS → (📞P.4-4 S! Mail ⑤, P.4-7 SMS ⑤)

- Alternatively, in S! Friend's Status members list, tap 📞 / 📧 to make Call/Video Call or message.

Adding Members to Phonebook

Tap Menu → **Entertainment** → **S! Friend's Status** → select a member → Tap Add to phonebook → (📞P.2-24 Enter and Save Phone Number)

Editing Members in Phonebook

Tap Menu → **Entertainment** → **S! Friend's Status** → select a member → Tap Edit phonebook → Edit phonebook (📞P.2-23)

Setting Actions When Saving

Tap Menu → **Entertainment** → **S! Friend's Status** → Tap Settings → **Request reply** → Select an item

- If **Do not answer** is selected, Rejection request is always returned.

Setting Answer Status

Tap Menu → **Entertainment** → **S! Friend's Status** → Tap Settings → **One time setting** → **User Settings** → Select answer status → Select answer status icon → Tap Save

Changing Status Icons or Status Labels

Tap Menu → **Entertainment** → **S! Friend's Status** → Tap Settings → **Status setting** → Select an icon to change → **Status icon** → Select an icon → **Status label** → Enter text → Tap OK → Tap Save

- Selectable icons in **Status icon** is same as those for pictograms.
- Up to 4 characters can be entered in **Status label**.

Updating Lists

Tap Menu → **Entertainment** → **S! Friend's Status** → Tap Settings → **Update list**

- Information in **S! Friend's Status** is basically updated automatically.

Editing Group Names

Tap Menu → **Entertainment** → **S! Friend's Status** → ⏪ / ⏩ to switch to group to edit name → Tap Group name → Enter group name

Changing Groups

Tap Menu → **Entertainment** → **S! Friend's Status** → select a member to change group → Tap Group field → Select a group to change

Removing a Member

Tap Menu → **Entertainment** → **S! Friend's Status** → select a member to remove → Tap Unregister → **Yes**

- The removed member cannot be added to the list for 24 hours.
- If Cancel Notification is not received by the removed member within 24 hours, the S! Friend's Status Request is sent from the member.

Editing Names

Tap Menu → **Entertainment** → **S! Friend's Status** → select a member to edit name

■ To add unregistered members

Tap Add to phonebook → (📞P.2-24 Enter and Save Phone Number)

■ To edit registered members

Tap Edit phonebook → Edit phonebook (📞P.2-23)

- The name in Phonebook is also changed.

Setting My Image

Open My Status Details Window → Tap Edit My details → 🖼️

■ To set from saved still image

Pictures → Select a file

- With Memory Card inserted, files can be selected from **Pictures** and **Digital camera** folders after **Pictures** is selected.

■ To set by capturing still image

Take photo → Capture still image (📞P.7-6 Normal ② to ③)

■ To cancel set image

Off

- The image in Account details is also changed.

Setting S! Friend's Status Member Images

Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Friend's Status* → select a member to change the incoming image → Tap Edit account details

■ To set from saved still image

Pictures → Select a file → 

- With Memory Card inserted, files can be selected from *Pictures* and *Digital camera* folders after *Pictures* is selected.

■ To set by capturing still image

Take photo → Capture still image (ⓉP.7-6 Normal 2 to 3)

■ To cancel incoming image set *Off*

- To add unsaved members to Phonebook, tap Add phonebook (ⓉP.2-24 Enter and Save Phone Number). To edit members saved in Phonebook, tap Edit phonebook → Edit Phonebook (ⓉP.2-23).
- The incoming image in Phonebook is also changed.

Widgets

Removing S! Friend's Status Member

In the member list, *Release* → Choose an S! Friend's Status member → *Yes*

Changing S! Friend's Status Icon

In the member list, *Change image* → Choose an S! Friend's Status member → Select an icon

Calling or Messaging S! Friend's Status Member

■ To make a voice call

In member list,  → *Voice call*

■ To make a video call

In the member list,  → *Video call*

■ To message

In member list,  → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (ⓉP.4-4 S! Mail 5, P.4-7 SMS 5)

Adding S! Quick News Content

 → (ⓉP.9-5 Registering S! Quick News List 2)

Canceling S! Quick News Settings


 → Tap Delete → Check items to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

- If *Mark all* is selected, enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*.


Refreshing S! Quick News List Automatically

 → Tap Settings → *Auto refresh* → (ⓉP.9-21)


Changing S! Quick News Display Image

 → Tap Settings → *Widget display* → Under *Display image* → *On* or *Off*

Changing Marquee Speed of S! Quick News

 → Tap Settings → *Widget display* → *Marquee speed* → Select an item

Changing Unread/Read Contents of S! Quick News

 → Tap Settings → *Widget display* → *Unread & read setting* → Select an item

Handy Extras



Useful Handset Applications	10-2
Calendar	10-3
Viewing Calendar	10-3
Opening Calendar	10-3
Saving Schedule	10-3
Viewing Schedule	10-4
Alarms	10-4
Setting/Resetting Alarms	10-4
Editing Alarm	10-5
Calculator	10-5
Converter	10-5
Converting Currencies	10-5
Converting Units	10-6
World Clock	10-6
Viewing World Clock	10-6
Selecting Areas	10-6
Notepad	10-7
Adding Notepad	10-7
Viewing Notepad	10-7
Tasks	10-7
Saving Tasks	10-7
Viewing Tasks	10-7
Marking a Task as Completed	10-7
Voice Recorder	10-8
Voice Recorder Window	10-8
Recording Sound	10-8
Playing Sound	10-9
Stopwatch	10-9
Countdown Timer	10-9

Bar Code Reader	10-10
Scan Barcodes/QR Code	10-10
Using Barcode Files	10-10
Creating QR Code	10-11
Checking Scanned Barcode	10-11
File Viewer	10-11
Using File Viewer	10-11
English-Japanese/Japanese-English Dictionary	10-12
Dummy Call	10-13
Setting Dummy Call	10-13
Activating Dummy Call	10-13
Advanced Settings	10-13
Alarm	10-16
Calculator	10-16
Currency/Unit Conversion	10-17
World Clock	10-17
Notepad	10-17
Tasks	10-18
Voice Recorder	10-19
Stopwatch	10-20
Bar Code Reader	10-20
File Viewer	10-21
Dictionary	10-22

Useful Handset Applications

Handset includes helpful lifestyle tools including Calendar and Bar Code Reader.

Calendar



See calendar and save schedule entries (P.10-3).

Alarm



Set Alarms (P.10-4).

Calculator



Use handset as a calculator (P.10-5).

Converter



Convert currencies or units of measure (P.10-5).

World Clock



See current time in major world cities (P.10-6).

Notepad



Create/view text memos (P.10-7).

Tasks



Create/view to-do lists (P.10-7).

Voice Recorder



Record/playback voice memos, etc. (P.10-8).

Stopwatch



You can use stopwatch (P.10-9).

Bar Code Reader



Scan barcodes or QR Codes; create QR Codes on handset (P.10-10).

File Viewer



View documents (P.10-11).

Dictionary



Find English expressions for Japanese words or vice versa (P.10-12).

Countdown Timer



Set Alarm to sound after specified length of time (P.10-9).

Dummy Call



Fake calls to handset (P.10-13).

Calendar

To display Calendar, add schedule in Calendar.
Select from three view modes.

Add **Title**, **Start date** or other information.

Save up to 500 events including Tasks.

Viewing Calendar

Select from three view modes.

- Tap Switch view to change View mode.
- If you select a date with Calendar entries, the entries appear.



Monthly View



Weekly View

Date in blue rectangle: Highlighted position

Back ground with blue: Today

Blue Character: Saturday

Red Character: Holiday/Sunday

■ (Blue): Schedule registered



Daily View

- To change Monthly/Weekly/Daily view window for previous/next month, tap ◀ / ▶ or scroll Year/Month/Day field.

- If you select a date with Calendar entries or Alarms set, the titles of Calendar entries, icons and other items appear.

- 🕒 : Schedule (No category)
- 🕒 : Schedule (Appointment)
- 🗓️ : Schedule (Meeting)
- 💻 : Schedule (Business)
- 😊 : Schedule (Personal)
- 🎉 : Schedule (Holiday)
- 🎂 : Schedule (Anniversary)
- 🎂 : Schedule (Birthday)
- 📞 : Schedule (Phone call)
- 📅 : Schedule (Date)
- ✈️ : Schedule (Travel)
- 🛍️ : Schedule (Shopping)
- 📄 : Schedule (Miscellaneous)
- 🔔 : Alarm set
- 🔄 : Repetition set

Opening Calendar

1 Tap Menu → *Calendar*

Saving Schedule

Save up to 500 events including Tasks.

Example: Saving Title, Start date & time.

- For other items, see "Saving to Schedule" (P.10-13).

1 Tap Menu → *Calendar*

2 Tap Add new

3 Enter Title

4 *Start date* → Enter Start date
→ *Start time* → Enter Start time
→ Tap OK

5 Tap Save

- In Calendar, select target date before Step 2, to enter the date in Start date or End date field.

Viewing Schedule

- 1 Tap Menu → *Calendar*
- 2 Tap the day to view
- 3 Select a schedule

- To view the registered number of Calendar and Task in Calendar, tap More → *Memory status*.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (P.10-13)

- Saving to Schedule
- Editing Schedule
- Opening a Specific Date
- Switching View Mode
- Viewing Schedule by Category
- Sending Schedule
- Deleting Schedule
- Deleting Added Holiday
- Viewing Secret Schedule
- Checking Missed Alarm Event
- Viewing Calendar Memory Status
- Saving Schedule as vFile
- Printing Schedule via Bluetooth®

Alarms

Up to five Alarms can be saved. Use Alarm activation to activate or cancel alarm settings. Set alarms to repeat on specific days of the week or everyday.

Setting/Resetting Alarms

Example: Setting Alarm time

- For other items, see "Saving Alarm" (P.10-16).

Setting

- 1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Alarm*
- 2 Tap Time field to set → Enter Alarm time
- 3 Tap Save
 - Set or edit Alarm and tap Save, Alarm is set to *On* automatically.

- At Alarm time, tone sounds and indicator appears. Handset vibrates if Vibration is not *Off*. When Snooze is *Off*, tap *OK* to stop Alarm and Vibration.

- If calling, dialing (*Connecting...* appears), or dialing (*Dialling...* appears) at Alarm time, a tone sounds and an indicator appears. If *Call connect tone* in *System sounds* is unchecked, only indicator appears during a call or connection. Tap *OK* to clear indicator, when Snooze is Off.
- When Snooze is set other than *Off*, Alarm sounds at the specified interval and specified number of times until Snooze is canceled. When you tap *Snooze* while Alarm sounds, Alarm is set to sound again at the specified interval. Tap *End* → *End* to stop Alarm and to clear indicator.
- When Alarm is set, 📞 appears in Standby.
- If multiple alarms are set for the same time, first one set sounds first. If Schedule or Tasks alarm is set for the same time as Alarm (*Tools*), Alarm sounds first.
- When Manner mode is active, setting in *Manner mode setting* (P.10-15) applies.
- If Camera or Voice recorder is active at Alarm Time, Alarm sounds upon operation termination.

Resetting Alarm

- 1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Alarm* → Tap Reset → Check an Alarm → Tap Reset → *Yes*

Editing Alarm

- 1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Alarm*
→ Tap Time field → Enter Alarm time → Tap Save

■ To edit Alarm name

Tap Alarm name field → Enter Alarm name → Tap Save


■ To set Alarm to repeat

In Repeat, tap a day to activate the alarm
→ Tap Save

- If you set Alarm only for a specific day, Alarm will activate only once.
- If you set Alarm for every day, Alarm will activate daily.

■ To set Alarm sound or video

Alert tone/video → Select a file to save
→ Select file → Tap Save





- If a Memory Card file is set as Alarm Sound, copy to handset confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move to handset confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to complete setting.
- Tap  to play file.

Calculator

Perform arithmetic operations up to 15 digits.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Calculator*

2 Enter numbers and operators

- To move cursor, tap area to place cursor.
- To erase a symbol in a mathematical expression, place cursor after symbol → tap .
- To erase mathematical expression and result at once, tap .
- Tap  to input complex expressions like pi, trigonometric functions, or roots. To return to number input window, tap .

Converter

Convert various currencies or units of measure.

Converting Currencies

- 1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Converter*
→ *Currency*
- 2 Tap Original currency field
→ Select currency



3 Tap Original currency value field → Enter value



4 See result in Converted currency value field

- Tap Reset to reset convert.

Converting Units

- 1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Converter* → *Length, Weight, Volume, Area, or Temperature*
- 2 Tap Original unit field → Select unit
- 3 Tap Original unit value field → Enter value

4 See result in Converted value field

- Tap Reset to reset convert.

Advanced

Advanced Settings ⓘ P.10-17

- Viewing Exchange Rate
- Adding Currency Unit
- Deleting Added Currency Unit

World Clock

See current time in world's major cities.

Viewing World Clock

- 1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *World clock*

Selecting Areas

Save second time zone to show time in World clock. Save up to 20 areas.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *World clock*
- 2 Tap Add new → Scroll map and tap a city to register
 - To set Daylight Saving Time, tap or
- 3 Tap Add new

Advanced

Advanced Settings ⓘ P.10-17

- Deleting World Clock

Notepad

Add up to 100 memos. Add memos even during calls (☎P.3-23, P.3-25).

Adding Notepad

- 1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Notepad*
- 2 Tap Add new → Enter text
- 3 Select category
- 4 Tap Save

Viewing Notepad

- 1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Notepad* → Select the target

Advanced

Advanced Settings (ⓘ P.10-17)

- Sending Notepad
- Deleting Notepad
- Viewing Notepad Memory Status

Tasks

Save up to 500 Tasks and Schedule entries; manage with list.

Saving Tasks

Example: Saving Title, Due date & time

- For other items, see "Saving Task" (☎P.10-18).

- 1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Tasks*
- 2 Tap Add new
- 3 Enter a title
- 4 *Due date* → Enter date → *Due time* → Enter time → Tap OK
- 5 Tap Save

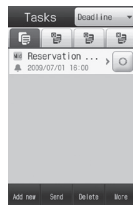
Viewing Tasks

- 1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Tasks*

- In Tasks, tap tab to toggle (☰) (All tasks), (☑) (Completed tasks), (☒) (Uncompleted tasks), and (⌘) (Expired tasks).

Marking a Task as Completed

- 1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Tasks*
- 2 Tap (☑) to complete



- Tap (☑) to toggle (☑) (Completed tasks) and (☒) (Uncompleted task), (☑) (Completed tasks) and (⌘) (Expired tasks) if expired.

Advanced

Advanced Settings  P.10-18

- Saving Task
- Sending Tasks as vFile
- Deleting Tasks
- Searching Tasks
- Viewing Secret Task
- Viewing Missed Alarm Event
- Printing Tasks via Bluetooth®
- Viewing Task Item Status
- Editing Tasks
- Saving Tasks as vFile

Voice Recorder

Record up to 60 minutes; activate from Tools, or via Menu in Data Folder, Create Message window, or during a call.

Voice Recorder Window

Use Softkeys and Multi Selector operations to control Voice recorder.



Recording Window

Playback Window

- 1 Status bar
- 2 Recordable time (recording)/Playback time (playing)
- 3 Elapsed time
- 4 Adjust volume
- 5 Playback navigation


Recording Sound



Recorded sound is saved to *Ring songs · tones* in Data Folder.

1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Voice recorder*

2 Tap 

3 Tap  or Save

- When recordable time has elapsed, recording automatically ends.
- Tap  to pause recording.

- To quickly confirm recorded content, tap  Tap  again to pause playback.
- To start the next recording, tap Record.

Playing Sound

Play sound file saved in Data Folder.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Voice recorder*
- 2 Tap Data Folder
- 3 Select a sound file

- Tap to adjust playback volume level.
- Tap / or scroll Status bar to rewind/fast forward.

Advanced

Advanced Settings P.10-19

- Setting Recorded Sound File as Ringtone, etc.
- Moving Recorded Sound File
- Copying Recorded Sound File
- Sending Recorded Sound File
- Deleting Recorded Sound File
- Editing Recorded Sound File Name
- Protecting Recorded Sound File
- Viewing Recorded Sound File Details

Stopwatch

Use handset as a stopwatch. Save up to 10 lap times and total time.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Stopwatch*
- 2 *Start*
- 3 *Stop*

- While Stopwatch is running, tap *Lap* to mark a lap.
- Tap *Restart* to start Stopwatch again.
- Tap *Reset* to clear all of times.

Countdown Timer

Count up to 60 minutes.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Countdown timer*
- 2 Tap Edit → Enter count time → Tap OK
- 3 *Start*

- Tap *Restart* to restart countdown.
- Tap *Reset* to reset Countdown timer.

Bar Code Reader

Use Camera to scan printed barcodes, QR Code or barcode images acquired from websites, etc.


Scan Barcodes/QR Code


Bar code reader automatically determines and scans Barcodes (JAN code) and QR Codes. Use scan results for handset operations such as calling.



QR code

1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Bar code reader* → *Scan barcode*

2 Use Display to frame barcode
→ *Scan* or 

- Camera focuses and scans barcode automatically.
Tap Scan after tapping  / cancel to adjust focus.

- Alternatively, tap Menu → *Camera* → *Bar code reader* to start scanning.
- Some barcodes may be invalid.
- Scan may fail if barcode is not clear.
- Indoors, scan may fail if handset shadows barcode.
- Scan may fail when capturing multiple barcodes.
- JAN codes are one-dimensional codes made up of combinations of vertical bars of varying widths and spaces. Handset is not compatible other 1D codes (e.g., ITF code, Code39, or Codabar/NW-7).
- QR Code is two-dimensional code with information in matrix.
- Hold handset approximately 10 cm away from barcode. If it does not scan, move handset slowly to adjust the distance to fix focus.
- To adjust brightness, tap Exposure.
- To save the scanned result, tap Save. To check the saved barcode, tap Results.
- To scan multiple barcodes continuously, tap Continue after activating Bar code reader then scan. After a scan is complete, select *Yes* to scan the next barcode.
- Split barcode cannot be opened or saved unless all split barcode are scanned.

- You can use any phone numbers, E-mail addresses, or other items for Phonebook entries if they are contained in the scanned data (P. 10-20). For those usable information, the background color of the text turns light blue; however, if the text contains any character that is not allowed to use for the information, the background area for the following characters does not turn light blue.
- Use QR Codes for text only. Handset cannot scan QR Codes created from media files.

Using Barcode Files

Use a barcode file saved in Data Folder.

- 1** Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Bar code reader* → *Open barcode*
 - With Memory Card inserted, select a file from *Pictures* or *Digital camera* folder.
- 2** Select a file
 - For split barcode, once one portion is scanned, the rest is automatically recognized and scanned. If file name or saved directory of a split barcode has been changed, select unrecognized part to scan.
 - Barcode with changed file size may not scan.
 - If barcode is unrecognizable, notification appears.

Creating QR Code

Use Phonebook or enter text to create QR Code.

- A QR Code holds up to 211 single-byte or 105 double-byte characters.
- When volume of information is large, split QR Code automatically appears (Up to 16 QR Codes).
- Created QR Code is saved in **Pictures** in **Data Folder**. Check saved QR Code in Data Folder (☞P.10-10).

Create a QR Code from a saved phone number.

1 Tap Menu → Tools → Bar code reader → Create QR code

2 Create QR Code

- **To create QR Code from Phonebook**
Phonebook → Search and Select an entry (☞P.2-18) → Select a phone number
- **To create Text QR Code**
Text input → Enter text

3 Tap Save

- Phonebook entries converted to QR Codes contain Last name, Reading, Phone number, E-mail address, Address, and Memo. Other items will not be included.
- Tap Send in QR Code confirmation window to create S! Mail with the created QR Code attached.

Checking Scanned Barcode

Check the saved scanned result.

1 Tap Menu → Tools → Bar code reader → Scanned results

2 Select a result

- If scanned result is too large, it will not appear. Some files cannot be opened.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (☞P.10-20)

- Specifying Saving Location for Created QR Code

File Viewer

Using File Viewer

View document files in Portrait or Landscape view. Rotate handset to automatically rotate Display image.

- This guide describes Portrait View operations.



Portrait View





Landscape View

1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *File viewer*

- Tap  to view files in Memory card.

2 Select a file

3 Scroll the file to view

- Tap  or  to flip page.
- Swipe Display to scroll (up/down/left/right).

• Open PDF, XLS, DOC, PPT, or TXT files saved in **Data Folder**. Select an image file saved in Data Folder and File viewer is activated automatically.

• Files with up to approximately 10 MB can be browsed. However, browse files of up to 10 MB. In some cases, files under 10 MB may not be browseable.

Note



- If a document includes many pages or complicated designs, all pages of the document may not appear properly.
- A file in any language other than Japanese or English may not appear properly.

Zoom In/Out

1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *File viewer* → Select a file

2 → or to adjust magnification



- Alternatively, press  /  to adjust magnification.

- Tap  to show a file to fit Display height. Tap  to show a file to fit Display width.

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings**  P.10-21

- Sending Files
- Going to Pages
- Searching Characters in Page
- Capturing Images
- Editing File Name
- Protecting File

English-Japanese/Japanese-English Dictionary

Look up words in English/Japanese dictionaries.

1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Dictionary*

2 Tap pulldown menu → *English or Japanese*

3 Tap a word field → Enter a word

4 → Select a target word

Dummy Call

Fake calls to handset.

Setting Dummy Call

Set Dummy Call timer, caller's name and number.

Setting timer

1 Tap Menu → *Tools* →
Dummy call → *Set timer*

2 Select time

Setting caller

1 Tap Menu → *Tools* →
Dummy call → *Set caller*

2 Tap Name field → Enter
caller's name


3 Tap Phone number field
→ Enter caller's number

Activating Dummy Call

1 In Standby, press  (2 +seconds)

- Run Dummy Call confirmation appears.

2 Press  while Dummy Call
rings

3 Press  after Dummy Call
ends

- If name or number is not set, *Withheld* appears.
- In Dummy Call, menu items at bottom of Display are not selectable.
- Make sure the Ringtone of Dummy Call rings from speaker in case of emergency.
- Dummy Call will be closed when real call will take first priority when a real call is received after dummy call is set.
- Use Call Waiting to handle actual calls received during a Dummy Call.

Advanced Settings

Advanced Settings

Calendar

Saving to Schedule

Tap Menu → *Calendar* → Tap Add new → Enter Title → *Start date* → Enter Start date → *Start time* → Enter Start time → Tap OK

To set End date & time

End date & time → *End date* → Enter End date → *End time* → Enter End time → Tap OK → Tap Save

To set Schedule for all day

Start date & time or *End date & time* → Check *All day* → Tap OK → Tap Save


To set Category


Category → Select an item → Tap Save

To set Alarm

Alarm → *Alarm time* → Select an item → *Duration* → Select an item → *Alert tone/video* → Select a file location → Select a file → Adjust Volume → *Vibration* → Select an item → Tap OK → Tap Save

- For *Other* in Alarm time or Duration, enter alarm time or duration.

- While selecting Alert tone/video, tap  to playback a file.

- While selecting vibration pattern, tap  to view a pattern.

- If a Memory Card file is set as Alarm Sound, copy to handset confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move to handset confirmation appears.

■ To repeat a set Schedule

Repeat → Enter an item → Enter a number of times to repeat → Tap Save

- If *No repetition* is selected, you do not need to select a number of times to repeat.

■ To set Location

Location → Enter location → Tap Save

■ To automatically delete Schedule

Expiry → Enter an item → Tap Save

- Upon expiry, schedule is automatically deleted from Calendar (e.g. if Expiry is *After 1 year*, and Repetition is unset, schedule is deleted one year from event end date). If Repetition is set, schedule is deleted one year after last repetition. Select *Off* to cancel auto delete.

■ To set Details

Details → Enter content → Tap Save

■ To set Secret

Under *Secret, On or Off* → Tap Save

Editing Schedule

Tap Menu → *Calendar* → Tap date → Tap schedule → Tap Edit → Save to Schedule (ⓅP.10-13) → Tap Save

Opening a Specific Date

Tap Menu → *Calendar* → Tap Go to

■ To show today's date

Today

■ To toggle to a specified date

Date → Enter date

Switching View Mode

Tap Menu → *Calendar* → Tap Switch view

Viewing Schedule by Category

Tap Menu → *Calendar* → Tap More → *List by category* → Select an item

Sending Schedule

Tap Menu → *Calendar* → Tap More → *Send*

■ To send via Message

Via message → Check a schedule → (ⓅP.4-4 S1 Mail ②)

■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → Check a schedule → Tap Send → (ⓅP.13-7 Sending Data ②)

■ To send via infrared

Via infrared → Check a schedule → Tap Send (ⓅP.13-3)

- Alternatively, in the detailed information window for the schedule to send, tap Send and select an item to send it.

Deleting Schedule

Tap Menu → *Calendar*

■ To delete an entry

Select a schedule → Tap *Delete* → *Yes*

■ To delete all schedules of selected date

Tap a date to delete in Monthly view or Weekly view → Tap More → *Delete* → *All this day* → *Yes*

- To delete schedules in the date displayed in the Daily view, tap More → *Delete* → Check schedules to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

■ To delete schedules for a specified period of time

In Monthly view or Weekly view, tap More → *Delete* → *Periods* → *From* → Enter Start date → *To* → Enter End date → Tap Delete → *Yes*

■ To delete schedules of currently displayed month or week

In Monthly view or Weekly view, tap More → *Delete* → *This month* or *This week* → *Yes*

■ To delete all schedules before the highlighted date

In Monthly view or Weekly view, tap More → *Delete* → *All past data* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

■ To delete all schedules

In the Monthly view or Weekly view, tap More → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

■ To delete multiple schedules listed by category

In Monthly view or Weekly view, tap More → **List by category** → Select a category → Tap Delete → Check schedules to delete → Tap Delete → **Yes**

- When tapping **Mark all**, enter Phone Password → Tap OK → **Yes**

Setting Holiday

Tap Menu → **Calendar** → Tap More → **Settings** → **Set holiday** → Tap Add new → Enter title → Tap Save

- To change date, tap **Date**.
- To change frequency, tap **Frequency**.

Changing Holiday Display

Tap Menu → **Calendar** → Tap More → **Settings** → **Set holiday** → Under **holiday, On/Off**

Editing Added Holiday

Tap Menu → **Calendar** → Tap More → **Settings** → **Set holiday** → Tap Edit → Select an entry → Edit the entry → Tap Save

Deleting Added Holiday

Tap Menu → **Calendar** → Tap More → **Settings** → **Set holiday** → Tap Delete → Check entries to delete → Tap Delete → **Yes**

Setting Beginning of Week

Tap Menu → **Calendar** → Tap More → **Settings** → **Starting day** → **Sunday** or **Monday**

Setting Default Calendar View

Tap Menu → **Calendar** → Tap More → **Settings** → **Default view mode** → Select an item

Setting Reminder

Tap Menu → **Calendar** → Tap More → **Settings** → **Reminder** → Under **On/Off, On**

■ To set remind time

Tap Time field → Enter a time → Tap Save


■ To set Alarm sound duration

Duration → Select an item → Tap Save

- When selecting **Other**, enter duration.

■ To set Alarm sound or video

Alert tone/video → Select a folder → Select a file → Tap Save

- In selecting file window, tap  to playback a file.
- If a Memory Card file is set as Alarm Sound, copy to handset confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move to handset confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to complete setting.

■ To adjust Alarm volume

Adjust Volume → Tap Save

■ To set Vibration

Vibration → Select an item → Tap Save

- Tap  to view a pattern.

Setting Alarm Sound or Vibration in Manner Mode

Tap Menu → **Calendar** → Tap More → **Settings** → **Manner mode setting** → Under **Alarm sound/Vibration, On** or **Off**

Viewing Secret Schedule

Tap Menu → **Calendar** → Tap More → **Unlock temporarily** → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

Checking Missed Alarm Event

Tap Menu → **Calendar** → Tap More → **Missed alarm event** → Select a schedule

Viewing Calendar Memory Status

Tap Menu → **Calendar** → Tap More → **Memory status**

Saving Schedule as vFile

In Daily view, tap More → **Save to Data Folder** → Select an item → Select a schedule → **Yes**

- Save location can be set to **Memory card** if inserted.

Printing Schedule via Bluetooth®

In Daily view, tap More → **Print via Bluetooth** → Select a schedule (P.7-14 Printing via Bluetooth® 4)

Alarm

Saving Alarm

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Alarm** → Tap Time field → Enter Alarm time → Tap OK

■ To activate/cancel Alarm for holidays

Under *Except holidays*, **On** or **Off** → Tap Save

■ To adjust Alarm volume

Adjust volume → Tap Save

■ To set Vibration

Vibration → Select an item → Tap Save

- Tap  to view a pattern.

■ To set Snooze

Snooze → Select an item → Tap Save

- When Snooze is set other than **Off**, alarm sounds at the specified interval and specified number of times until **Snooze** is canceled. When you tap Snooze while alarm sounds, alarm is set to sound again at the specified interval. When you tap **End** → **OK**, the alarm stops and the indicator disappears.

- For **Other**, enter duration.

■ To set Snooze repeat time(s)

Snooze repeat times → Select an item → Tap Save

■ To set Alarm duration time

Duration → Select an item → Tap Save

- For **Other**, enter duration

Setting/Canceling Alarm

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Alarm** → **On** or **Off** beside each alarm

Resetting Alarm

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Alarm** → Tap Reset

■ To reset an Alarm

Check an Alarm → Tap Reset → **Yes**

■ To reset all Alarms

Mark all → Tap Reset → **Yes**

Setting Alarm Sound or Vibration in Manner Mode

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Alarm** → Tap Manner mode setting → Under **Alarm sound/Vibration**, **On** or **Off**

Calculator

Adding Calculation Result to Notepad

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Calculator** → Enter calculation →  →  → **Yes** → **OK**

- Complete calculation to save results to Memo.

Currency/Unit Conversion

Viewing Exchange Rate

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Converter** → **Currency**
 → Tap currency field → Select Original
 currency → Tap View rate

Changing Exchange Rate

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Converter** → **Currency**
 → Tap View rate → Select a currency → Enter
 rate

Adding Currency Unit

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Converter** → **Currency**
 → Tap View rate → Tap Add rate → Enter
 currency unit name → Enter rate

Deleting Added Currency Unit

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Converter** → **Currency**
 → Tap View rate → Tap Delete rate → Check
 currency unit to delete → Tap Delete → **Yes**

- When **Mark all** is tapped, tap Delete → Enter
 Phone Password → Tap OK → **Yes**

Saving Results to Notepad

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Converter** → **Convert
 Currencies** · **Convert Units** → Tap Save to
 Notepad → **Yes**

World Clock

Deleting World Clock

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **World clock** → Tap
 Delete → Check an item → Tap Delete → **Yes**

Setting Dual Clock

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **World clock** → Tap Set
 on dual clock → Select an item → **Set as 1st
 clock/Set as 2nd clock** → Tap OK

Notepad

Sending Notepad

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Notepad** → Tap Send
 → Select a Notepad

■ To use Notepad data as Message Text

As message text → Select a Notepad → (☎P.4-4 S1
 Mail ②)

■ To send via message

Via message → Select a Notepad → (☎P.4-4 S1
 Mail ②)

■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → Select a Notepad → (☎P.13-7
 Sending Data ②)

■ To send via infrared

Via infrared → Select a Notepad → (☎P.13-3
 Sending Data One by One ①)

Alternatively, in detail window, tap Send to send.

Deleting Notepad

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Notepad** → Tap Delete
 → Check a Notepad → Tap Delete → **Yes**

- Enter Phone Password to delete all entries.
- Alternatively, in detail window, tap Delete to delete
 one notepad.

Viewing Notepad Memory Status

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Notepad** → Tap More → **Memory status**

Searching Notepad

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Notepad** → Tap More → **Search** → Enter Searching Text

Viewing Notes by Category

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Notepad** → Tap More → **List by category** → Select category

Saving Notes to Data Folder

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Notepad** → Tap More → **Save to Data Folder** → **Phone/Memory card** → Select Saving Notepad → **Yes**

Editing Notepad

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Notepad** → Select a Notepad → Tap text field → Edit Notepad

Changing Notepad Category

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Notepad** → Select a Notepad → Tap category field → Select category

Tasks

Saving Task



Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Tasks** → Tap Add new → Enter title → **Due date** → Enter Due date → **Due time** → Enter time → Tap OK

■ To set Priority

Priority → Select an item → Tap Save

■ To set Alarm

Alarm → **Alarm time** → Select an item → **Duration** → Select an item → **Alert tone/video** → Select a location to save → Select a file → Adjust volume → **Vibration** → Select an item → Tap OK → Tap Save

- When **Other** is selected in Alarm time, enter Alarm date and time.
- When **Other** is selected in Duration, enter duration time.
- While selecting Alert tone, tap  to playback a file.
- While selecting vibration pattern, tap  to view a pattern.
- If a Memory Card file is set as Alarm Sound, copy to handset confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move to handset confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to complete setting.
- At Alarm Time, tone sounds and indicator appears. Tap **OK** to stop Alarm and indicator is cleared. If no alarm is stopped, Missed Alarm message appears. Tap the message to view the event.

- During a call, while dialing (**Connecting...** appears) or while dialing (**Dialling...** appears), at Alarm time, a tone sounds and an indicator appears. When **Call connect tone** on **System sounds** is unchecked, only indicator appears during a call or connection. Tap **OK** to clear indicator.

■ To set Details

Details → Enter content → Tap Save

■ To activate or cancel Secret

Under **Secret, On** or **Off** → Tap Save

Sorting Tasks

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Tasks** → Tap pulldown menu → Deadline or Priority

Sending Tasks as vFile

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Tasks** → Tap Send

■ To send via message

Via message → Select a Task → (📧P.4-4 S! Mail **2**)

■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → Check tasks → Tap Send (📧P.13-7 Sending Data **2**)

■ To send via infrared

Via infrared → Check tasks → Tap Send (📧P.13-3)

Alternatively, in task details window, tap Send and select an item to send.

Deleting Tasks

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Tasks**

■ To select a tab and delete

All tasks, Completed tasks, Uncompleted tasks, or Expired tasks tab → Tap Delete → **Delete in this tab** → Check tasks to delete → Tap Delete → **Yes**

■ To delete all tasks

Tap Delete → **Delete all tasks** → Enter Phone Password → **Yes**

- Alternatively, in task details window, tap Delete to delete one.

Searching Tasks

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Tasks** → Tap More → **Search** → **By due date/By title** → Entering Expiration/Title

Setting Alarm Sound or Vibration in Manner Mode

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Tasks** → Tap More → **Manner mode setting** → Under **Alarm sound/Vibration, On or Off**

Viewing Secret Task

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Tasks** → Tap More → **Unlock temporarily** → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

Viewing Missed Alarm Event

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Tasks** → Tap More → **Missed alarm event** → Select a missed task to check

- Alternatively, in task details window, tap More → **Missed alarm event** to view.

Printing Tasks via Bluetooth®

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Tasks** → Tap More → **Print via Bluetooth** → Select a task → (P.7-14 Printing via Bluetooth® 4)

- Alternatively, in task details window, tap More → **Print via Bluetooth**.

Viewing Task Item Status

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Tasks** → Tap More → **Memory status**

Editing Tasks

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Tasks** → Select a task to edit → Tap Edit → Edit Task (P.10-18) → Tap Save

Saving Tasks as vFile

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Tasks** → Select a task → Tap More → **Save to Data Folder** → Select an item → **Yes**

- With Memory Card inserted, **Memory card** can be set as save location.

Voice Recorder

Setting Recorded Sound File as Ringtone, etc.

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Voice recorder** → Record a sound → Tap Set as → Select a ringtone

- If **Caller ringtone** is selected, search and select a Phonebook entry (P.2-18).

Moving Recorded Sound File

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Voice recorder** → Record a sound → Tap Data Folder → Tap Move → Select an item → Check a file to move → Tap Move → Select a location to save

Copying Recorded Sound File

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Voice recorder** → Record a sound → Tap Data Folder → Tap Copy → Select an item → Check a file to copy → Tap Copy → Select a location to save

Sending Recorded Sound File

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Voice recorder** → Record a sound → Tap More → **Send**

■ To send via message

Via message → (P.4-4 S! Mail 2)

■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → (P.13-7 Sending Data 2)

■ To send via infrared

Via infrared (P.13-3)

Deleting Recorded Sound File

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Voice recorder** →
Record a sound → Tap More → **Delete** → **Yes**

Editing Recorded Sound File Name

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Voice recorder** →
Record a sound → Tap More → **Rename** →
Enter file name

Protecting Recorded Sound File

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Voice recorder** → Record
a sound → Tap More → **Lock** or **Unlock**

Viewing Recorded Sound File Details

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Voice recorder** →
Record a sound → Tap More → **Details**

Changing Default Name at Saving

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Voice recorder** → Tap
Rec. settings → **Default name** → Enter file
name

Changing Recording Time

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Voice recorder** → Tap
Rec. settings → **Recording time** → Select an item

Changing Default Saving Location

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Voice recorder** → Tap
Rec. settings → **Set default memory** → Select
an item

- If Memory card is not inserted, files are automatically saved to handset.

Stopwatch

Saving Stopwatch Content to Notepad

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Stopwatch** → **Start** →
Stop → **Save to Notepad** → **Yes**

Bar Code Reader

Using Scanned Data

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Bar code reader** → **Scan
barcode** → Scan a barcode

■ To call scanned phone number

Select a number with **TEL**: or 10 to 32-digit
number starting with 0 → **Select** → **Voice call**,
Video call, **Edit before call**, **Create message**,
or **Add to phonebook**

- If **Edit before call** is selected, edit phone
number then tap **Voice call** or **Video call**.

■ To send Mail to scanned phone number

Select a number with **TEL**: or 10 to 32-digit
number starting with 0 → **Select** → **Create
message** → **S! Mail** or **SMS** (ⓂP.4-4 S! Mail ⑤,
ⓂP.4-7 SMS ⑤)

■ To send Mail to scanned E-mail address

Highlight E-mail address contained with "@" →
Select → **Create message** → (ⓂP.4-4 S! Mail ⑤)

■ To access scanned URL

Highlight URL starting with **http://** or **rtsp://** →
Select → **Go to URL** → **Yes**

■ To save scanned entry to Phonebook

Highlight an entry → Tap **Save**

■ To save scanned number, etc. as a new Phonebook entry

Highlight a phone number, etc. → **Select** → **Add
to phonebook** → **New** → (ⓂP.2-17 Creating New
Entries ⑤)

■ To add scanned number, etc. to an existing Phonebook entry

Highlight a phone number, etc. → *Select* → *Add to phonebook* → *Update* → Search Phonebook and select entry (📍P.2-18) → Creating New Entries (📍P.2-17)

■ To add scanned URL to Bookmarks

Highlight a URL → *Select* → *Add to bookmark* → Enter a title

■ To copy scanned E-mail address or phone number, etc.

Highlight an E-mail address or phone number → Tap Copy → Select an item

- For *Copy Text*, tap the first character to copy then tap Start point → Tap the last character to copy to specify the copy range → Tap End point.

■ To paste scanned phone number, E-mail address, etc. to Message text

Tap Send → Tap OK → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (📍P.4-4 S! Mail ②, P.4-7 SMS ②)

■ To paste a scanned phone number or E-mail address to Message text

Tap Send → Tap Cut → Tap the first letter and Tap Start point → Tap the last letter and set range → Tap End point → Tap OK → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (📍P.4-4 S! Mail ②, P.4-7 SMS ②)

■ To copy scanned characters

Tap Copy → Tap the first letter and select Tap Start point → Tap the end of letter and set range → Tap End point

Specifying Saving Location for Created QR Code


Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Bar code reader* → *Create QR code* → *Phonebook* or *Text input* → (📍P.10-11 Creating QR Code ②) → Tap Save to → Select an item → Tap Save

Attaching Created QR Code to Message to Send


Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Bar code reader* → *Create QR code* → *Phonebook* or *Text input* → (📍P.10-11 Creating QR Code ②) → Tap Send → (📍P.4-4 S! Mail ②)

File Viewer

Deleting Files

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *File viewer* → Select a file →  → *Yes*

Viewing File Details

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *File viewer* → Select a file → 

Sending Files

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *File viewer* → Select a file → Tap *Send*

■ To send via message

Via message → (📍P.4-4 S! Mail ②)

■ To send via Bluetooth®



Via Bluetooth → (📍P.13-7 Sending Data ②)

■ To send via infrared

Via infrared (📍P.13-3)

Going to Pages

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *File viewer* → Select a file → Tap Go to → Select an item

- For *Page*, specify page number.
- For some page, tap  or  to flip page.

Searching Characters in Page

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **File viewer** → Select a file → Tap Search → Enter keyword

- After the search results appear, to find the next/previous word in the document that matches the same search word, tap Next/Previous
- To exit the search mode, tap End Search.
- To try to search with other words without exiting, tap New search.

Capturing Images

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **File viewer** → Select a file → Tap More → **Capture screen**

- Captured image is saved in JPEG format to **Pictures** in Data Folder of handset.

Editing File Name



Tap Menu → **Tools** → **File viewer** → Select a file → Tap More → **Rename** → Enter file name

Protecting File

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **File viewer** → Select a file → Tap More → **Lock** or **Unlock**

Assigning Scroll Range

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **File viewer** → Select a file → Tap More → **Settings** → Panning → Select an item

- Assign scroll range for each tap  or .

Fit to Display

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **File viewer** → Select a file → Tap More → **Settings** → Under **Reflow**, **On** or **Off**

- When **On**, content is fit to Display size.

Setting Map

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **File viewer** → Select a file → Tap More → **Settings** → Under **Map on**, **On** or **Off**


- Current position is framed in blue.

Editing Default File Name at Screen Capture

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **File viewer** → Select a file → Tap More → **Settings** → Select Screen capture name → Enter file name

Dictionary

Saving Searching Data to Notepad

Tap Menu → **Tools** → **Dictionary** → Tap pulldown menu → **English** or **Japanese** → Tap a word field → Enter a word →  → Select a target word → Tap Save to Notepad → **Yes**

Handset Security



Handset Security	11-2
Changing Phone Password	11-3
Changing Phone Password	11-3
Changing PIN/PIN2.....	11-3
Phone Lock	11-3
Activating/Canceling Phone Lock	11-3
Activating/Canceling Auto Lock	11-4
Activating/Canceling Password Lock	11-4
Activating/Canceling PIN Code	11-4
Activating/Canceling USIM Lock.....	11-5
Toggling Facial Recognition	11-5
Function Lock	11-7
Activating Function Lock.....	11-7
Activating/Canceling Secret Mode.....	11-7
Restoring Default Settings	11-8
Clearing Phone Memory	11-8
Resetting Settings.....	11-8
All Reset.....	11-9
Advanced Settings	11-9

Handset Security

This handset features built-in security measures for safer handset use.

Locking & Restricting Handset Operations

Lock handset for information security. Handset operations cannot be executed while locked.

- Password



Use Phone Lock, Password lock, or USIM Lock (P.11-3).

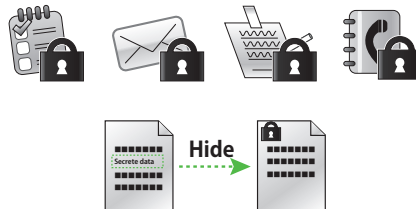
- Facial Recognition

Verifies user from registered images (P.11-5).



Function Lock

Activate to require Phone Password entry to use Phonebook, Messaging, or other privacy related functions.



Restoring Default Settings

Clear Phonebook entries; restore function settings to defaults.

Changing Phone Password

There are two security codes; Phone Password and PIN/PIN2.

Changing Phone Password

By default, Phone password is set to "9999".

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security* → *Change password*



- 2 Enter current Phone Password → Tap OK
- 3 Enter new Phone Password (4 to 8 digits) → Tap OK
- 4 Enter new Phone Password again → Tap OK

Advanced

Settings

- Change Phone Password (📖 P.14-23)

Changing PIN/PIN2

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security* → *Change PIN or Change PIN2*
 - Set *PIN certification* to *On* to enable PIN or PIN2 codes (📖 P.11-4).
- 2 Enter current PIN or PIN2 → Tap OK
- 3 Enter new PIN or PIN2 (4 to 8 digits) → Tap OK
- 4 Enter new PIN or PIN2 again (4 to 8 digits) → Tap OK

Phone Lock

Following lock methods are available.

- Phone Lock
- Auto Lock
- Password Lock
- PIN Certification
- USIM Lock
- Facial Recognition

Activating/Canceling Phone Lock

Activate this function to require Phone Password entry each time handset is powered on.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security*
- 2 Under *Phone lock, On or Off*
- 3 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

- All operations including receiving calls are not accepted unless you enter Phone Password.

Activating/Canceling Auto Lock

If it is **On**, **Auto lock** is automatically activated when Display is turned off.

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Touch panel*

2 Under *Auto lock*, *On or Off*

Activating/Canceling Password Lock

After **Password lock** is activated, phone password is required for handset operations such as turning on handset or turning off the Display. No operations are accepted until you enter the correct password, except some operations such as receiving calls.

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security*

2 *Password lock*

3 Select an option

■ To activate it when turning off Display : *Auto*

■ To activate it when turning on handset : *At power On*

■ To deactivate it : *Off*

4 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

Activating/Canceling PIN Code

PINs are security codes for USIM Card. For details, see "USIM Card" (☞P.1-7). To activate PIN certification each time the power is turned on, set this function to **On**.

Setting

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security*

2 Under *PIN certification*, *On or Off*

3 Enter PIN → Tap OK

Canceling

If PIN or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three consecutive times, PIN Lock or PIN2 Lock is activated to restrict handset operations. To cancel PIN Lock or PIN2 Lock, perform following operations.

1 In PUK Code entry window, enter PUK Code → Tap OK

2 Enter new PIN or PIN2 (4 to 8 digits) → Tap OK

3 Enter new PIN or PIN2 again (4 to 8 digits) → Tap OK

Note

- For more information about PUK and PUK2, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (☞P.15-26).
- Entering incorrect PUK Code 10 consecutive times locks USIM Card (turning handset off does not reset the count).
- Once locked, USIM Card cannot be unlocked. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (☞P.15-26).

Advanced

Settings

- Activate or cancel PIN Certification (☞P.14-23)
- Change PIN (☞P.14-23)
- Change PIN2 (☞P.14-23)

Activating/Canceling USIM Lock

Activate this function to require USIM Password entry to use handset with a different USIM Card.

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security*

2 Under *USIM lock, On or Off*

3 Enter USIM Password (4 to 8 digits) → Tap OK

- To set to **On**, enter USIM password (4 to 8 digits) again and tap OK.

• USIM Password is dedicated to USIM Card authentication. If USIM Password matches, another USIM Card can be used in handset. Change USIM Password each time **USIM lock** is set to **On**.

• If you forget USIM Password, insert USIM Card with **USIM lock** set to **On** and reset all settings (☎P.11-9).

Advanced

Settings

- Activate or cancel USIM Lock (☎P.14-23)

Toggling Facial Recognition

When powered on, handset verifies user with a registered image. If Facial Recognition fails, handset is disabled.

Activate Facial Recognition. Save a user beforehand.

• Facial Recognition matches current image to one saved beforehand. When capturing images or using Facial Recognition, remember these points:

- Make sure your face (eyes, mouth, nose, eyebrows, etc.) is clearly visible. Facial features may be obscured by hair, colored glasses, hat, etc., inhibiting image capture or recognition.
- Face should be lit evenly and brightly. Avoid backlight, strong light, or shadows.

Note

- Identification accuracy is not guaranteed. SoftBank is not liable for misuse or damages associated with Facial Recognition.
- Phone Password is required for Facial Recognition settings or cancellation upon recognition failure. Changing Phone Password enhances security (☎P.11-3).

Setting

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security* → *Facial recognition*

2 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

3 Under *On/Off, On or Off*

- Set to **On** to match your face to the saved portrait when handset is turned on. If the recognition fails, handset is disabled.

Saving User

Save image, name and question & answer from which to verify user should recognition fail.

Save up to 5 users, and save up to 5 images per user. Change location (home, office, inside vehicle or station, etc.) or condition (face angle, accessories, glasses, etc.) for each shot.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security* → *Facial recognition*
- 2 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
- 3 *User registration*
- 4 Select from *User 1* to *User 5*
- 5 Select from *Image1* to *Image5*
- 6 Frame your face on Display → Tap Start → Tap Save

- Image capture may take time. Stay still until complete.
- A confirmation appears if registration fails. Change shooting conditions and start over.
- Saving multiple images increases recognition accuracy, however, security may be compromised.
- The same image can be saved to multiple users. This may increase recognition accuracy.
- Look straight and frame whole face with no expression. If face is too small, image may not be saved. Do not change face angle while shooting.

Recognition Guidance

Activate for Facial Recognition guidance. Cancel it for recognition message with no image. Select *Preview* to show image.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security* → *Facial recognition*
- 2 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
- 3 *Guidance*
- 4 *Off* or *Preview*

Setting Security Level

Select recognition accuracy level.

- Accuracy levels are as follows.

Item	Description
High	Unsaved faces are least likely to be recognized by mistake. However, your face may also be difficult to recognize.
Normal	An intermediate setting.
Low	Saved face is most recognizable. However, unsaved faces are more likely to be recognized by mistake.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security* → *Facial recognition*
- 2 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
- 3 *Security level*
- 4 *High, Normal, or Low*

Starting Facial Recognition

Handset power on initiates Facial Recognition. If captured image matches, handset is enabled.

- 1 **Frame your face on Display**
- 2 **If Facial Recognition fails, tap Recog. to try again**

■ To use Facial Recognition

Frame your face on Display → Tap Recog.

■ To access using Phone Password

Tap Code → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

- When **Guidance** (☞P.11-6) is **Preview**, image appears. When face is recognized, focus moves to recognized face. Recognition result appears with **Matching** (green frame), **Similar** (yellow frame), or **Unknown** (red frame).
- Internal camera is used for Facial Recognition. Dust or smudges on the lens may lead to recognition failure. Clean with a soft cloth before use.

Advanced

🔧 Advanced Settings (☞P.11-9)

- Deleting Images

🔧 Settings

- Activate or cancel Facial recognition (☞P.14-23)
- Save Facial recognition User (☞P.14-23)
- Show or hide Guidance (☞P.14-23)
- Set Security Level (☞P.14-23)

Function Lock

Activating Function Lock

Activate this function to require Phone Password entry to open Phonebook, Calendar, Messaging, Call log, or Data Folder.

- 1 **Tap Menu** → *Settings* → *Security* → *Function lock*
- 2 **Check functions to lock** → Tap Save
- 3 **Enter Phone Password** → Tap OK

Activating/Canceling Secret Mode

Select **Hide** to activate this function and hide Secret Phonebook entries, Messaging folders, Calendar schedules, or Tasks.

- 1 **Tap Menu** → *Settings* → *Security* → *Secret mode*
- 2 **Enter Phone Password** → Tap OK
- 3 **Show or Hide**

- Powering handset off then back on activates Secret mode.

Settings

- Activate or cancel Phone Lock (☞ P.14-23)
- Activate or cancel Password Lock (☞ P.14-23)
- Activate or cancel Function Lock (☞ P.14-23)
- Activate or cancel Secret mode (☞ P.14-23)

Restoring Default Settings

Clearing Phone Memory

Clear Data Folder, Messaging, handset Phonebook, Calendar/Tasks, or User's dictionary. Alternatively, clear all handset files at once.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Phone memory* → Tap Clear
- 2 Select items to delete → Tap Clear
- 3 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

Resetting Settings

Clear saved contents/settings regarding Settings, *Alarm* in *Tools* and *TV* (other than *TV links* and *Reservation list*); then restore default settings. The following settings are not affected.

Item	Unaffected Settings
Call settings	<i>Voice mail On</i> settings <i>Call forwarding On</i> settings <i>Call waiting</i> settings <i>Call barring</i> settings Edit <i>Black list</i> contents
Phonebook	Entry details, Group settings
Security	<i>USIM lock</i> , <i>PIN certification</i> , <i>Change PIN</i> , <i>Change PIN2</i>

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security* → *Reset settings*
- 2 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

All Reset

Restore handset to defaults and delete Phonebook (Phone), Messaging, and Data Folder contents/ settings. However, preinstalled files are not deleted.

1 Tap Menu → *Settings*
→ *Security* → *All reset*

2 Enter Phone Password →
Tap OK → *Yes*

- Handset restarts.

Advanced

Settings

- Delete Phonebook entries, messages, etc. (☞ P.14-23)
- Restore Settings to default values (☞ P.14-23)

Advanced Settings

Advanced Settings



Facial Recognition

Editing User Information

Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security* → *Facial recognition* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *User registration* → Select user → (☞ P.11-6 Saving User **5**)

Viewing Images

Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security* → *Facial recognition* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *User registration* → Select a user → Select image

- When multiple portraits are saved, tap  or  to check another one.

Deleting Images

Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security* → *Facial recognition* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *User registration* → Select a user → Select image → Tap Delete → *Yes*

Data Folder & Memory



Data Folder	12-2
Viewing Files	12-4
Viewing Images with Image Viewer	12-4
Viewing Graphics/Animation.....	12-5
Zooming In/Out	12-5
Saving Face Link.....	12-5
Face Link.....	12-6
Photo Album	12-7
Opening Photo Album	12-7
Managing Files/Folders	12-8
Creating Folders	12-8
Renaming File/Folder	12-8
Moving File/Folder.....	12-8
Copying Files/Folders	12-9
Deleting Files/Folders.....	12-9
Memory Card	12-10
Initializing Memory Card.....	12-10
Inserting & Removing	12-11
Viewing Data in Memory Card	12-11
Viewing Memory Status	12-12
Advanced Settings	12-12
Viewing Files	12-12
Photo Album	12-13
Managing Files/Folders	12-13
Memory Status	12-15

Data Folder

Handset files are organized in folders by file format.

Default Folders







Handset automatically sorts files into these folders:

Folder/Description	File Type ¹
Pictures/My Pictograms	
Image files captured with handset Camera	JPEG, BMP, GIF, WBMP, PNG, Animation GIF
My Pictograms	GIF, GPK
Ring songs · tones	
Voice Recorder files, downloaded music, and other sound files	SMAF, MIDI, SP-MIDI, SMF, Mobile XMF, MPEG4 Audio, AMR
S! Appli	
Download S! Appli	JAD, JAR
Music/WMAudio (Memory Card only)	
Downloaded Chaku-Uta®	MPEG4 Audio (mp4, m4a, aac, 3gp), smc, WMA
Videos/WMVVideo (Memory Card only)	
Handset video files	MPEG4 (mp4, 3gp), WMV

Folder/Description	File Type ¹
Books	
Download Books	CCF
Message Templates	
S! Mail Templates	HMT
Flash®/Flash® Ringtones	
Flash®:Flash® files	
Flash® Ringtones:Ringtone assignable downloaded Flash® files	SWF
Other documents	
Document or graphic files requiring File viewer for use on handset, vFiles ² , etc.	vCard, vCalendar, vBookmark, EML, PDF, XLS, DOC, PPT, TXT, HTML, VNT, Unsupported file

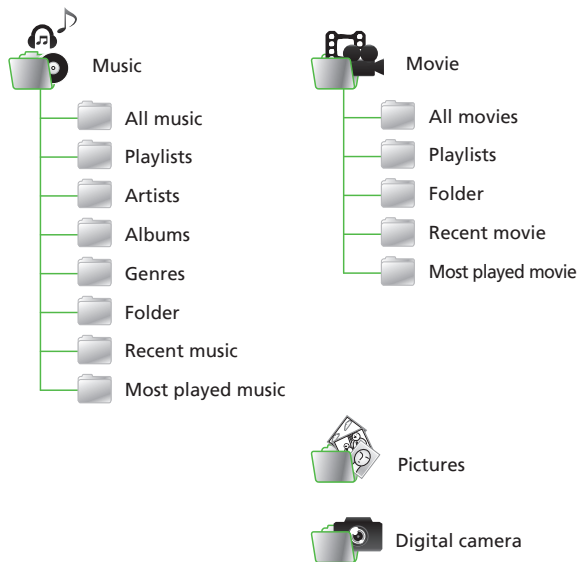
1 Files are saved by type. Files cannot be moved to or saved in folders that do not support them.

2 Use vFiles to send or transfer handset files via S! Mail, etc. Handset supports vCard (.vcf) for Phonebook entries, vCalendar (.vcs) for Task/Schedule, and vBookmark (.vbm) for Bookmarks.

- Save up to 9999 files/folders in each default folder.
- In a folder, use **Memory status** to confirm memory. Alternatively, confirm memory in **Settings** (P.12-12).
- In Data Folder, tap  to open Memory Card Data Folder; tap  to return to handset Data Folder.
- Tap  /  to toggle between List view and Thumbnail view.
-  /  appears in some folders as Downloaded Site shortcut. Select the link to access site via Yahoo! Keitai.
- If files in one default folder are too large, Handset performance may fall.

Default Media Folders

Handset sorts music, picture, and video files into the following folders:












Viewing Files

View files in Data Folder, like picture, animation etc. (P.12-4). Select Data Folder, data list appears.

- 1 Tap Menu → **Data Folder**
- 2 Select a file location
- 3 Select a file in List window

•File List Indicators

-  : Nontransferable
 -  : Nontransferable and unusable
 -  : Protected
 -  : Copy Protected File (Transferable, Content Key Valid)
 -  : Copy Protected File (Transferable, Content Key Expired)
 -  : Copy Protected File (Transferable, Content Key Valid)
 -  : Copy Protected File (Transferable, Content Key Expired)
 -  : Set as Wallpaper (P.12-15)
/Set as Ringtone (P.12-15)
 -  : Protected with WMDRM
- Nontransferable/copy protected files other than preinstalled ones cannot be used.

•Activating Camera or Voice Recorder from Data Folder

With **Pictures** folder open, tap More → **Take photo** to activate Camera in Camera mode. Similarly, with **Videos** folder open, tap More → **Record video** to activate Camera in Video mode.

With **Ring songs · tones** folder displayed, tap More → **Record sound** to activate Voice recorder.

If there is no file in each folder, **Take photo**, **Record video** and **Record sound** menu appear in Toolbar.

Note

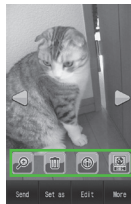
- JPEG Files over 3 MB or larger than 5000 x 5000 pixels cannot be edited. For other formats, files less than 3 MB and smaller than 1600 x 1600 pixels can only be edited. In addition, you cannot zoom JPEG Files larger than 5000 x 5000 pixels. For animated GIF Files, zooming size vary depending on the data. For other file formats, you cannot zoom files over 3MB or larger than 5000 x 5000 pixels.
- During playback, video file thumbnails do not appear in a list view for **Videos** folder etc.

Viewing Images with Image Viewer

View images in Portrait or Landscape view. Landscape images automatically rotate when you rotate handset.

- This guide describes Portrait View operations.

- 1 Tap Menu → **Data Folder** → **Pictures**
- 2 Select a file



Tool Icons

- Rotate handset to rotate Display image.
- Tap Display to show/hide Toolbar.

- 3 Scroll Display image horizontally

- Some images may not appear.

Viewing Graphics/Animation

View graphics/animation in Portrait or Landscape view.

- This guide describes Portrait View operations.

1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location

2 Select a file



- Tap to pause.
- Tap to resume.
- Tap to resume from last played.

- View SWF files in Data Folder.
- Some files may not appear.
- Selecting a compatible file from Data Folder automatically activates Flash® Viewer.

Zooming In/Out

1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → *Pictures* → Select an image

2 → / to adjust zoom level



- Alternatively, tap → to adjust zoom.

3 Tap OK

- Tap to fit image to Display height. Tap to fit image to Display width.
- Touch and hold image for Zoom indicators. Image expands if scrolled up. Image reduces if scrolled down.

Saving Face Link

Link Phonebook information to portrait still image to make a call or message from image.

Link up to 10 Phonebook entry items to a still image.

Capturing & Setting Still Images


1 (2 + seconds)

2 → → Under *Face link display, On* → Tap OK


3



- Available only when Face Link is *On*.
- If captured image is recognized, frame appears.
- If Face Link has been saved, name appears. If not, ? appears.
- If captured image is not recognized, frame does not appear. The image is saved and capture window reappears.
- If *Auto save* is *Off*, image will be saved and capture window will reappear.

- 4 Tap Face Link for linking
- 5 Search and select Phonebook entry (⊕P.2-18)
- 6 

Adding Data to Saved Image

- 1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → *Pictures*
- 2 Select a file
- 3 
- 4 Tap Add name tag
- 5 Drag and drop frame onto image




- 6 Tap Save
- 7 Search and select Phonebook entry (⊕P.2-18)

- Memory Card files cannot be set as Face Link.


Face Link

Make a call or message via Face Link image.

Calling/Messaging from Image Window

- 1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → *Pictures*
- 2 Select a file →  → Tap Face link
 - If multiple Face Links are set, tap one.
- 3 Make a call or message
 - To view other linked Face link images
This person's photo
 - To make a Voice Call
Voice call
 - To message
S! Mail → (⊕P.4-4 S! Mail 5)
 - To view phonebook
View phonebook

Sending Face Link Image by Mail

- 1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → *Pictures*
- 2 Select a file → 
- 3 Tap Send via msg.
- 4 Tap Send (P.4-4 S! Mail 2)

Advanced

Advanced Settings (P.12-12)

- Purchasing or Downloading Content Key

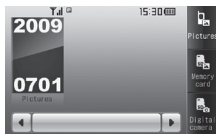
Photo Album

View image files captured with handset. Tilt handset to scroll Images.

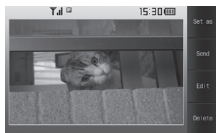
Opening Photo Album


View JPEG still images in handset or Memory Card. To view files in Photo Album, hold handset sideways.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Photo Album*



- 2 Select a folder
- 3 Select a file



- Some files may not appear.
- In folder list or file list, drag folder or file to scroll the screen. Alternatively, tilt handset.
- Hold(Long press) a part of the image to enlarge, and scroll the image to view. To back to the normal view, press .

Scroll Photo Album

In Photo Album, tilt handset or swipe to Scroll page.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Photo Album*
- 2 Select folder
- 3 Tilt handset or swipe

- Do Step 1 then Step 3 to scroll folder.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (P.12-13)

- Setting Opened Still Image as Wallpaper etc.
- Sending Opened Still Image
- Editing Opened Still Image
- Using Oekaki anime with Opened Still Image
- Deleting Opened File

Managing Files/Folders

Make sub-folder under Picture folder or video folder. Copy, move, or delete folder or file.

Creating Folders

Create sub-folder in Default folders.
Use *Set secret* to hide created folder.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder*
- 2 Select default folder to create a sub-folder
- 3 Tap More → *Manage* → *Create folder*
 - If there is no sub-folder or file in the folder, menu in Toolbar varies.
- 4 Enter name

- New folder cannot be created in a created folder, only for My Pictograms and Flash®.

Renaming File/Folder



- 1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder*
- 2 Select default folder → Tap More → *Manage* → *Rename*
- 3 Select file or sub-folder to rename
- 4 Enter name


- Protected files cannot be renamed.

Moving File/Folder

When Memory Card is inserted, move files or folders between handset (Phone) and Memory Card.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder*
- 2 Select default folder → Tap Move → *Folders or Files*
- 3 Check files or sub-folders to move → Tap Move
- 4 Select a destination folder

- If Memory Card is inserted, tap  /  to switch between handset and Memory Card.

- Protected files cannot be moved.
- If target file/folder with the same name exists, text entry window appears; edit file/folder name.
- To move a file set for Wallpaper or Ringtone to Memory Card, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to release the setting and move the file. When moving multiple or all files, choose *No* to move only files without set functions. Press  to cancel moving.



Note

- Downloaded files may not appear/play properly if moved to another device or if a different USIM Card is inserted.
- Nontransferable and unusable files (✂), protected files (🔒), or nontransferable and Copy protected files (🔒 or 📄) cannot be moved to Memory Card.

Copying Files/Folders

Copy a file or folder and paste in the same or another folder. When Memory Card is inserted, copy folders between handset and Memory Card.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder*
- 2 Select default folder → Tap Copy → *Folders or Files*
- 3 Check files or sub-folders to copy → Tap Copy
- 4 Select a destination folder

- If Memory Card is inserted, tap  /  to switch between handset and Memory Card.

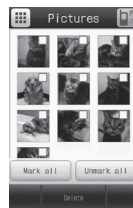
- When pasting files/folders in the same location as the original, numbers such as "_0001" are automatically added to pasted file/folder names.
- If target file/folder with the same name exists, text entry window appears; edit file/folder name.

Note

- Nontransferable files cannot be copied.

Deleting Files/Folders

- 1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location → Tap Delete



- 2 Check files or sub-folders to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

- If *Mark all* is selected, enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*.

- When deleting a file that is set to a function or protected, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to cancel the setting and delete the file. When deleting multiple files, choose *Yes* → *Except protected* to delete only files not set to functions and unprotected files.
- When deleting files with Content Key, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to delete both file and Content Key.

Advanced Settings (P. 12-13)

- Editing Image with Image Editor
- Using Oekaki anime with Still Image
- Viewing Slide Show
- Sending Files
- Printing Still Images via USB or Bluetooth®
- Sorting Files
- Deleting Content Key
- Setting Secret in Sub-folder
- Canceling Secret Setting Temporarily
- Activating Camera Mode
- Activating Video Mode
- Recording Sound
- Setting & Canceling File Lock
- Setting Images as Wallpaper etc.
- Setting Sound File to Ringtone in Normal Mode
- Setting Video File to Ringtone in Normal Mode
- Registering vFile to Other Functions

Memory Card

Handset is compatible with microSD™ Memory Card. Purchase Memory Card to use Memory Card-related handset functions.

- Use only recommended Memory Card. Other Memory Cards may not perform properly.
- Do not place labels or stickers on Memory Card. These items may affect card performance or result in lost information.
- Never disassemble or modify a Memory Card.
- Do not expose Memory Card to strong impacts, pressure or liquids.
- Do not touch Memory Card terminals or expose them to metal objects.
- Keep a Memory Card away from dust, high humidity, or excessive heat.
- Do not use in the presence of corrosive gases.
- Avoid heat sources and do not dispose of in fire.
- A Memory Card is a consumable item. Card performance deteriorates with usage.

- SoftBank recommends 64, 128, 256, 512 MB, 1, 2, or 4 GB cards.

Note

- **Protect Important Information**
Memory Card files may be lost or damaged by accident or malfunction. Back-up entries and store separately. SoftBank is not liable for damage from lost or altered information.
- microSD™ Memory Cards do not have Write Protection Switch. There is a risk of accidental erasure or overwriting of files.

Initializing Memory Card

Format Memory Card, delete all data in Memory Card. Make sure to format Memory Card before inserting it.

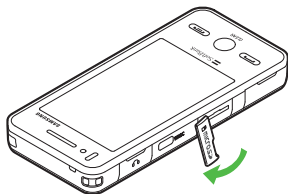
- 1 **Tap Menu → Settings → Memory settings → Memory card → Tap Format → Enter Password → Tap OK → Yes**

Inserting & Removing

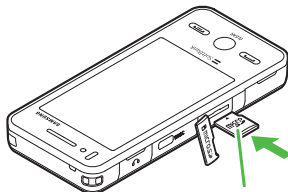
Turn handset power off before inserting or removing Memory Card.

Inserting

1 Open and rotate Memory Card cover



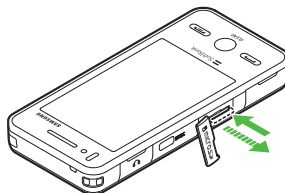
2 With contacts down, insert Memory Card until it clicks



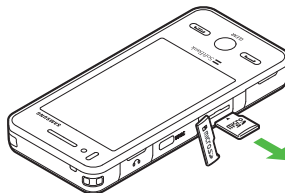
3 Close Memory Card cover

Removing

1 Open and rotate Memory Card cover



2 Card pops out; remove it



3 Close Memory Card cover

- If Memory Card Data Folder is open when Memory Card is removed, Phone Data Folder appears.

Note

- Do not apply excessive force when inserting/removing Memory Card; may damage Memory Card or handset.
- Take care not to lose removed Memory Card.
- Avoid touching/damaging Memory Card contacts when inserting/removing it.
- Never remove Memory Card or battery while files are being accessed; may damage handset/card or result in damaged/lost files.

Advanced


Settings

- Check Memory Card details (☞ P.14-24)
- Rename Memory Card (☞ P.14-24)
- Format Memory Card (☞ P.14-24)
- Set Default Memory to Phone or Memory Card (☞ P.14-24)

Viewing Data in Memory Card

1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder*

2 Tap on top right.

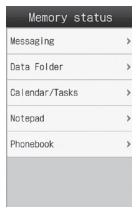
- Inset Memory Card before checking it.
- To check Mobile phone Data Folder, Tap .

Viewing Memory Status

View following information.

- Status of message folder
- Status of memory in Data Folder
- Status of Calendar or Tasks items registered
- Status of memory in Notepad
- Status of Phonebooks (Handset and USIM Card)

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Memory status*



2 View each item

To view Messaging status

Messaging

- Received, Drafts, Sent and Unsent Mail memory appears by Size.
- Select *Count* from pulldown menu to see Mail memory by Count.
- USIM Card SMS appears by Count only.

To view Data Folder status

Data Folder → *Phone memory/* *Memory card*

To view Calendar or Tasks status

Calendar/Tasks

To view Notepad status

Notepad

To view Phonebook

Phonebook

Advanced

Advanced Settings (P. 12-15)

- Deleting Registered/Saved Data

Settings

- Confirm total or remaining Phone Memory (P. 14-24)
- Clear Phone Memory (P. 14-24)
- View Memory status (P. 14-24)

Advanced Settings

Advanced Settings

Viewing Files

Purchasing or Downloading Content Key

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → *Pictures* → Select a file location → Tap More → *Manage* → *Download Content key* → Select a file → Follow onscreen instruction

Viewing Graphics/Animation in SWF

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location → Select a file

To display Keypad

Tap Keypad

To toggle Full/Normal view

Tap More → *Full view* or *Normal view*

To change image quality

Tap More → *Quality* → Select an item

Deleting File

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location → Select a file →  → *Yes*

- If no tool icon is displayed, tap the screen.

Confirming File Details

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location → Select a file → 

- If no tool icon is displayed, tap the screen.

Photo Album

Setting Opened Still Image as Wallpaper etc.

Tap Menu → **Photo Album** → Select a file location → Select a file → Tap Set as

■ To set image to Wallpaper

Wallpaper → Tap Set

■ To set image to Incoming image

Caller ID → Search Phonebook and select entry (☎P.2-18) → Tap Set

■ To set image to Alternative picture

Still image → Tap OK

Sending Opened Still Image

Tap Menu → **Photo Album** → Select a file location → Select a file → Tap Send

■ To send via message

Via message → (☎P.4-4 S! Mail ②)

■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → (☎P.13-7 Sending Data ②)

■ To send via infrared

Via infrared (☎P.13-3)

Editing Opened Still Image

Tap Menu → **Photo Album** → Select a file location → Select a file → Tap Edit → **Image editor** → (☎P.7-12 Editing Still Images ④)

Using Oekaki anime with Opened Still Image

Tap Menu → **Photo Album** → Select a file location → Select a file → Tap Edit → **Oekaki anime** → (☎P.7-13 Oekaki Anime ③)

Deleting Opened File

Tap Menu → **Photo Album** → Select a file location → Select a file → Tap Delete → **Yes**

Managing Files/Folders

Editing Image with Image Editor




Tap Menu → **Data Folder** → Select a file location → Select a file → Tap Edit → **Image editor** → (☎P.7-12 Editing Still Images ④)

Using Oekaki anime with Still Image

Tap Menu → **Data Folder** → Select a file location → Select a file → Tap Edit → **Oekaki anime** → (☎P.7-13 Oekaki Anime ③)

Viewing Slide Show

Tap Menu → **Data Folder** → **Pictures** → Select a file to view first → Tap More → **Slide show**

- To pause Slide show, tap Display and .
- To view next/previous data, tap  or .

Sending Files

Tap Menu → **Data Folder** → Select a file location → Tap More → **Send**

■ To send via message

Via message → Select a file (☎P.4-4 S! Mail ②)

■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → Check file to send → Tap Send → (☎P.13-7 Sending Data ②)

■ To send via infrared

Via infrared → Check file to send → Tap Send (☎P.13-3)

Printing Still Images via USB or Bluetooth®

Tap Menu → **Data Folder** → Select a file location → Tap More → **Print**

■ USB

Via USB → Check file to print → Tap Print → (ⓂP.7-15 Printing via USB 4)

■ Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → Check file to print → Tap Print → (ⓂP.7-14 Printing via Bluetooth® 4)

Sorting Files

Tap Menu → **Data Folder** → Select a file location → Tap More → **Sort by** → Select an item

- Sort by following order.
 - Descending order of date (**Date**)
 - File type (**Type**)
 - File name (**Name**)
 - Ascending order of file size (**Size**)
 - Content Key status (**Content key type**)
- Folders appear at the top of list.
- When selecting **Type**, files are sorted in alphabetical order by file extension.
- When selecting **Name**, files are sorted in order of numerics → alphabets → Japanese syllabary.
- Files in **Message templates** files cannot be sorted by **Type**.
- When selected **Content key type**, files appear as follows: Unrestricted → Nontransferable → Copy Protected (Content key valid) → Copy Protected (Content Key expired) → Invalid Nontransferable.
- Files without title names cannot be sorted by Title.

Adding Sound Files or Video Files to Playlist

Tap Menu → **Data Folder** → **Ring songs · tones, Music, or Videos** → Tap More → **Manage** → **Add to playlist** → Check files to add → Tap OK → Select a playlist

- To create a new playlist and add files to it, tap Create in Add to Playlist window.

Managing Content Key in Data Folder

Tap Menu → **Data Folder** → Select a file location → Tap More → **Manage** → **Download Content key** → Select Content Key to view

- When a folder containing a Content Key is opened, all Data Folder/Memory Card Content Keys appear.
- If no files require Content Key, **Download Content key** does not appear.

Deleting Content Key

Tap Menu → **Data Folder** → Select a file location → Tap More → **Manage** → **Download Content key** → Tap Delete → Check Content Key to delete → Tap Delete → **Yes**

- If no files require Content Key, **Download Content key** does not appear.

Setting Secret in Sub-folder

Tap Menu → **Data Folder** → Select a sub-folder location to set secret → Tap More → **Set/Unset secret** → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Select a folder to set secret → Tap OK

- To release the secret setting, uncheck them.

Canceling Secret Setting Temporarily

Tap Menu → **Data Folder** → Select a folder location → Tap More → **Unlock temporarily** → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

Activating Camera Mode

Tap Menu → **Data Folder** → **Pictures** → Tap More → **Take photo**

- If there is no data saved in **Pictures** folder, tap Take photo.

Activating Video Mode

Tap Menu → **Data Folder** → **Videos** → Tap More → **Record video**

- If there is no data saved in **Videos** folder, tap Record Video.


Recording Sound

Tap Menu → **Data Folder** → **Ring songs · tones** → Tap More → **Record sound**

- If there is no data saved in **Ring songs · tones** folder, tap Record sound.

Setting & Canceling File Lock

Tap Menu → **Data Folder** → Select a file location → Tap More → **Lock/Unlock** →  of a file to lock → Tap OK

- To release the lock, tap .
- Set file lock to restrict renaming, moving, or deleting.

Setting Images as Wallpaper etc.

Tap Menu → **Data Folder** → Select a file location → Select a file → Tap Set as

■ To set image as Wallpaper

Wallpaper → Preview image → Tap Set

■ To set image as Incoming Image

Caller ID → Search Phonebook and select entry (⊕P.2-18) → Tap Set

■ To set image as Alternative picture

Still image → Tap OK

- If a Memory Card file is set as Incoming Image or Ringtone, copy file to handset first confirmation appears. If file is copy protected, move file to handset first confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to complete setting.

Setting Sound File to Ringtone in Normal Mode

Tap Menu → **Data Folder** → Select a file location → Select a file →  → Tap Menu → **Set as**

■ To set to Ringtone for each function

Voice ringtone, Video ringtone, Message ringtone, S! Friend's Status ringtone, Missed call notification ringtone, S! Quick News ringtone, Delivery report ringtone

■ To set as Ringtone for Phonebook Entry

Caller ringtone → Search Phonebook and select entry (⊕P.2-18)

- If a Memory Card file is set as incoming image or ringtone, copy file to handset first confirmation appears. If file is copy protected, move file to handset first confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to complete setting.
- Only copy protected MPEG4 AAC, AAC+, or Enhanced AAC+ files can be set. However, copy protected files with play count restriction cannot be set.

Setting Video File to Ringtone in Normal Mode

Tap Menu → **Data Folder** → Select a file location → Select a file →  → Tap Menu → **Set as**

■ To set to Ringtone for each function

Voice ringtone or Video ringtone

■ To set to Ringtone for Phonebook

Caller ringtone → Select Phonebook entry to set (⊕P.2-18)

- Only copy protected MPEG4 (mp4, 3gp) AAC, AAC+, or Enhanced AAC+ files can be set. However, copy protected files with play count restriction cannot be set.

Registering vFile to Other Functions

Tap Menu → **Data Folder** → **Other documents** → Tap More → **Register to** → Select an item → Select a file

- Register a vCard or vCalendar files saved in Data Folder to Phonebook, Calendar or Tasks.

Memory Status

Deleting Registered/Saved Data

Tap Menu → **Settings** → **Memory settings** → **Memory status** → Select data → Tap Delete → Select data to delete → Tap Delete → **Yes**

- If **Mark all** is selected, tap Delete → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → **Yes**.
- Delete message folder messages, Data Folder files, or Calendar/Tasks or Phonebook entries.
- If file(s) are locked or set for another function, a confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to delete all files. Choose **No** to delete all other files only.

Connectivity & File Backup



Transmit Data & File Backup	13-2
Infrared	13-3
Aligning Infrared Port	13-3
Sending Data	13-3
Receiving Data	13-4
Bluetooth®	13-5
Toggling Bluetooth®	13-6
Searching for Bluetooth® Devices	13-6
Browsing Connected Device Files	13-6
Sending Data	13-6
Receiving Data	13-7
A/V Headset	13-8
USB Connection	13-8
USB Connection	13-8
Sending/Receiving in Mass Storage	13-9
Memory Card Backup	13-9
Backup Precautions	13-9
Backing Up to Memory Card	13-10
Loading from Memory Card	13-10
S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB)	13-11
Synchronizing Phonebook	13-12
Synchronizing Phonebook Automatically	13-12
Advanced Settings	13-13
Bluetooth® Settings	13-13
S! Addressbook Back-up	13-13

Transmit Data & File Backup

Send/Receive data with Infrared, Bluetooth, etc. Backup data with S! Addressbook Back-up.

In this chapter, data transmission and file backup are described.

* S! Addressbook Back-up requires a separate subscription.

Data Transmission

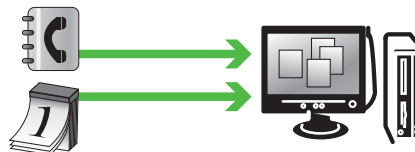
Transmit data with following functions.

- Infrared (☞P.13-3).
- Bluetooth® (☞P.13-5).
- USB Connection (☞P.13-8).



File Backup

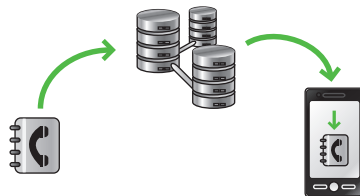
Backup data with Memory Card or PC (☞P.13-9).



Back up Phonebook entries on Server with S! Addressbook Back-up.

Even if data is lost, restore lost Phonebook entries from S! Addressbook Back-up.

Edit Phonebook backup with PC (☞P.13-11).



Infrared

Exchange files wirelessly with infrared-compatible handsets, PCs or other devices.

- Handset Infrared is based on IrMC1.1. Transmission may be unavailable for some functions, even when IrMC1.1 is supported on the other party's handset.
- Infrared data transmission is unavailable while sending/receiving message or using Internet.
- Calling or sending mail is unavailable during Infrared transmissions.
- Transmissions may be inhibited in direct sunlight, under fluorescent lighting or near infrared devices.
- Authorization Code is the 4-digit password used to allow transmissions between infrared devices. Enter same Authorization Code on both devices when transmitting all files at once.

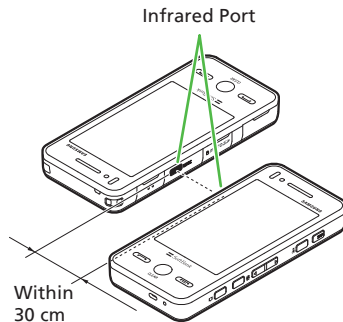
Send and receive Phonebook or Calendar entries, Account details, Schedules, Tasks, still images, videos, sound files, music files, and others. Send either all Phonebook, Calendar/Tasks or Bookmarks in a single transfer.

Note

- Infrared is unavailable while Internet services/Media Player is in use, or while editing mail/files.
- Some received files cannot be saved on handset.

Aligning Infrared Port

- Place devices within 30 cm. Align device ports. Do not place objects in between devices.



- Maintain port alignment until transmission ends.
- A soiled port may inhibit transmission. Clean port with a soft cloth beforehand.
- If transmission fails, a confirmation appears. Review precautions, choose **Yes** to try again.

Sending Data

First, activate Infrared on the other device.

Sending Data One by One

1 Send data

■ To send from Data Folder, Calendar or Bookmarks

In list, tap More → *Send* → *Via infrared* → Select data → Tap Send

■ To send from Phonebook or Tasks

In list, tap Send → *Via infrared* → Select data → Tap Send

■ To send from Notepad

In list, tap Send → *Via infrared* → Select data

- Some functions allow sending from Details/Playback window.

Transferring All

1 Tap Menu → *Infrared* → *Transfer all*

2 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

3 Phonebook, Calender/Tasks, or Bookmarks

- For *Phonebook*, choose *Yes* to transfer images.

4 Enter Authorization Code (4 digits) → Tap OK

Receiving Data

Receiving One by One


1 Tap Menu → *Infrared* → Under *On/Off, On*

- If Bluetooth® is active, cancellation confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to activate Infrared.
- Handset is ready to receive data.

2 Begin sending from other device within 3 minutes

3 Cancel Calling confirmation appears, choose *Yes*

4 Save confirmation appears, choose *Yes*

- To save pictograms, choose *Pictures* or *My Pictograms*.
- Tap *Cancel* to cancel receiving.
- Press  to terminate data reception.

• If vCard contains incoming image over 100KB, handset deletes the image then saves in Phonebook.

Note

- Receive files in Standby. Files cannot be received when Auto Lock is active, All Keys locked or during Software Update.

Receiving All

1 Tap Menu → *Infrared* → Under *On/Off, On*

- If *Bluetooth* is set to *On*, confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to start infrared transmission.
- Handset is ready to receive files.

2 Begin sending from other device within 3 minutes

3 Cancel Calling confirmation appears, choose *Yes*

4 Enter Authorization Code (4 digits) → Tap OK

- Enter same Authorization Code as sender.


5 Select a saving method

■ To add files as new entries

Add New





■ To overwrite current entries

Overwrite → *Yes* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

- Receiving all entries deletes existing handset entries except Account details. Receiving Account details deletes existing Account details except handset phone number.
- Tap *Cancel* to cancel receiving.
- Press  to terminate reception.

Advanced

Settings

- Activate or cancel Infrared transmission ( P.14-26)
- Transfer account details ( P.14-26)
- Transfer files ( P.14-26)
- Transfer all Phonebook, Calender/Tasks or Bookmarks at once ( P.14-26)

Bluetooth®

Send and receive Phonebook or Calendar/Tasks, Account details, Schedules, Tasks, still images, videos, sound files, music files, and others.

Send either all Phonebook, Calendar/Tasks or Bookmarks in a single transfer.

Connect Bluetooth®-compatible handsets or other devices to exchange files wirelessly, or handsfree devices for handsfree calling. Connect Bluetooth®-compatible headphones to listen to music. Connect handset to PCs and other devices for Internet access, etc.

Bluetooth® transmissions require Bluetooth®-compatible devices with the same profiles.

See handset Bluetooth® specifications below:

Item	Specification
Communication Standard	Bluetooth® Standard Ver. 2.0
Applicable Profiles	Headset Profile Hands-Free Profile Serial Port Profile Dialup Networking Profile File Transfer Profile Object Push Profile Advanced Audio Distribute Profile Audio/Video Remote Control Profile Basic Imaging Profile ¹ Basic Printing Profile Generic Access Profile Service Discovery Protocol Generic Object Exchange Profile
Output	Bluetooth® Power Class 1
Communication Distance ²	Within approximately 20 m
Frequency Band Used	2.4 GHz
Bluetooth® QD ID	B015147

¹ Handset only supports printing-related equipments.


² Varies by radio interference and other conditions.

- Handset may not work with all Bluetooth® devices.
- File transfers may not be available with some Bluetooth® devices. Operations, displays or actions vary by device, even if device meets Bluetooth® standards by interference.
- The 2.4 GHz band used by Bluetooth® devices is shared with other devices. Transmission rate or distance may be reduced, or transmissions terminated.
- Use of handsfree devices may create noise depending on connected devices or usage environment.
- Handset cannot be connected to other devices when connected to Bluetooth®-compatible stereo headphone while playing media files.
- USB and Bluetooth® cannot be used simultaneously.
- Deactivate Bluetooth® before connecting USB Cable.

Toggle Bluetooth®

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth*

2 Tap *On* or *Off*

- If Infrared is active, a confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to activate Bluetooth®.
- If Bluetooth® is active,  appears at the top of Display. Transfer data or connect compatible devices.

Searching for Bluetooth® Devices


Save Bluetooth® devices to paired devices list. Up to 10 can be saved. Enter same Authorization Code on both handset and device.

Activate Bluetooth® on device beforehand.

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth*






2 Tap Search new devices

- If Bluetooth® is *Off*, it is activated automatically and search devices.

3 Detected devices are listed, drag device to 

4 Enter Authorization Code (4 to 16 digits) → Tap OK

5 Enter same Authorization Code on device within 30 seconds

- After the target device is connected to handset, look up or get the data stored in that device.
- Authorization Code is a 4- to 16-digit password required for transmissions between Bluetooth® devices. When connecting to a handsfree device, enter specified Authorization Code. Authorization Code entry is not required for registered devices.
- If authorization fails, a confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** and repeat from step **4**.
- If 10 paired devices are already registered, oldest is deleted to make room for the new one. If all are authenticated, memory full confirmation appears.
- Paired Devices Indicators
 -  : Personal Computer
 -  : Mobile Phone
 -  : Others
 -  : Printer
 -  : Handsfree Device/Headset
- If a Bluetooth® connection request appears, choose **Yes** and enter specified Authorization Code within 30 seconds. For paired devices, choose **Yes** to establish connection without Authorization Code.

Browsing Connected Device Files

Access connected device's shared folders or files. Import or delete files from the other device.

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth*

2 Tap the registered device's icon → *Browse device*

3 Approve access on source device

Sending Data

Sending One by One

1 Select file and send

■ From Data Folder, Calendar, Bookmarks

In list, tap More → *Send* → *Via Bluetooth* → Select entries → Tap Send → Transfer confirmation appears, tap **Yes**

■ From Phonebook, Tasks, Media Player, Task

In list, tap Send → *Via Bluetooth* → Select entry → Tap Send → Transfer confirmation appears. Please remove. It goes to Bluetooth screen.

■ From Notepad

In list, tap Send → *Via Bluetooth* → Select data

2 Drag destination device to

- Receiver accepts and transfer begins.
- If device is not registered, register it first.

• Some functions allow sending option from Details or Playback window.

Transferring All

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → Tap Transfer all

2 Drag destination device to → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

- If device is not registered, register it first.

3 *Phonebook, Calendar/Tasks or Bookmarks*

- When Phonebook is selected to transfer image data, choose *Yes*

Receiving Data

Receiving One by One

After sender approves connection, file transfer begins and received file is saved.

1 Transfer confirmation appears, choose *Yes*

2 Received confirmation appears, choose *Yes*

- Save received pictogram files to *Pictures* or *My Pictograms*.

- Received folders are saved to *Other documents*.
- If vCard contains incoming image over 100KB, handset deletes the image then save in Phonebook.

Receiving All

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → Tap On


- If *Via infrared* is set to *On*, confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to start Bluetooth® transmission.
- Handset is set to Standby to receive data. Begin sending files from other device.

2 Connection confirmation appears, choose *Yes*

3 Select a saving method

■ To add new data
Add


■ To delete all to overwrite data
Overwrite → *Yes* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

- When receiving phonebook entries, all entries except Account details are deleted. When receiving Account details, all data except the phone number is overwritten.
- Tap Cancel to cancel the reception.
- Press  to terminate data reception.


A/V Headset

Connect Bluetooth®-compatible headphones to listen to music.

Settings

- 1 Tap Menu → *Media Player/TV* → *Settings* → *Sound (for TV only)* → *Sound output setting*
- 2 Select *Bluetooth device*
- 3 Drag device to connect to 

Switching Audio Device

- 1 Activate Media Player
- 2 Tap to headset
 - If a device is already selected, it will be connected to 931SC automatically.
- 3 Select *Bluetooth device*
- 4 Drag device to connect to 
 - When no device is registered, search and register new device.













- To switch output from headsets to handset, tap Transfer to Phone.

Advanced

Advanced Settings P.13-13

- Deleting Data on Connected Device
- Searching Devices by Type

Settings

- Activate or cancel Bluetooth® functions ( P.14-25)
- Search for a new Bluetooth® device ( P.14-25)
- Transfer all Phonebook, Calender/Tasks or Bookmarks at once ( P.14-25)
- Edit handset name ( P.14-25)
- Confirm handset device address ( P.14-25)
- Search/save from Bluetooth® devices ( P.14-25)
- Set Secure mode ( P.14-25)
- Adjust Handsfree setting ( P.14-25)
- Set Answering mode ( P.14-25)
- Set Answer time ( P.14-25)
- Activate or cancel S! Appli confirmation ( P.14-25)
- Confirm available Bluetooth® functions ( P.14-25)

USB Connection

Connect handset to PC to transfer files between devices. Connect printer to print still images. Handset supports USB 2.0.

Install Samsung New PC Studio and USB driver first. For installation instructions, PC operating environment, etc., access SAMSUNG website (<http://jp.samsungmobile.com/pc/lineup/931download.html>).

USB Connection

The following operations are available:

- Transfer handset Data Folder files to PC
- Import PC files and save to Data Folder
- Perform Packet Communications

Note

- To access to the Internet through PC or PDA connection (Mobile data communication), a large volume of packet communication is required in short period that will apply for high packet communication charge. Please pay attention on communication fee when using mobile data communication.

Sending/Receiving in Mass Storage

Connect handset with Memory Card to PC via USB cable, in order to manage data files in Memory Card with PC.

Connecting/Disconnecting to a PC

1 Connect handset to PC via USB Cable

2 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *USB mode* → *Mass storage* → *Yes*

3 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

4 Use PC to access Memory Card files

- Mass Storage is unavailable while receiving S! Mail, using Samsung New PC Studio, or when *My status* in S! Friend's Status is **Online**.
- Calling and Messaging are unavailable in Mass Storage.

5 On PC, perform device removal

6 In Mass storage, tap Exit

7 Disconnect USB Cable

Note

- Never disconnect USB Cable before disconnecting operation of device from PC.

Advanced

Settings

- Activate Mass Storage (☰ P.14-26)
- Activate Synch Mode to PC (☰ P.14-26)

Memory Card Backup

Back up Phonebook entries, etc. to Memory Card (Package backup). Restore backed up items as required (Package restoration).

- Restore from Backup in case of accidental data loss.
- Backups are saved by type (transfer date is file name).
- Available Backup types
 - Phonebook
 - Calendar
 - Tasks
 - Content Key
 - Bookmarks

• Use Backup to save files, share information between microSD™ Memory Card-compatible handsets, or move files to a newly purchased handset.

Backup Precautions

- Not available when battery is low.
- During backup or restoration, handset transmissions are not possible.
- Some files cannot be backed up. Some backed up files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs, etc.
- Backup may fail if handset/Memory Card memory is too low.

- Handset holds up to 500 Calendar/Tasks entries. When 500 entries are restored from Memory Card, a confirmation appears and excess is not saved.
- Yahoo! Keitai, PC Site Browser bookmarks are backed up.
- If a backed up bookmark is too large it may not be restorable.
- Some images set to Phonebook entries may not be transferred because of size.
- Backup data saved on Memory Card is not accessible on handset until restored from Memory Card.
- When backing up Content Keys, note the following:
 - Backup file can hold only one Content Key at a time. To backup another Content Key, a confirmation appears and the previous backup file is overwritten (To keep the previously backed up files, restore the Content Key to handset from Memory Card and then perform backup again).
 - Backing up a file containing a Content Key to Memory Card moves Content Key from handset to Memory Card making the file inaccessible.
 - Restoring a file with a Content Key to handset adds the Content Key to handset without overwriting any existing Content Keys on handset.

Backing Up to Memory Card

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Memory card*
- 2 Tap Backup
- 3 *Yes* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
- 4 *Phonebook, Calendar, Tasks, Contents keys, or Bookmarks*
- 5 Confirmation appears, choose *Yes*
 - Tap Cancel to cancel backup.
 - If *Content keys* backup file already exists, an overwrite confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to overwrite the file.

Loading from Memory Card

- 1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Memory card*
- 2 Tap Restore
- 3 *Yes* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
- 4 *Phonebook, Calendar, Tasks, Contents keys, or Bookmarks*
- 5 Select a file
 - To delete a backup file, tap Delete → Check a file to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*
- 6 *Add or Overwrite*
 - Tap Cancel to cancel restoration.

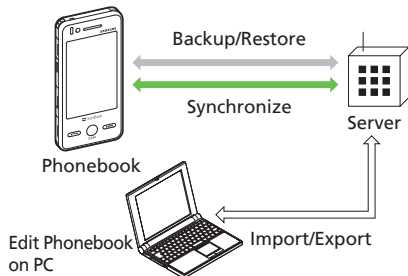
Advanced

Settings

- Backup Memory (☰ P. 14-24)
- Restore Memory (☰ P. 14-24)

S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB)

Back up handset Phonebook entries on Server or synchronize handset Phonebook entries with SAB. Restore lost handset Phonebook entries from SAB.



- SAB use requires a separate subscription.
- If you should change handsets, select an SAB compatible handset to take over SAB entries.
- After an application, when Network Information is retrieved*, Auto Sync will be **On** automatically. After editing phonebook, backup will start automatically.
- Even after Auto Sync is set to **Off**, if Network Information is retrieved Auto Sync will be initialized and set to **On**.
- Confirm Auto Sync is set to **Off** after canceling the services.

* **Auto Sync - Sync mode** will be set to **Synchronize**. Auto Sync starts about 10 minutes after editing phonebook.

Note

- Packet Communication fees apply to connections between handset and SAB (Backup, Restore, or Synchronize).
- These items cannot be synchronized with SAB; using Restore for these items will delete them from handset:
 - Picture
 - Ringtone settings, Vibration settings (Voice Call, Video Call, Messages, or S! Friend's Status)
 - Blood type
 - Hobby
- Select back up/restore timing and sync mode carefully to avoid accidental deletion of entries.
 - Delete all handset entries then select **Synchronize**, **Sync from client**, or **Backup** to delete all SAB entries.
 - Delete all SAB entries then select **Synchronize**, **Sync from server**, or **Restore** to delete all handset entries.
- If number of entry items savable on handset varies from SAB, synchronization will reflect lower number.

- Change to 3G Series, change service continues as follows:

Content	Detail
SAB Supported	SAB entries remain.
SAB Not Supported	SAB service usable and entries remain; handset access unavailable but PC access available.

- Change to V3, V4, V5, V6, V8 Series, SAB service is automatically canceled and SAB entries are deleted.
- When SAB service is canceled, Phonebook entries on Server are deleted.

Available synchronization modes are as follows.

Sync Mode	Description
Synchronize	Backs up handset entries and updates SAB. ¹
Sync from client	Backs up updated handset entries. ²
Sync from server	Downloads updated SAB entries to handset. ³
Backup	Deletes SAB entries and uploads handset entries. ⁴
Restore	Deletes all handset entries and downloads SAB entries to handset (up to 9315C limit) last edited first. ⁵

- 1 If handset Phonebook entry and SAB entry item are both updated, SAB entry item takes priority.
- 2 Phonebook update information on Server is not applied to the one on handset.
- 3 Phonebook update information of handset is not applied to the one on Server.
- 4 Be careful that all Phonebook entries on Server is deleted.
- 5 Be careful that all Phonebook entries of handset is deleted.

- **Slow sync** is performed regardless of Sync mode setting when using SAB for the first time or the last sync was not completed correctly by canceling, etc.

Synchronizing Phonebook

Connect to Phonebook entries in Server and synchronize it with handset Phonebook entries.

- 1 Tap Menu → *Phonebook* → *S! Addressbook Back-up* → *Start sync*
- 2 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
- 3 *Synchronize, Sync from client, Sync from server, Backup, or Restore* → *Yes* → *OK*

Note

- Starting sync connect to network. Packet Communication fees apply. Network connection is automatically disconnected when the synchronization.

Synchronizing Phonebook Automatically

Setting *Auto* sync settings to *On* requires Set frequency and Sync mode settings.

Setting Auto Sync

- 1 Tap Menu → *Phonebook* → *S! Addressbook Back-up* → *Auto sync settings* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
- 2 Under *On/Off*, *On*
- 3 *Sync mode*
- 4 *Synchronize, Sync from client, Sync from server, Backup, or Restore*
- 5 *Set frequency* → *frequency*

6 Set items

To back up once a month

Every month → Tap Time field → Enter time → Tap Date field → Enter date

To back up once a week

Every week → Tap Time field → Enter time → Tap Day field → Select a day

To back up 10 minutes after editing Phonebook entries

Every editing

7 Tap Save

- Under *On/Off*, set *Off* to cancel Auto Sync.

Advanced

Advanced Settings ⓘ P. 13-13

- Deleting *S! Addressbook Back-up History*

Advanced Settings

Advanced Settings

Bluetooth® Settings

Disconnecting Currently Connected Device

Tap Menu → **Settings** → **Connectivity** → **Bluetooth** → Tap registered device indicator → **Delete**

Acquiring Connected Device Data

Tap Menu → **Settings** → **Connectivity** → **Bluetooth** → Tap registered device indicator → **Browse device** → Approve access on source device

To acquire a file

Select a save location → Select a file to get

To acquire multiple sub-folders or files

Select a save location → Tap Get → **Folder** or **File** → Check a file to get → Tap Get

To acquire a folder

Tap Get → **Folder** → Select a folder to get

Deleting Data on Connected Device

Tap Menu → **Settings** → **Connectivity** → **Bluetooth** → Tap registered device indicator → **Browse device** → Approve access on source device → Select a folder → Tap Delete → Check a folder to delete → Tap Delete → Approve access on source device

Viewing Paired Device Details

Tap Menu → **Settings** → **Connectivity** → **Bluetooth** → Tap a device indicator to view → **Device details**

Editing Name of Paired Device

Tap Menu → **Settings** → **Connectivity** → **Bluetooth** → Tap a device indicator to edit → **Rename** → Edit device name

Authorizing Paired Device

Tap Menu → **Settings** → **Connectivity** → **Bluetooth** → Tap a device indicator to authorize → **Authorize device** or **Unauthorize device**

- When **Authorize device** is set, the setting turns to **Unauthorized device**.

Deleting Connected Device

Tap Menu → **Settings** → **Connectivity** → **Bluetooth** → Tap a device indicator to delete → **Delete** → **Yes**

Searching Devices by Type

Tap Menu → **Settings** → **Connectivity** → **Bluetooth** → Tap More → **Search settings** → Select an item

- When selecting **Device address**, Enter an address.

S! Addressbook Back-up

Viewing S! Addressbook Back-up History

Tap Menu → **Phonebook** → **S! Addressbook Back-up** → **Sync log** → Select a log

Deleting S! Addressbook Back-up History

Tap Menu → **Phonebook** → **S! Addressbook Back-up** → **Sync log** → Tap Delete → Check logs to delete → Tap Delete

Memo

A series of 12 horizontal dotted lines for writing.

Handset Customization

14

Phone Settings	14-2
Handset Settings	14-2
Touch Panel Settings	14-3
Sounds & Vibration & External Light Settings	14-3
Sounds & Vibration	14-3
External Light Settings	14-4
Display and Font Settings	14-5
Manner Mode Settings	14-6
Call Settings	14-6
Phonebook Settings	14-11
Messaging Settings	14-11
Custom Mail Address	14-11
S! Mail & SMS	14-12
S! Mail	14-14
SMS	14-15
Internet Settings	14-15
Yahoo! Keitai	14-15
PC Site Browser	14-16
Digital TV Settings	14-17
TV Alarm	14-17
Data Broadcast	14-18
Display and Sound	14-18
Recording	14-18
Incoming Calls & Alarms	14-19
Auto Power Off	14-19
Camera Settings	14-19
Camera & Video	14-19
Photo	14-20
Video	14-20

Media Player Settings	14-21
Music	14-21
Movie	14-21
Entertainment Setting	14-22
S! Information Channel	14-22
S! Applications	14-22
Security Settings	14-23
Memory Settings	14-24
Connectivity Settings	14-25
Bluetooth	14-25
Infrared	14-26
USB	14-26
Network	14-26

Phone Settings

Handset Settings

Start Here

Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Phone settings*

Change user interface language	Default 日本語	言語選択 → Select an item
Set Time zone updating	Default Ask when update	<i>Date & Time</i> → <i>Set time zone</i> → <i>Time zone updating</i> → Select an item
Set time		<i>Date & Time</i> → <i>Set date & time</i> → <i>Time</i> → Enter time → Tap OK <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Some functions are disabled when time is not set.
Set date		<i>Date & Time</i> → <i>Set date & time</i> → <i>Date</i> → Enter date → Tap OK <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Some functions are disabled until date is set.
Change Home time zone	Default GMT+09:00	<i>Date & Time</i> → <i>Set time zone</i> → <i>Home zone</i> → Scroll a window and tap a target city → Tap Save <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alternatively, tap the tab located at the top of the window to change the zone. Select the zone closest to your locality. Complete this setting before selecting <i>Dual Clock</i> in <i>Widget setting</i>.
Activate or cancel Daylight savings time adjustment	Default <input type="checkbox"/>	<i>Date & Time</i> → <i>Set time zone</i> → <i>Home zone</i> → Scroll a window and tap a target city → <input type="checkbox"/> → Tap Save <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tap <input type="checkbox"/> to switch to <input type="checkbox"/>
Change Date format	Default YYYY/MM/DD	<i>Date & Time</i> → <i>Set format</i> → <i>Date format</i> → Select an item
Change Time format	Default 24 hour	<i>Date & Time</i> → <i>Set format</i> → <i>Time format</i> → Select an item
Set Time correction	Default On	<i>Date & Time</i> → <i>Set date & time</i> → <i>Time correction</i> → Under <i>Auto correction</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To specify when to correct the time, tap <i>Correction timing</i> → Check an item to set → Tap Save. Tapping <i>Manual correction</i> immediately corrects the time.
Save entries to User's Dictionary		<i>User's dictionary</i> → Tap Add new → <i>Word</i> → Enter word and sentence → <i>Reading</i> → Enter reading → Tap Save
Edit User's Dictionary entries		<i>User's dictionary</i> → Select entry to edit → Edit word and reading → Tap Save

Delete User's Dictionary entries	<i>User's dictionary</i> → Tap Delete → Check word to delete → Tap Delete → <i>Yes</i>
----------------------------------	--

Touch Panel Settings

Start Here Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Touch panel*






Set Auto Lock Default On	Under <i>Auto lock, On or Off</i>
Set Touch Panel tone volume level and vibration level for operating Touch Panel Default Volume: Level 0, Touch vibration: Level 3	<i>Operation feedback</i> → Adjust volume/Set strength of vibration
Calibrate Touch Panel	<i>Touch calibration</i> → Tap Start → Follow the onscreen instructions to sequentially tap the + signs <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tap Cancel to exit.


Settings

Sounds & Vibration & External Light Settings

Sounds & Vibration

Start Here Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Sound settings*

Adjust volume Default Voice call/Video call/Message/S! Friend's Status/Missed call notif./Delivery report/System sounds: Level 3, S! Quick News: Level 0	<i>Volume</i> → Adjust volume <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If <i>Ringtone reducer</i> is <i>On</i>, ringtone volume is reduced to Level 1 for the first two seconds, regardless of ringtone volume set for Voice/Video Call. • Use  /  to adjust ringtone volume while handset rings. • To mute Voice/Video Call or Message tones, set <i>Volume 0</i> and <i>Vibration to Off</i>. 
Set Ringtone for Voice Call/Video Call Default Voice call: Young hopefuls.mp4, Video call: Samsung Tune.mp4	<i>Ringtone</i> → <i>Voice call, or Video call</i> → Select save location for a file → Select a file <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tap  to playback.
Set ringtone other than Voice Call Default A Toy Box.mp4	<i>Ringtone</i> → Tap a Ringtone field to set → Select save location for a file → Select a file <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tap  to playback.
Set ringtone duration other than Voice Call Default 5 Seconds	<i>Ringtone</i> → Select an item → <i>Duration</i> → Enter duration



Set Vibration Default Off	<i>Vibration</i> → Select an item → Select a pattern <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tap  to view a pattern.
Set system sounds Default Pop up box alerts/Call end tone/Alerts on call: On, Minute minder/Call connect tone/Power on/Power off: Off	<i>System sounds</i> → Check an item to Check → Tap Save <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Available items vary by mode.

- Open *Sound settings* to change sounds for Normal mode. Settings cannot be changed for other modes.

External Light Settings

Start Here

Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Sound settings*

Set External Light color for incoming transmissions Default Voice call/Video call/Message/S! Friend's Status/Missed call notif./Alarms/Delivery report: Green, S! Quick News: Off	<i>Incoming light</i> → Select an item → Select a Color <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When selecting <i>Off</i>, Notification light does not blink. • Tap  to blink a light.
Set External Light color for missed calls Default Missed call/Missed call notif.: Blue, Message/Delivery report: Green, S! Friend's Status: Light blue, Answering machine: White, Missed alarm: Pink	<i>Notification light</i> → Select an item → Select a color <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When selecting <i>Off</i>, Notification light does not blink. • Tap  to view color.

Display and Font Settings

Start Here

Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Display settings*

Change Main Menu settings Default Sweet Liqueur(Random)	<i>Main menu style</i> → Select an item → Select a style
Set the color theme of Menu Default Blue	<i>Color theme</i> → Select an item
Change Wallpaper Default Colored pencil.jpg	<i>Wallpaper</i> → (P.2-5 Wallpaper 2)
Set Frequently Used Functions to Widget Bar Default 17 Widgets (Analog Clock, Calender, Alarm, Light, S! Information Channel, S! Quick News, Top3, Mini player, Oekaki anime, S! Appli, Infrared, Phonebook, Bookmark (Y Keitai), S-1 BATTLE, Content Value Package, Simple Select Video, Widget setting)	<i>Widget setting</i> → Check an item to set → Tap OK ● Up to 17 Widgets can be set.
Set Font type Default Font 1	<i>Font type</i> → Select an item
Change Message text font size Default Standard	<i>Font size</i> → <i>Messages</i> → Select an item
Set text size in Yahoo! Keitai pages Default Standard	<i>Font size</i> → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → Select an item
Set text size in PC Site Browser Default Standard	<i>Font size</i> → <i>PC site browser</i> → Select an item
Adjust Display brightness Default Auto	<i>Backlight</i> → <i>Backlight on</i> → <i>Brightness</i> → Under <i>Auto/Manual</i> , <i>Auto</i> or <i>Manual</i> ● When <i>Manual</i> is selected, adjust brightness on Level field.
Set Backlight time Default 15 seconds	<i>Backlight</i> → <i>Backlight on</i> → <i>Duration</i> → Select an item ● When Backlight time is set to <i>Off</i> , Display becomes dim. ● Display becomes dimmer when Backlight time elapses.
Set Dimmer time of Backlight Default 15 seconds	<i>Backlight</i> → <i>Backlight dim duration</i> → Select an item ● When Backlight time elapses, Display turns off.
Set Operator name Default Off	Under <i>Operator name</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>


Manner Mode Settings


Switching Manner mode	Tap Menu → <i>Settings</i> → <i>Manner mode settings</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To edit each settings in Manner mode, tap Edit → Select a mode → Set each item
-----------------------	---



Call Settings

Start Here


 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings*

Forward all calls to Voicemail (Handset does not ring)	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Voice mail/Call forwarding</i> → <i>Voice mail On</i> → <i>Always(0 sec.)</i>
Forward unanswered calls to Voicemail (specify ring time)	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Voice mail/Call forwarding</i> → <i>Voice mail On</i> → <i>No reply(5 - 30 sec.)</i>
Activate and set Forwarding	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Voice mail/Call forwarding</i> → <i>Call forwarding On</i> → Select a call type → Select a setting → Select an item → Set number to forward
Cancel Voicemail/Call Forwarding	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Voice mail/Call forwarding</i> → <i>Deactivate all</i> → <i>Yes</i>
Confirm current Voicemail/Call Forwarding settings	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Voice mail/Call forwarding</i> → <i>Get status</i>
Listen to Voicemail message	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Voice mail/Call forwarding</i> → <i>Listen to voice mail</i> →  or tap Call
Activate or cancel Call Waiting	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Call waiting</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Confirm current Call Waiting settings	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Call waiting</i> → <i>Get status</i>
Set Outgoing Call Barring	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Call barring</i> → <i>Outgoing call</i> → Select an item → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> → Enter Network Password → Tap OK
Activate or cancel Incoming Call Barring	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Call barring</i> → <i>Incoming call</i> → Select an item → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> → Enter Network Password → Tap OK
Cancel all Call Barring	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Call barring</i> → <i>Cancel all barring</i> → Enter Network Password → Tap OK → <i>Yes</i>

Confirm current Call Barring settings	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Call barring</i> → <i>Get status</i> → Select an item
Change Network Password	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Call barring</i> → <i>Set security code</i> → Enter current Network Password → Tap OK → Enter new Network Password → Tap OK → Enter new Network Password again → Tap OK
Set Missed Call Notification	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Missed call notif.</i> →  or tap Call
Switching Network Mode Default Automatic	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>International call</i> → <i>Select network</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If <i>Manual</i> is set, select from <i>3G/GSM</i>, <i>3G</i>, or <i>GSM</i>.
Save International Code Default 0046010	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>International call</i> → <i>International code</i> → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Enter an international code
Add/change/delete Country Number Default 日本 (Japan), 韓国 (KOR), イギリス (GBR), イタリア (ITA), スイス (CHE), スペイン (ESP), ドイツ (DEU), ポルトガル (PRT), オランダ (NLD), フランス (FRA), モナコ (MCO), アメリカ合衆国 (USA), スウェーデン (SWE), オーストラリア (AUS), 中国 (CHN), 香港 (HKG), 台湾 (TWN)	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>International call</i> → <i>Country number</i> → Add, change, or delete item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To add, tap Add → <i>Country name</i> → Enter country name → <i>Country code</i> → Enter country code → Tap OK. • To change, select an item from country code → <i>Country name</i> → Enter country name → <i>Country code</i> → Enter country code → Tap OK. • To delete, tap Delete → Select item → Tap Delete → <i>Yes</i>.
Select network to access	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>International call</i> → <i>Select operator</i> → <i>Select Auto/Manual</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When you set <i>Manual</i>, select a network.
Select preferred network from list	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>International call</i> → <i>Select operator</i> → <i>Set priority</i> → Tap Add → <i>Network list</i> → Select a Network
Add a new preferred network	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>International call</i> → <i>Select operator</i> → <i>Set priority</i> → Tap Add → <i>New Network</i> → <i>Country code</i> → Enter country code → <i>Network code</i> → Enter Network code → <i>Network name</i> → Enter Network name → <i>Network type</i> → Select an item → Tap Add
Check Call Time/Cost	<i>Call time & cost</i> → <i>All calls</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To reset call time/cost, tap Reset → Enter PIN2 → Tap OK.

Check last Call Time/Cost		<i>Call time & cost</i> → <i>Last call</i> ● To reset last call time/cost, tap Reset.
Check Data Counter		<i>Call time & cost</i> → <i>Data counter</i> ● To reset sent/received data counter, tap Reset.
Show or hide Call Time/Cost after calls	Default Off	<i>Call time & cost</i> → Under <i>Show charge after call, On</i> or <i>Off</i> ● This function may not be available.
Change Call Cost Currency		<i>Call time & cost</i> → <i>Set currency</i> → Enter PIN2 → Tap OK → Tap Price field → Enter rate to the yen → Tap Currency field → Enter currency unit → Tap Save
Set Call Cost Limit		<i>Call time & cost</i> → <i>Set max cost limit</i> → <i>Edit</i> → Enter PIN2 → Tap OK → Select New upper limit field → Enter upper limit → Tap Save ● After reaching the call cost limit, only emergency calls can be made; messaging, web connections (fee-based operations) are disabled. ● When <i>Show charge after call</i> is not available, this function is also unavailable.
Cancel Call Cost Limit		<i>Call time & cost</i> → <i>Set max cost limit</i> → <i>Reset</i> → Enter PIN2 → Tap OK
Activate or cancel Answering machine	Default Off	<i>Answering machine</i> → Under <i>On/Off, On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Set Answering machine response time	Default 18 seconds	<i>Answering machine</i> → <i>Ringling duration</i> → Select an item ● If <i>Other</i> is selected, enter time.
Play Answering machine records		<i>Answering machine</i> → <i>Play messages</i> → Select a record ● To delete record, in list, tap Delete → Check a record to delete → Tap Delete → <i>Yes</i> . ●  → <i>Received</i> → Select a record →  → Message is also available.
Set Answering machine response language	Default 日本語	<i>Answering machine</i> → <i>Sound language</i> → Select an item
Set Preset Picture to appear in place of your own image		<i>Video call</i> → <i>Alternative picture</i> → <i>Preset picture</i> → Tap OK
Set Alternative Picture to appear in place of My Image		<i>Video call</i> → <i>Alternative picture</i> → <i>Pictures</i> → Select a file → Tap OK ● When Memory Card is inserted, <i>Digital camera</i> is selectable.
Adjust incoming video quality	Default Standard	<i>Video call</i> → <i>Incoming video quality</i> → Select an item
Adjust outgoing video quality	Default Standard	<i>Video call</i> → <i>Outgoing video quality</i> → Select an item
Set Preset Picture to appear when Video Call is on hold		<i>Video call</i> → <i>Hold setting</i> → <i>Hold during call</i> → <i>Preset picture</i> → Tap OK

Set Hold setting		<i>Video call</i> → <i>Hold setting</i> → <i>Hold during call</i> → <i>Pictures</i> → Select a file → Tap OK ● When Memory Card is inserted, <i>Digital camera</i> is selectable
Set Preset Picture to appear when Video Call is on hold without answering		<i>Video call</i> → <i>Hold setting</i> → <i>Hold answer</i> → <i>Preset picture</i> → Tap OK
Set Hold answer setting		<i>Video call</i> → <i>Hold setting</i> → <i>Hold answer</i> → <i>Pictures</i> → Select a file → Tap OK ● When Memory Card is inserted, <i>Digital camera</i> is selectable.
Activate or cancel mute for Video Call	Default Off	<i>Video call</i> → Under <i>Mute my voice</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> ● If <i>On</i> , tap Unmute to temporarily send voice.
Activate or cancel Speaker Phone during Video Call	Default On	<i>Video call</i> → Under <i>Speaker</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Set Backlight	Default On	<i>Video call</i> → Under <i>Backlight</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> ● When <i>Off</i> is set, Display becomes dim.
Set handset response when Video Call cannot be connected	Default Ask each time	<i>Video call</i> → <i>Retry with</i> → Select an item ● <i>None</i> : Calls are disconnected with no notification. ● When a Video Call cannot be connected, prompt appears to retry with the selected setting.
Answer Video Call from specified party automatically	Default Off	<i>Video call</i> → <i>Auto answer</i> → Under <i>On/Off</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> ● When a Video Call arrives from the specified party, a tone sounds and the call is automatically answered.
Create Auto Answer List		<i>Video call</i> → <i>Auto answer</i> → <i>Auto answer list</i> → Tap Add → Select an item → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Add an entry ● To delete the specified party, after selecting <i>Auto answer list</i> , tap Delete → Check an entry to delete → Tap Delete → <i>Yes</i> .
Show or hide your own image for Video Calls	Default On	<i>Video call</i> → Under <i>Show my image</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Accept or reject calls from specified phone numbers	Default Off	<i>Reject incoming calls</i> → <i>Set reject number</i> → Under <i>On/Off</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> ● When a call from Reject list arrives, a caller hears a busy tone and call is not connected. <i>Missed call</i> appears in Standby. Select the message to check missed call.

Create or edit Black List		<p><i>Reject incoming calls</i> → <i>Set reject number</i> → <i>Black list</i> → Tap Add → Select an item → Add an entry</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To delete saved phone numbers, select <i>Black list</i> → Tap Delete → Check phone numbers to delete → Tap Delete → <i>Yes</i>.
Accept or reject calls from unknown numbers	Default Off	<i>Reject incoming calls</i> → Under <i>Unknown, On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Accept or reject calls when number is withheld	Default Off	<i>Reject incoming calls</i> → Under <i>Withheld, On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Accept or reject calls from payphones	Default Off	<i>Reject incoming calls</i> → Under <i>Payphone, On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Accept or reject calls when number is unavailable	Default Off	<i>Reject incoming calls</i> → Under <i>Unavailable, On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Activate or cancel Offline mode	Default Off	Under <i>Offline mode, On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Show or hide your own number		<p><i>Show my number</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To check current status, select <i>Get status</i>.
Set handset to automatically redial busy numbers	Default Off	<p>Under <i>Auto redial, On</i> or <i>Off</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>On</i>: Handset automatically disconnects call and redials busy numbers. Auto redial repeats up to 10 times until <i>Cancel</i> is tapped or  is pressed. Auto redial setting takes priority when Video Call retry setting is selected. If called party uses Call Forwarding or Voicemail, call is forwarded accordingly.
Activate or cancel automatic ringer reduction	Default On	<p>Under <i>Ringtone reducer, On</i> or <i>Off</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When ringtone volume level is high, the volume level is reduced to Level 1 for the first four seconds, then returns to the set level.
Enable or disable calling via Stereo Earphone Microphone	Default Off	<p><i>Earphone call</i> → <i>Call number</i> → Select an item → Add a phone number → Under <i>On/Off, On</i> or <i>Off</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>On</i>: Press Stereo Earphone Microphone (Optional) switch for 1 + seconds to call specified number. To change specified number, repeat setup operation, saving the new number.
Adjust Earpiece volume	Default Level 5	Adjust volume in Hearing volume field

Phonebook Settings

Start Here

 Tap Menu → *Phonebook* → *Settings*

Select Phonebook Save Location	Default Phone	<i>Save setting</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <i>Ask each time</i>: A confirmation appears each time a new entry is saved.
Change Phonebook preference (Phone/USIM)	Default Phone	<i>Change view</i> → Select an item
Change Search Method	Default ABC	<i>Search method</i> → Select an item
Copy all records of Phonebook and save on handset and USIM Card		<i>Copy all</i> → <i>Phone to USIM/USIM to Phone</i> → Yes

Messaging Settings

Custom Mail Address

Customize or change handset mail address	Tap Messaging → <i>Settings</i> → <i>Custom mail address</i> → Follow onscreen instructions <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Change mail account name (alphanumerics before @). Random alphanumerics set by default.
--	--

S! Mail & SMS

Start Here Tap Messaging → *Settings* → *Universal settings*

Request or cancel Delivery Report	Default Off	<i>Sending settings</i> → Under <i>Delivery report</i> , On or Off <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● On: Receive a message confirming successful delivery of a sent message.
Quote text from received mail	Default On(Except SMS and Graphic Mail)	<i>Sending settings</i> → <i>Reply with history</i> → Select an item
Select reply setting	Default Off	<i>Sending settings</i> → Under <i>Reply settings</i> , On or Off On : Replies to sent messages are automatically addressed to " <i>Reply to</i> " address Off : Replies to sent messages are addressed to handset number/E-mail address <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Set address that appears in To: field of replies to messages sent from handset.
Set "reply to" address		<i>Sending settings</i> → " <i>Reply to</i> " address → Enter an item → Enter address
Show or hide transmission progress bar	Default On	<i>Sending settings</i> → <i>Sending progress settings</i> → Under <i>Sending progress</i> , On or Off
Always show or hide send result (progress bar hidden)	Default With notice	<i>Sending settings</i> → <i>Sending progress settings</i> → <i>Sending result notice</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <i>Sending result notice</i> is only selectable when <i>Sending progress</i> is set to Off.
Set received message notice content or hide notice	Default From	<i>Receiving settings</i> → <i>Message notice</i> → <i>View setting</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Received message notice scrolls above active function windows.
Select secret folder message notice setting	Default Show	<i>Receiving settings</i> → <i>Message notice</i> → <i>Secret folder</i> → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → <i>Secret folder</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Not show: Incoming message notice window for messages sorted to secret folders or <i>Message notice</i> does not appear.
Adjust 3D Pictogram auto play setting		<i>Receiving settings</i> → <i>3D Pictogram</i> → <i>3D Picto. Auto play</i> → Select an item Always : Show 3D Pictogram for all messages Only unread : Show 3D Pictogram for unread messages only Disable : Hide 3D Pictogram <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The first time a received message is viewed <i>3D Picto. Auto play</i> confirmation appears.
Select 3D Pictogram color settings	Default Random	<i>Receiving settings</i> → <i>3D Pictogram</i> → <i>Color settings</i> → ◀ or ▶ to show target pattern → Tap OK
Select 3D Pictogram Display speed	Default Standard	<i>Receiving settings</i> → <i>3D Pictogram</i> → <i>Display speed</i> → Select an item

Link External Light to incoming Feeling Mail Default On	<i>Receiving settings</i> → <i>Link to feeling</i> → <i>Light color</i> → Under <i>On/Off, On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Link External Light color to incoming Feeling Mail Default Happy/Glad: Pink, OK/Good: Green, Sad/Sorry: Blue, NG/Bad: Red, Important/Notice: Yellow	<i>Receiving settings</i> → <i>Link to feeling</i> → <i>Light color</i> → <i>Light color</i> → Select a feeling → Select a color ● Tap  to view color.
Link Vibration to incoming Feeling Mail Default On	<i>Receiving settings</i> → <i>Link to feeling</i> → <i>Vibration pattern</i> → Select an item
Set whether to sound handset when Feeling Mail arrives Default Off	<i>Receiving settings</i> → <i>Link to feeling</i> → <i>Ringtone</i> → Under <i>On/Off, On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Linking Ringtone to incoming Feeling Mail Default Happy/Glad: One Fine Day.mp4, OK/Good: Sunny day.mp4, Bad/Sorry: Jazzy House_Pleasure.mp4, NG/Bad: Vintage Cinema.mp4, Important/Notice: On my way home.mp4	<i>Receiving settings</i> → <i>Link to feeling</i> → <i>Ringtone</i> → <i>Assign tone</i> → Select a feeling → Select a save location → Select a Ringtone ● Tap  to playback the file.
Set Feeling Mail ringtone duration Default 5 Seconds	<i>Receiving settings</i> → <i>Link to feeling</i> → <i>Ringtone</i> → <i>Duration</i> → Enter time
Change font size Default Standard	<i>Display settings</i> → <i>Font size</i> → Select an item
Change scroll unit Default Single line	<i>Display settings</i> → <i>Scroll unit</i> → Select an item
Show or hide Navigation Bar Default On	<i>Display settings</i> → Under <i>Navigation bar, On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Change received message view Default Folder view	<i>Display settings</i> → <i>Received msg. view</i> → Select an item
Change sent message view Default Folder view	<i>Display settings</i> → <i>Sent msg. view</i> → Select an item
Set or cancel Auto Delete for received messages when Received memory is full Default On (Auto delete)	<i>Auto delete</i> → <i>Received msg.</i> → Select an item <i>On (Auto delete)</i> : Unprotected messages are automatically deleted oldest first to make room for new ones. If <i>Auto delete</i> is <i>Off</i> , memory full confirmation appears. Delete messages and retry. <i>Off</i> : Memory full confirmation appears. Delete messages and retry.
Set or cancel Auto Delete for sent messages when Sent memory is full Default On (Auto delete)	<i>Auto delete</i> → <i>Sent msg.</i> → Select an item <i>On (Auto delete)</i> : Unprotected messages are automatically deleted oldest first to make room for new ones. If <i>Auto delete</i> is <i>Off</i> , memory full confirmation appears. Delete messages and retry. <i>Off</i> : Memory full confirmation appears. Delete messages and retry.

S! Mail

Start Here

Tap Messaging → *Settings* → *S! Mail settings*

Set message sending priority	Default Normal	<i>Sending options</i> → <i>Priority</i> → Select an item
Set sent message Mail Service Center expiry	Default Maximum	<i>Sending options</i> → <i>Expiry time</i> → Select an item ● When the expiry time has elapsed, S! Mails are automatically deleted from Mail Server.
Set time to send a message via Mail Service Center	Default Immediately	<i>Sending options</i> → <i>Delivery time</i> → Select an item ● When set time has elapsed, Mail Service Center sends S! Mail message.
Set S! Mail receiving options	Default Auto download	<i>Receiving options</i> → <i>Home auto settings</i> → Select an item <i>Auto download</i> : Mail Service Center sends complete S! Mail messages automatically <i>From number only</i> : Mail Service Center sends complete S! Mail sent to handset number <i>Manual retrieval</i> : Mail Service Center sends S! Mail Notice; retrieve complete message
Set S! Mail receiving options during roaming	Default Auto download	<i>Receiving options</i> → <i>Roaming auto settings</i> → Select an item <i>Auto download</i> : Mail Service Center sends complete S! Mail messages automatically <i>Manual retrieval</i> : Mail Service Center sends S! Mail Notice; retrieve complete message ● When you set <i>Auto download</i> , an entire message including any attachments will be automatically downloaded, resulting in high Packet Communication fees for your messaging overseas.
Insert or hide Signature	Default Off	<i>Signature</i> → <i>Auto insert</i> → Select an item
Edit Signature		<i>Signature</i> → <i>Signature texts</i> → Enter a signature
Set attached image appearance	Default Double-sized	<i>Picture appearance</i> → Select an item
Set attached image auto playback	Default On	<i>Auto play file</i> → Under <i>Picture</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Set attached sound auto playback	Default Off	<i>Auto play file</i> → Under <i>Sound</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>

SMS

Start HereTap Messaging → *Settings* → *SMS settings*

Set Mail Service Center message expiry time	Default None	<i>Expiry time</i> → Select an item ● Upon expiry Mail Service Center SMS messages are automatically deleted.
Set Message Center Number	Default Setting 1 +819066519300	<i>Message center</i> → Select an item
Change character code	Default Unicode	<i>Char-code</i> → Select an item

Internet Settings

Yahoo! Keitai

Start HereTap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → *Yahoo! Keitai browser settings*

Show or hide Navigation Bar in a page	Default On	Under <i>Navigation bar</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Change page font size	Default Standard	<i>Font size</i> → Select an item
Set page scroll unit	Default Single line	<i>Scroll unit</i> → Select an item
Show or hide page images	Default On	<i>Downloads</i> → Under <i>Display image</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> ● Set <i>Off</i> to help reduce download time.
Play or mute page sounds	Default On	<i>Downloads</i> → Under <i>Play sounds</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> ● Set <i>Off</i> to help reduce download time.
Set Save Location for images in a page, etc	Default Phone	<i>Save to</i> → <i>Phone/Memory card/Ask each time</i> ● To save a file to Memory Card, insert Memory Card.
Delete cache/Cookie/certificates		<i>Memory manager</i> → Select an item → <i>Yes</i>
Show or hide Manufacture Number	Default On	<i>Security</i> → Under <i>Manufacture number</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> ● <i>On</i> : Handset automatically sends Manufacture Number to websites upon request as user ID.
Send or hide Referer	Default Send	<i>Security</i> → <i>Send referer</i> → Select an item
Select Cookie setting	Default Enabled	<i>Security</i> → <i>Cookies</i> → Select an item
Select Script setting	Default Ask NW access	<i>Security</i> → <i>Script</i> → Select an item

Confirm Root Certificate		<i>Security</i> → <i>Root certificates</i> → Select a certificate
Set Certificate retention period	Default Per browsing	<i>Security</i> → <i>Certificate retention</i> → Select an item
Initialize Browser		<i>Initialized browser</i> → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → <i>Yes</i>
Reset settings		<i>Reset settings</i> → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → <i>Yes</i>

PC Site Browser

Start Here Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai → *PC site browser* → *PC site browser settings*

Change page font size	Default Standard	<i>Font size</i> → Select an item
Show or hide page navigation when zooming	Default On	Under <i>Page navigation</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Show or hide page images	Default On	<i>Downloads</i> → Under <i>Display image</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> ● Set <i>Off</i> to help reduce download time.
Play or mute page sounds	Default On	<i>Downloads</i> → Under <i>Play sounds</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> ● Set <i>Off</i> to help reduce download time.
Set Save Location for images in a page, etc	Default Phone	<i>Save to</i> → <i>Phone/Memory card/Ask each time</i> ● To save a file to Memory Card, insert Memory Card.
Delete cache/Cookie/certificates		<i>Memory manager</i> → Select an item → <i>Yes</i>
Show or hide Manufacture Number	Default On	<i>Security</i> → Under <i>Manufacture number</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> ● <i>On</i> : Handset automatically sends Manufacture Number to websites upon request as user ID.
Send or hide Referer	Default Send	<i>Security</i> → <i>Send referer</i> → Select an item
Select Cookie setting	Default Enabled	<i>Security</i> → <i>Cookies</i> → Select an item
Select Script setting	Default On	<i>Security</i> → <i>Script</i> → Select an item
Confirm Root Certificate		<i>Security</i> → <i>Root certificates</i> → Select a certificate

Set Certificate retention period	Default Per browsing	<i>Security</i> → <i>Certificate retention</i> → Select an item
Show or hide warning	Default Activate PC Site Browser: On, Switch to Yahoo! Keitai: On	<i>Warning messages</i> → Under <i>Activate PC site browser</i> or <i>Switch to Yahoo! Keitai, On or Off</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Show or hide PC Site Browser activation, or Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser switching warning.
Initialize Browser		<i>Initialized browser</i> → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → <i>Yes</i>
Reset settings		<i>Reset settings</i> → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → <i>Yes</i>


Settings

Digital TV Settings

TV Alarm

Start Here


Tap Menu → *TV* → *Settings* → *TV alarm*

Set Alarm	Default On	Under <i>Alarm, On or Off</i>
Set alert tone	Default Samsung Tune.mp4	<i>Alert tone</i> → Select a save location → Select a file <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tap  to playback.
Set volume	Default Level 3	Adjust Volume on Volume field
Set vibration	Default Off	<i>Vibration</i> → Select an item
Set notification light	Default On	Under <i>Light, On or Off</i>
Set reminder time	Default 1 minute before	<i>Reminder time</i> → Select an item
Set alarm duration	Default 10 seconds	<i>Duration</i> → Select an item
Set alarm sound or vibration in Manner mode	Default Alarm sound:Off, Vibration:On	<i>Manner mode setting</i> → Under <i>Alarm sound/Vibration, On or Off</i>

Data Broadcast

Start Here

 Tap Menu → *TV* → *Settings* → *Set broadcast data*

Set recording type	Default Image+Text	<i>Set recording</i> → Select an item
Select save location	Default Phone	<i>Image location</i> → Select an item
Select connection notification type	Default Ask each time	<i>Notify connection</i> → Select an item
Show or hide Manufacture Number	Default Off	Under <i>Manufacture number</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Delete station data		<i>Delete station data</i> →  → <i>Yes</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To delete all stations, tap <i>Delete all</i> → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → <i>Yes</i>

Display and Sound

Start Here

 Tap Menu → *TV* → *Settings*

Show or hide indicators in Landscape view	Default On	<i>Display</i> → Under <i>Display pict</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Set whether to display 4:3 videos in Landscape view	Default Normal	<i>Display</i> → <i>Landscape style</i> → Select an item
Set whether to display 4:3 videos in Portrait view	Default Normal	<i>Display</i> → <i>Portrait style</i> → Select an item
Adjust Display brightness	Default Level 3	<i>Display</i> → Adjust brightness on setting field <ul style="list-style-type: none"> This setting is only effective when the backlight brightness is set to <i>Manual</i>.
Adjust sound quality	Default Normal	<i>Sound</i> → <i>Sound mode</i> → Select an item
Select language	Default Main	<i>Sound</i> → <i>Sound language</i> → Select an item
Select output device	Default Phone/Earphone	<i>Sound</i> → <i>Sound output</i> → Select an item

Recording



Set Save Location	Default Memory card	Tap Menu → <i>TV</i> → <i>Settings</i> → <i>Save recording to</i> → Select an item
-------------------	----------------------------	--

Incoming Calls & Alarms

Handle Incoming Calls & Alarms

Default Voice call/Video call: Call priority, Alarms: Alarm priority

Tap Menu → *TV* → *Settings* → *Calls & Alarms* → Select an item → Select action

- When *Call priority* or *Alarm priority* is set, TV window pauses temporarily and incoming call window or alarm window appears.
- When *Notice a call* or *Alarm notice* is set, a notification appears at top of Display and handset vibrates (TV reception continues). Press  to accept a call; press  to hold a call.

Auto Power Off

End TV after set duration

Default Off



Tap Menu → *TV* → *Settings* → *Auto power off* → Select an item

 **Settings**

Camera Settings

Camera & Video

Start Here

  (2 + seconds)

Set Anti-Shake

Default Off

 →  → under *Anti-shake, On* or *Off*

- Anti-Shake is not available when Wide Dynamic Range is set to *On*.

Activate or cancel Auto Save

Default On

 →  → under *Auto save, On* or *Off*

- *On*: Images or video is automatically saved after capturing or recording.
- *Off*: Select save or cancel the image.

Set Contrast

Default 0

 →  → *Contrast* → Select an item

Set Saturation

Default 0

 →  → *Saturation* → Select an item

Set Sharpness

Default 0

 →  → *Sharpness* → Select an item

Adjusting Brightness

Default 0

 → Adjust brightness

Setting Shooting Size

Default Wallpaper 480x800

Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder → *Size* → Select an item

Photo

Start Here

 (2 + seconds) → 

Select Quality	Default Normal	<i>Quality</i> → Select an item
Set ISO	Default Auto	<i>ISO</i> → Select an item
Set Exposure metering	Default Center-weight	<i>Exposure metering</i> → Select an item
Set Wide Dynamic Range	Default Off	Under <i>Wide dynamic range</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Setting this to <i>On</i> automatically adjusts your photo taken in a backlight situation or environment where the brightness difference is extreme that would otherwise be too bright or too dark. Wide Dynamic Range is not available when Anti-Shake is set to <i>On</i>.
Set save location when Memory Card is inserted	Default Phone	<i>Save to</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When image size is set to <i>Mail</i> or <i>Wide S</i>, <i>Digital camera</i> is unselectable. This setting is active with Memory Card inserted. If Memory Card is not inserted, images are automatically saved to <i>Phone</i>.
Show or hide Guideline	Default Off	Under <i>Guideline</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Set Face Link Display	Default Off	Under <i>Face link display</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When you set this <i>On</i>, after the face you captured is recognized, the name linked to Face Link appears.
Set Shutter Sound	Default Pattern1	<i>Shutter sound</i> → Select an item

Video

Start Here

 (2 + seconds) →  → *Video* → 

Select Quality	Default Normal	<i>Quality</i> → Select an item
Set save location	Default Phone	Under <i>Save to</i> , <i>Phone</i> or <i>Memory card</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To save a file to Memory Card, insert Memory Card.
Show or hide Guideline	Default Off	Under <i>Guideline</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>

Media Player Settings

Music

Start Here

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Settings* → *Music*

Set Repeat mode	Default All	<i>Repeat mode</i> → Select an item ● Play a single track repeatedly, all music, or all files in playlist repeatedly.
Set Shuffle	Default Off	Under <i>Shuffle, On or Off</i>
Set Equalizer	Default Off	<i>Equalizer</i> → Select an item ● Set <i>Equalizer</i> only when using Stereo Earphone Microphone or Bluetooth® -compatible stereo headphone.
Set 3D sound	Default Off	Under <i>3D sound, On or Off</i> ● Set <i>3D sound</i> only when using Stereo Earphone Microphone or Bluetooth® -compatible stereo headphone.

Movie

Start Here

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Settings* → *Movie*

Set Repeat mode	Default All	<i>Repeat mode</i> → Select an item ● Play a single file repeatedly, all movies, or all files in playlist repeatedly.
Set Shuffle	Default Off	Under <i>Shuffle, On or Off</i>
Set Backlight	Default Always On	<i>Backlight</i> → Select an item
Set Portrait style	Default 480×360	<i>Portrait style</i> → Select an item
Set Landscape style	Default Normal	<i>Landscape style</i> → Select an item
Show or hide movies thumbnails	Default On	Under <i>Thumbnail display, On or Off</i>
Access or ignore linked information	Default On	Under <i>Web link, On or Off</i> ● <i>On</i> : After playing a file with linked info, access confirmation appears.

Entertainment Setting

S! Information Channel

Start Here



Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Information Channel/Weather*
→ *Weather Indicator* → *Settings*

Set Weather Indicator update notification	Default On	Under <i>Weather notification</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Set Weather Indicator automatic update	Default On	Under <i>Icon update</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>

S! Applications

Start Here

Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Appli* → *Settings*

Set S! Appli Volume	Default 3	Adjust volume on Volume field
Adjust Display Backlight setting	Default Normal settings	<i>Backlight</i> → <i>Always On</i> or <i>Always Off</i> or <i>Normal settings</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When <i>Normal settings</i> is set, settings of <i>Backlight</i> in <i>Display settings</i> is applied.
Set S! Appli Vibration settings	Default On	Under <i>Vibration</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Set operation of incoming call or alarm or S! Appli start request. Default Voice Call/Video Call: Call Priority, Alarms: Alarm Priority, S! Appli Start Request: Start notice		<i>Calls & Alarms</i> → Select an item → Select action <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When <i>Call Priority</i> or <i>Alarm priority</i> or <i>Start priority</i> is set, S! Appli pauses temporarily and incoming call, alarm or start request window appears. When <i>Notice a call</i>, <i>Alarm notice</i> or <i>Start notice</i> is set, Call, Alarm or Start request Notification appears in the top of Display. Press  to receive a call. Press  to hold a call. Even when <i>Notice a call</i> is set, if Answering machine is <i>On</i>, S! Appli pauses and Answering machine activates after the response time.
Reset settings of S! Appli		<i>Set to default</i> → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → <i>Yes</i>

Security Settings

Start Here Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security*

Activate or cancel Phone Lock	Default Off	Under <i>Phone lock, On or Off</i> → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
Activate or cancel Password Lock	Default Off	<i>Password lock</i> → Select an item → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
Change Phone Password	Default 9999	<i>Change password</i> → Enter current password → Tap OK → Enter new password → Tap OK → Enter new password again → Tap OK
Activate or cancel Facial recognition	Default Off	<i>Facial recognition</i> → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Under <i>On/Off, On or Off</i> → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
Save Facial recognition User	Default Empty	<i>Facial recognition</i> → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → <i>User registration</i> → <i>User 1</i> to <i>User 5</i> → Select image 1 to image 5 → Tap Start → Tap Save
Show or hide Guidance	Default Preview	<i>Facial recognition</i> → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → <i>Guidance</i> → Select an item
Set Security Level	Default Normal	<i>Facial recognition</i> → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → <i>Security level</i> → Select an item
Activate or cancel Function Lock	Default Unlock all	<i>Function lock</i> → Check an item to lock → Tap Save → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
Activate or cancel Secret mode	Default Hide	<i>Secret mode</i> → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Select an item
Activate or cancel USIM Lock	Default Off	Under <i>USIM lock, On or Off</i> → Enter USIM password (4 to 8 digits) → Tap OK → Enter USIM password again as required → Tap OK
Activate or cancel PIN Certification	Default Off	Under <i>PIN certification, On or Off</i> → Enter PIN → Tap OK
Change PIN		<i>Change PIN</i> → Enter current PIN → Tap OK → Enter new PIN → Tap OK → Enter new PIN again → Tap OK
Change PIN2		<i>Change PIN2</i> → Enter current PIN2 → Tap OK → Enter new PIN2 → Tap OK → Enter new PIN2 again → Tap OK
Set IP service setting	Default Off	Under <i>IP service setting, On or Off</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Some functions are only available when you set IP service setting to <i>On</i>.
Delete Phonebook entries, messages, etc.		<i>All reset</i> → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → <i>Yes</i>
Restore Settings to default values		<i>Reset settings</i> → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → <i>Yes</i>

Memory Settings

Start Here Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Memory settings*

Check Memory Card details	<p><i>Memory card</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Check Memory Card name, memory capacity, or remaining memory.
Rename Memory Card	<p><i>Memory card</i> → <i>Name</i> → Enter name</p>
Format Memory Card	<p><i>Memory card</i> → Tap Format → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → <i>Yes</i></p>
Backup Memory	<p><i>Memory card</i> → Tap Backup → <i>Yes</i> → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Select an item → <i>Yes</i></p>
Restore Memory	<p><i>Memory card</i> → Tap Restore → <i>Yes</i> → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Select an item → Select a file → <i>Add</i> or <i>Overwrite</i></p>
Confirm total or remaining Phone Memory	<p><i>Phone memory</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● View Phone memory capacity or remaining memory.
Clear Phone Memory	<p><i>Phone memory</i> → Tap Clear → Check an item to clear → Tap Clear → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → <i>Yes</i></p>
Set Default Memory to Phone or Memory Card	<p><i>Set default memory</i> → Select an item</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● With Memory Card inserted, select <i>Phone</i> or <i>Memory card</i>. Available when editing images, saving S! Mail attachments, downloading files, receiving data via Bluetooth®, etc. ● Even when <i>Memory card</i> or <i>Ask each time</i> is selected with no Memory Card inserted, files are automatically saved to handset.
View Memory status	<p><i>Memory status</i> → Select an item</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To delete viewed memory, tap Delete (P.12-15 Deleting Registered/Saved Data).


Default Phone

Connectivity Settings

Bluetooth®

Start Here

Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth*

Activate or cancel Bluetooth® functions	Default Off	Tap On, Tap Off
Search for a new Bluetooth® device		<i>Search</i> → Device responds, drag it to  → Enter Authorization Code (4 to 16 digits) → Tap OK → Enter same code on device within 30 seconds
Transfer all Phonebook, Calender/Tasks or Bookmarks at once		Tap Transfer all → Drag device to connect to  → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Select an item
Edit handset name	Default 9315C	Tap More → <i>Settings</i> → Tap Bluetooth name → Edit name
Confirm handset device address		Tap More → <i>Settings</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Address appears on Bluetooth address field.
Search/save from Bluetooth® devices	Default Show my phone	Tap More → <i>Settings</i> → <i>My phone's visibility</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To search and save from other Bluetooth® devices, make handset visible.
Set Secure mode	Default On	Tap More → <i>Settings</i> → Under <i>Secure mode</i> , <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On: A confirmation appears before transfers.
Adjust Handsfree setting	Default Handsfree mode	Tap More → <i>Settings</i> → <i>Handsfree</i> → Select an item <i>Private mode</i> : Use Microphone for handset calls or handsfree device for device calls. <i>Handsfree mode</i> : Talk via handsfree device.
Set Answering mode	Default Normal	Tap More → <i>Settings</i> → <i>Answering mode</i> → Select an item
Set Answer time	Default 4 seconds	Tap More → <i>Settings</i> → <i>Answer time</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To set answer time, <i>select Automatic</i> in <i>Answering mode</i>.
Activate or cancel S! Appli confirmation	Default On	Tap More → <i>Settings</i> → S! Appli request → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Confirm available Bluetooth® functions		Tap More → <i>Settings</i> → <i>Bluetooth services</i> → Select an item

Infrared**Start Here** Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Infrared*

Activate or cancel Infrared transmission	Default Off	Under <i>On/Off, On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Transfer account details		<i>Transfer account details</i>
Transfer files		<i>Transfer files</i> → Select data folder → Select files → <i>Send</i>
Transfer all Phonebook, Calender/Tasks or Bookmarks at once		<i>Transfer all</i> → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Select an item → Enter Authorization Code (4 digits) → Tap OK <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For <i>Phonebook</i>, choose <i>Yes</i> to transfer images.

USB**Start Here** Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *USB mode*

Activate Mass Storage		<i>Mass storage</i> → <i>Yes</i> → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Connect handset to PC via USB Cable → Exchange files with PC <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • You need to connect handset and your PC before this operation.
Activate Synch Mode to PC		<i>MTP synch mode</i> → <i>Yes</i> → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Exchange files with PC <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • You need to connect handset and your PC before this operation.

Network**Start Here** Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity*

Retrieve Network Information manually		<i>Retrieve NW info</i> → <i>Yes</i> or <i>No</i>
---------------------------------------	--	---

Appendix



Troubleshooting	15-2
Software Update	15-4
Function List	15-5
Tool Bar Menu.....	15-5
Main Menu	15-6
Text Entry Window Key Assignments	15-8
Text Entry Window Keys	15-8
Text Entry Keys.....	15-9
Symbols	15-11
Double-byte Symbols.....	15-11
Single-byte Symbols.....	15-11
Symbol Conversions.....	15-11
Pictograms	15-12
Memory	15-13
Specifications	15-13
Index	15-15
Objective Index	15-21
Advanced Settings Index	15-24
Warranty & Service	15-25
Customer Service	15-26

Troubleshooting

Handset does not turn on

- ☑ Is battery empty?
 - ➔ Replace or charge battery.
- ☑ Is battery installed in handset?
 - ➔ Install battery correctly.

When power is turned on, PIN entry window appears

- ☑ Is *PIN certification* set to *On*?
 - ➔ If *PIN certification* is *On*, enter PIN.

When power is turned on, USIM password entry window appears

- ☑ Is *USIM lock* set to *On*?
 - ➔ If *USIM lock* is *On*, enter USIM password.

Please insert USIM card, Incorrect USIM or USIM card failed appears when handset is turned on or executing a function

- ☑ Is USIM Card correctly installed?
 - ➔ Check to see if USIM Card is correctly installed. If the message appears even though USIM Card is correctly installed, it may be damaged.
- ☑ Is USIM Card still being loaded?
 - ➔ Try again after a while.
- ☑ Is an incorrect USIM Card used?
 - ➔ Check to see if correct USIM Card is used. Use USIM Card specified by SoftBank.
- ☑ Is there debris on USIM Card IC chip?
 - ➔ Remove debris with a clean, dry cloth, and then install USIM Card correctly.


圏外 or OUT appears and no calls can be made

- ☑ Handset is out-of-range.
 - ➔ Move to a place where the signal is stronger and try again.

Calls are interrupted or disconnected

- ☑ Does 圏外 or OUT appear?
 - ➔ Move to a place where the signal is stronger and try again.
- ☑ Is battery empty?
 - ➔ Replace or charge battery.

Unable to make a call

- ☑ Is Call Barring set?
 - ➔ Deactivate Call Barring.
- ☑ Is *Offline mode* set to *On*? ( appears)
 - ➔ Set *Offline mode* to *Off*.

Unable to open Phonebook entry, Data Folder, Call Log, Calendar, or Messaging

- ☑ Is *Function lock* set?
 - ➔ Cancel *Function lock*.

Clicking noise is heard during a call

- ☑ Noise may be generated when signal is weak or while moving between coverage areas.

Unable to charge battery

- ☑ Is AC Charger Connector securely inserted into handset?
 - ➔ Insert AC Charger Connector securely.
- ☑ Is AC Charger plug securely inserted?
 - ➔ Insert AC Charger plug securely.
- ☑ Is battery installed in handset?
 - ➔ Install battery correctly.
- ☑ Are handset terminals and AC Charger clean?
 - ➔ Clean contacts with a dry cotton swab.
- ☑ Was battery charged in ambient temperature below 5 °C or above 40 °C?
 - ➔ Charge battery in ambient temperature between 5 °C and 40 °C.
- ☑ Battery may need to be replaced.
 - ➔ Install a new battery.
- ☑ Does battery always lose its charge quickly after being charged?
 - ➔ Battery life has expired. Replace with a new battery.
- ☑ Does handset or battery become very warm during charging?
 - ➔ If the temperature rises too much, charging may stop. After handset and battery are cool, retry charging.

Devices become hot

- ☑ During charging, AC Charger may heat up.
- ☑ Handset may heat up during charging/long calls.
 - ➔ If handset is safe to touch, heat level is normal. If it is too hot to touch, immediately stop charging and contact Customer Service (☎ P.15-26).

■ Battery drains quickly

- ☑ Battery may drain quickly depending on the operating environment (Ambient temperature, charging conditions, or Signal Strength), operations, and settings.
- ➔ Use handset in an appropriate environment and reduce operations requiring high power (📞 P.1-9).

■ Unable to watch TV

- ☑ Is USIM Card removed?
- ➔ Unable to watch TV with no USIM Card inserted. Insert USIM Card.
- ☑ Is subscription terminated?
- ➔ TV is enabled only during subscription period.

■ Display flickers

- ☑ Is handset used near a fluorescent light?
- ➔ Use handset as far away from a fluorescent light as possible.

■ Display is dim or unlit

- ☑ This may be due to the characteristics of Display and not a problem. The time (seconds) until Display is dimmed or unlit can be changed by adjusting the Backlight time.

■ Unable to play music via speaker

- ☑ Is *Manner mode* set?
- ➔ Cancel *Manner mode*.
- ☑ Is the stereo earphone microphone connected?
- ➔ Disconnect the connector for the stereo earphone microphone (Optional) from handset.

■ Too many applications are already running. appears

- ☑ Too many functions are active.
- ➔ Close some.

■ Unable to establish Bluetooth® or USB connections using Samsung New PC Studio

- ☑ Is the USB driver installed? (for USB connection)
- ➔ If communications are executed connecting to a personal computer with USB cable, installing the driver is required. Download USB Driver Installer from SAMSUNG website (<http://jp.samsungmobile.com/pc/lineup/931download.html>) and install the driver.
- ☑ Is the connection method set correctly on the personal computer?
- ➔ Set the connection method to *USB* or *Bluetooth* on the Connection Manager of Samsung New PC Studio or the Connection Wizard for the communication in use.
- ☑ Are Bluetooth® or PC USB connection port and Samsung New PC Studio the same?
- ➔ Make sure port settings match those set for Samsung New PC Studio Connection Manager or Connection Wizard.

■ Phonebook entry, Message folder, schedule event in Calendar, or Tasks do not appear

- ☑ In *Security*, is *Secret mode* set to *Hide*?
- ➔ In *Security*, set *Secret mode* to *Show*.
- ☑ Is *Secret* under each function set to *On*?
- ➔ Select *Unlock temporarily* from More on the window to display information.

■ Sending message failed appears

- ☑ If send fails, error message and reason appear.
- ➔ Confirm reason and try again.

■ Service not allowed appears

- ☑ Handset is outside the service area.
- ➔ Send from within the service area.

■ Sending operation cannot be operated in offline mode appears

- ☑ In *Offline mode*, handset transmissions are disabled.
- ➔ Cancel *Offline mode* then try again.

■ Storage space short by * * bytes. Edit data folder files? appears

- ☑ Handset memory is full.
- ➔ Delete unnecessary files and try again.

■ Cannot download. File corrupt. appears

- ☑ File cannot be downloaded; cancel download.

■ Unable to call via Stereo Earphone Microphone (Optional) or Bluetooth®

- ☑ Is *Earphone call* set to *Off*?
- ➔ Even if *Earphone call* number is saved, if *Earphone call* is set to *Off* it will not be dialed. Set *Earphone call* to *On*.

Software Update

SoftBank releases firmware updates. Download as required. Choose *Update* or *Schedule update*.

1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Software update*

2 Tap Yes

- Handset connects to network.

3 Read Terms of Use → *Agree*

- Read Terms of Use before selecting *Agree*.

4 Tap PIN Code entry field → Enter Center Access Code (☎P.1-21) → Tap OK → Tap OK

5 Confirm result → Tap OK

6 Choose update method

To update immediately

Update now

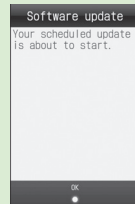
- Update starts. When complete, handset powers off and restarts; Notification appears.



To schedule later update

Schedule update → Tap Yes → Select schedule date → Select schedule time → Confirm schedule date & time → Tap OK

- For procedures, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Service.
- Confirming/downloading updates does not incur fees.
- At scheduled update time, message appears. Tap OK or wait ten seconds. Update will not start while handset is in use. When operation ends, a message window appears. However if operation does not end within ten minutes of scheduled update time, scheduled update is automatically canceled.



- To cancel Schedule update, perform Steps **1** to **4** and tap Yes → Tap Cancel schedule → Tap Yes on the check result screen.

Note

- Charge battery beforehand; if low, update may fail.
- If Scheduled update time arrives while handset is out-of-range, Software Update is canceled.
- Remain within strong, stable signal conditions.
- Handset Phonebook entries, media files, and other contents are not affected by software updates, but always back-up important information (note that some files cannot be copied). SoftBank is not liable for damage from lost information, etc.
- Handset transmissions are disabled during update.
- Update may take some time to complete.
- Update failure may disable handset. Contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.
- If updated handset fails to restart, remove and reinsert battery then power on. If this fails, call SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P.15-26).

Function List

Tool Bar Menu

Below are menu items displayed on Toolbar in Standby.

Toolbar Menu Item	Page
Phone	
Dial	P.3-2
Phone book	P.2-15
	P.2-18
Call log	P.3-10
Account details	P.1-14
Messaging	
Received msg.	P.4-10
	P.4-13
Create new	P.4-4
Retrieve new	P.4-22
Drafts	P.4-13
	P.4-24
Templates	P.4-13
	P.4-20
Sent msg.	P.4-13
Unsent msg.	P.4-13
Server mail	P.4-25
Create new SMS	P.4-7
Settings	P.14-11
Memory status	P.12-12

Toolbar Menu Item	Page
Y!Keitai*	
Yahoo! Keitai	P.5-3
Bookmarks	P.5-7
Saved pages	P.5-7
Enter URL	P.5-3
	P.5-4
History	P.5-9
	P.5-11
PC site browser	P.5-4
Yahoo! Keitai browser settings	P.14-15

* Tap Menu → Tap Y!Keitai to display the menu items shown in the table. Tap Y!Keitai to access Yahoo! Keitai main menu.

Main Menu

To display the below items in Standby, tap Menu.

Main Menu Item	Page
Oekaki anime	P.7-12
Photo Album	P.12-7
Media Player	
Music	P.8-5
Movie	P.8-7
Streaming	P.5-7
MTP synch mode	P.8-3
Settings	P.14-21
Infrared	
On/Off	P.14-26
Transfer account details	P.14-26
Transfer files	P.14-26
Transfer all	P.14-26
Camera	
Camera	P.7-6
Video camera	P.7-11
Bar code reader	P.10-10
TV	
Watch TV	P.6-4
Program guide	P.6-6
TV links	P.6-6
TV player	P.6-8
Reservation list	P.6-7
Settings	P.14-17


Main Menu Item	Page
Tools	
Alarm	P.10-4
Calculator	P.10-5
Converter	P.10-5
World clock	P.10-6
Notepad	P.10-7
Tasks	P.10-7
Voice recorder	P.10-8
Stopwatch	P.10-9
Countdown timer	P.10-9
Bar code reader	P.10-10
File viewer	P.10-11
Dictionary	P.10-12
Dummy call	P.10-13
Software update	P.15-4
Data Folder	
Pictures	P.12-2
Ring songs · tones	P.12-2
S! Appli	P.12-2
Music	P.12-2
Videos	P.12-2
Books	P.12-2
Message Templates	P.12-2
Flash®	P.12-2
Other documents	P.12-2
Memory status	P.12-3

Main Menu Item	Page
Entertainment	
S! Appli	P.9-3
S! Quick News	P.9-5
S! Information Channel/ Weather	P.9-6
S! Friend's Status	P.9-7
Near Chat	P.9-10
BookSurfing	P.9-12
Biorhythm	P.9-12
Number Place World	P.9-3
Touch Golf Pangya	P.9-4
Hidden Catch4	P.9-4
Dice	P.9-4
Random Ball	P.9-5
Calendar	P.10-3
Phonebook	
Phonebook	P.2-15
Create new entry	P.2-17
Call log	P.3-10
Account details	P.1-14
Favorites	P.3-7
S! Addressbook Back-up	P.13-11
Settings	P.14-11
Memory status	P.14-24








Main Menu Item	Page
Settings	
Sound settings	P.14-3
Display settings	P.14-5
Phone settings	P.14-2
Touch panel	P.14-3
Security	P.14-23
Call settings	P.14-6
Manner mode settings	P.14-6
Connectivity	P.14-25
Memory settings	P.14-24

Text Entry Window Key Assignments

Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Tap a key repeatedly until the target character appears.

 is assigned to switch Pictograms/Single-byte Symbols/Double-byte Symbols/Emoticons entry mode. Displayed key differ depending on the text entry mode.

Text Entry Window Keys

Key	Purpose
 / 	Move cursor, left, right
	Enter line break
 / 	Delete one character before cursor or highlighted text
 / 	Reverse toggle characters assigned to the same key before finalizing character selection (except Numbers)

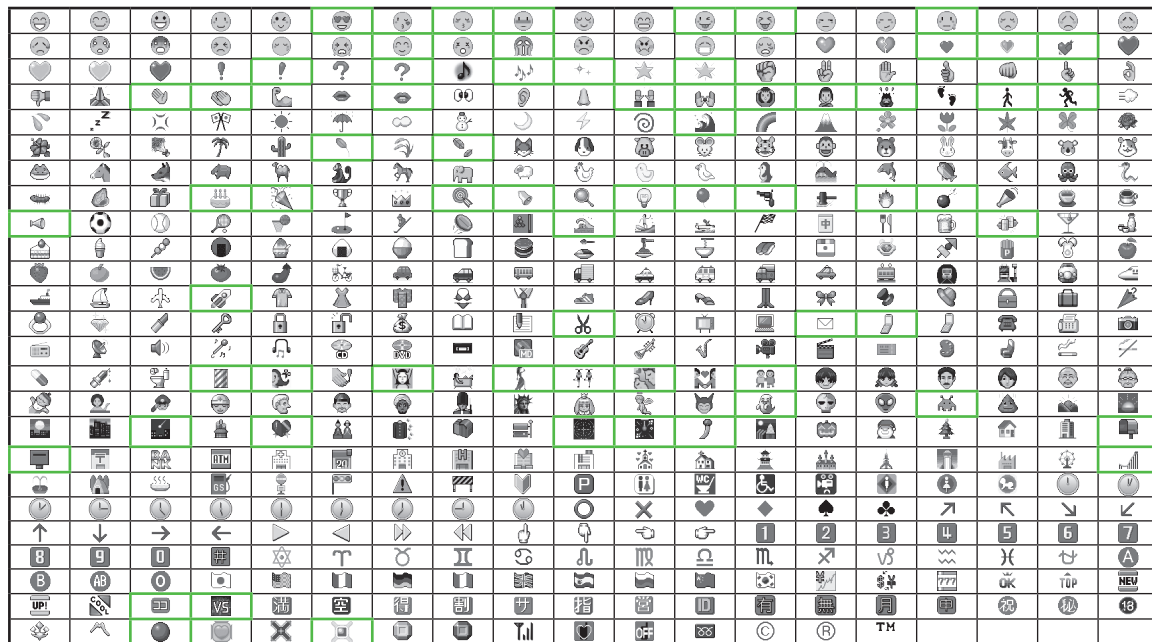
Text Entry Keys

Key	Kanji/Hiragana	Key (Double-/Single-byte)	Katakana
あ 1 .@	あいうえおあいうえお 1	ア / ア	アイウエオアイウエオ 1
か 2 ABC	かきくけこ 2	カ / カ	カキクケコ 2
さ 3 DEF	さしすせそ 3	サ / サ	サシスセソ 3
た 4 GHI	たちつとっ 4	タ / タ	タチツテトツ 4
な 5 JKL	なにぬねの 5	ナ / ナ	ナニヌネノ 5
は 6 MNO	はひふへほ 6	ハ / ハ	ハヒフヘホ 6
ま 7 PQRS	まみむめも 7	マ / マ	マミムメモ 7
や 8 TUV	やゆよやゆよ 8	ヤ / ヤ	ヤユヨヤユヨ 8
ら 9 WXYZ	らりるれろ 9	ラ / ラ	ラリルレロ 9
わ 0 ~	わをんー 〈スペース〉 0	ワ / ワ	ワヲンー 〈スペース〉 0
.,?!	., ? !		
..小 英/記	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Add ° / ° to unfixed, convertible kana ● Switch Upper case and lower case. (only when conversion is possible) ● Switch to Pictograms/Single-byte Symbols/Double-byte Symbols/Emoticons entry mode 		

Key	Alphanumerics	Key (Double-/Single-byte)	Numbers
A/a (Double-byte) / A/a (Single-byte) ¹	.@-_/:~ 1	1 / 1	1
ABC / abc / ABC / abc	ABCabc2	2 / 2	2
DEF / def / DEF / def	DEFdef3	3 / 3	3
GHI / ghi / GHI / ghi	GHIghi4	4 / 4	4
JKL / jkl / JKL / jkl	JKLjkl5	5 / 5	5
MNO / mno / MNO / mno	MNOmno6	6 / 6	6
PQRS / pqr s / PQRS / pqr s	PQRSpqrs7	7 / 7	7
TUV / tuv / TUV / tuv	TUVtuv8	8 / 8	8
WXYZ / wxyz / WXYZ / wxyz	WXYZwxyz9	9 / 9	9
␣ (Double-byte) / ␣ (Single-byte) ¹	<space>0	0 / 0	0
..?! (Double-byte) / ..?! (Single-byte) ¹	..?!	# / #	#
A/a (Double-byte) / A/a (Single-byte)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Switch Upper case and lower case. (only when conversion is possible) • Switch to Pictograms/ Single-byte Symbols/ Double-byte Symbols/ Emoticons entry mode 	A/a (Double-byte) / A/a (Single-byte)	Switch to Pictograms/ Single-byte Symbols/ Double-byte Symbols/ Emoticons entry mode

¹ Both when upper-/lower-case, the same key indicates.

Pictograms



- Pictograms with are animated.
- Some pictograms and animated pictograms may not appear properly on some models of SoftBank handsets or other devices.

Memory

S! Mail/ SMS (Phone memory)	Received msg.	Up to 1000 messages or 5MB
	Drafts	Up to 20 messages or 1MB
	Sent msg.	Up to 500 messages or 3MB
	Unsent msg.	Up to 20 messages or 1MB
SMS	USIM Card	Up to 10 messages
Data Folder	Pictures	Up to 9999 items (files/subfolders) per folder
	My Pictograms	
	Ring songs · tones	
	S! Appli	
	Music	
	Videos	
	Books	
	Message Templates	
	Flash®	
	Flash® Ringtones	
Other documents		

Specifications

Handset specifications may change without prior notice.

SoftBank 931SC

Item	Specification
Weight	111.4 g*
Continuous Talk Time	Voice Call: 259 minutes (3G)*/300 minutes (GSM)* Video Call: 120 minutes*
Continuous Standby Time (Display off)	400 hours (3G)*/422 hours (GSM)*
Dimensions (W x H x D)	50.9 x 111.2 x 13.1 mm *
Maximum Output	0.25 W

* Approximate value

- Handset with battery installed.
- Battery Time is calculated by SoftBank under stable signal conditions. Calling in poor signal conditions or leaving handset on out-of-range will consume more power and may reduce Battery Time by more than half.
- Frequent handset operations requiring Backlight (e.g., Yahoo! Keitai) may reduce Continuous Talk Time and Continuous Standby Time.
- Using video for Wallpaper may significantly reduce Continuous Talking and Continuous Standby Time.
- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a battery in stable signal conditions. Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery with handset closed without calls or operations, in Standby, in stable signal conditions. Alternating between usage and Standby shortens Continuous Talk Time and Continuous Standby Time. Talk Time/Standby Time may vary by environment (battery status, ambient temperature, etc.).

Battery

Item	Specification
Voltage	3.7 V
Type	Lithium-ion
Capacity	960 mAh
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 54.2 x 36.0 x 4.7 mm (without protruding parts)

Index

A

AC Charger	1-12
Account details	1-14
Reset	3-26
Alarms	10-4
All Reset	11-9
Answering Machine	3-9
Cancel	3-9
Delete records	3-4
Play records	3-4
Set	3-9
Auto answer	3-25, 14-9
Delete	3-25
Auto answer list	
Add	3-25
Auto Lock	11-4
Auto redial	14-10
Bar Code Reader	10-10
Create QR Code	10-11
Scanning	10-10, 10-20
Battery	1-9, 1-10
Inserting & Removing	1-10

B

Biorhythm	9-12
Black List	3-9
Bluetooth®	13-5
Activate/Cancel	13-6
Address	14-25
Answering mode	14-25
Applicable profiles	13-5
Authorization Code	13-6
Bluetooth services	14-25
Connectivity	13-6
Delete paired devices	13-6
Device	13-7
Edit device name	14-25
Paired device	13-6
Paired Devices Indicators	13-6
Print	12-14
Receive data	13-7
Search Devices	13-13
Secure mode	14-25
Send data	13-6
Visibility	14-25
Bookmark	5-7
Delete	5-13
Internet connection	5-7
Save	5-7
Send URL	5-14
BookSurfing®	9-12

C

Cache	5-2
Calculator	10-5
Calendar	10-3
Delete schedule	10-14
Save schedule	10-3, 10-13
Schedule	10-3
View schedule	10-4, 10-14
Calibrate Touch Panel	14-3
Call	
Phonebook	2-19
Call barring service	3-15, 3-20
Caller ID service	3-15, 3-21
Call forwarding service	3-15, 3-17
Call log	3-10
Check	3-10
Delete	3-11
Call time & cost	
Check	3-12
Reset	3-12
Set max cost limit	14-8
Show charge after call	14-8
Call waiting service	3-15, 3-18
Camera	7-3
Anti-Shake	14-19
Attach to message for sending still image	7-15, 7-17
Capture video	7-11

Editing Still Images	7-12
Effects	7-15, 7-17
Frame shot	7-7
Macro	7-15, 7-17
Multi shot	7-7
Panorama shot	7-8
Photo combination	7-7
Quick Play	7-8, 7-11
Scene	7-6
Send a still image via Bluetooth®	7-15, 7-17
Send a still image via infrared	7-15, 7-17
Settings	14-20
Timer	7-15, 7-17
Viewfinder	7-3, 7-9
Wide dynamic range	14-20
Cancel PIN lock	11-4
Center Access Code	1-21
Change mode settings	1-16
Changing PIN/PIN2	11-3
Charge Battery	1-11
Charger Port	1-2
Clear memory	11-8
Conference call service	3-15, 3-19
Content Key info	12-14
Converter	10-5
Countdown Timer	10-9
Country number	14-7

D

Data Folder	12-2
Date & Time	14-2
Default mode settings	1-17
Dice	9-4
Dictionary	10-12
Digital TV	6-2
Alarm	14-17
Area Setup	6-4
Auto power off	14-19
Calls & Alarms	14-19
Data Broadcast	6-6
Delete station data	14-18
Display brightness	14-18
Duration	14-17
Image location	14-18
Light	14-17
Manufacture number	14-18
Notify connection	14-18
One Seg	6-2
Record programs	6-7
Reminder time	14-17
Save Location	14-18
Set alert tone	14-17
Set recording	14-18
Settings	6-13, 14-17
Sound language	14-18
Sound mode	14-18

Sound output	14-18
Subtitle Display	6-12
Timer recording	6-9
TV Links	6-6
TV player	6-8
TV Window	6-5
Vibration	14-17
Volume	14-17
Watch TV	6-4

Display	1-3
Backlight	14-5
Brightness	14-5
Operator name	14-5
Wallpaper	2-5
Display language	14-2
Download Content Key	8-10, 12-12
Dummy Call	10-13

E

Earphone call	14-10
Emergency call	3-8
Emergency Location Report	3-8
External Device Port	1-2

F

Face Link	
Save	12-5
Use	12-6

Facial Recognition	11-5
Settings	11-5
User registration	11-6
File	12-4, 12-8
Copy	12-9
Delete	12-9
Icon	12-4
Lock/Unlock	12-14
Rename	12-8
Set images as Wallpaper etc.	12-15
Set Ringtone	12-15
Sort	12-14
File Viewer	10-11
Folder	12-8
Copy	12-9
Create	12-8
Delete	12-9
Rename	12-8
Function Lock	11-7
G	
Games	9-3
Global Roaming	3-13
H	
Hearing volume	3-22
Hidden Catch4	9-4

History	8-9
Delete	4-18, 5-9, 5-11, 8-13
Internet connection	5-3, 5-4
Media Player	8-9
S! Addressbook Back-up	13-13
S! Mail	4-18
SMS	4-21
Streaming	8-9
Hold	1-5
Hold incoming call	3-8
Hold Video Call	3-24
I	
Icon	
Attached file	4-5
Call Log Record	3-11
Data Folder	12-2
Device	13-6
Display	1-3
File list	12-4
Message	4-11
Message list	4-10
Mode	1-17
Movie Window	8-6
Music Window	8-4
My Status	9-9
Oekaki anime	7-13
Schedule	10-3
S! Friend's Status	9-8

Shooting mode (still image)	7-3
Shooting mode (video)	7-9
Video Call	3-5
Weather	9-6
Widget	2-2, 9-17

Image Viewer	12-4
Incoming light	1-19
Infrared	13-3
Authorization Code	13-3
Receive data	13-4
Send data	13-3
International Code	14-7
Internet	5-2
Internet page	5-2, 5-5
Font size	5-9, 5-11

K	
Key Lock	1-15

L	
Language	14-2
Lock	11-3
Auto lock	11-4
Facial	11-5
Function lock	11-7
Password lock	11-4
Phone lock	11-3
PIN	11-4

Touch Panel and Key	1-15
USIM Lock	11-5

Log

Call log	3-10
----------------	------

M

Mailbox

Drafts	4-13
Received message	4-13
Sent message	4-13
Templates	4-13
Unsent	4-13

Make a call

Make a Video Call

Make international calls

Manner mode

Mass Storage

Media Player

Add to playlist	8-10, 8-11
Create playlist	8-8
Download	8-3
Play movie	8-7
Play music	8-5
Play playlist	8-8
Repeat mode	14-21
Settings	14-21

Memory Card

Insert/Remove	12-11
---------------------	-------

Memory Card backup

Memory Status

Menu Operations

Message

3D Pictograms	4-9, 4-20, 4-22, 4-23, 14-12
Action settings	4-19
Attach file	4-5
Change folder name	4-26
Create folder	4-16
Create (S! Mail)	4-4
Create (SMS)	4-7
Delete	4-15, 4-23
Delete folder	4-26
Delete messages in server	4-26
Delete templates	4-15
Details	4-24
Draft message icon	4-11
Feeling settings	4-19
Font size	4-23
Forward	4-12
Forward messages in server	4-26
Graphic mail	4-6, 4-20
Icon (attached file)	4-5
Lock/Unlock	4-14
Mail server	4-10
Memory status	4-26
Message notice	14-12
Move	4-16
Move SMS	4-24
Received message icon	4-11

Receive server mail	4-26
Receiving mail list message	4-26
Reply	4-12
Retrieve all mails	4-26
Save attachment	4-16, 4-23
Save templates	4-20
Save to drafts	4-19, 4-22
Send draft message	4-24
Sending options	4-19, 4-22
Send unsent message	4-25
Sent message icon	4-11
Server mail	4-25
Server mail memory	4-26
Set Secret	4-26
Setting address	4-4
S! Mail	4-2
SMS	4-2, 4-21
Sort	4-17, 4-24
Unsent message icon	4-11
Use templates	4-8
View	4-9, 4-10
View Attachment	4-23

Motion Control

Mute

N

Near Chat

Network mode

Network Password	1-21
Change	3-21
Notepad	10-7
Notification light	1-20
Number Place World	9-3

O

Oekaki anime	7-12
Send	7-19
Offline mode	1-16

P

Password lock	11-4
PC Site Browser	5-4
Certificate retention	14-17
Copy text	5-10
Delete certificates	14-16
Details	5-11
Enter URL	5-4
Font size	14-5
Manufacture number	14-16
PC screen	5-12
Script	14-16
Search	5-10
Send URL	5-11
Phonebook	2-15
Copy	2-23
Create Message	2-22
Delete	2-20

Edit	2-23
Entry	2-17
Search	2-18
Set Secret mode	2-22

Phone lock	11-3
Phone Number (Account details)	1-14
Phone Password	1-21, 11-3
Photo Album	12-7
PIN	11-4
PIN2 Code	1-21
PIN Certification	11-4
PIN Code	1-21
PIN lock	11-4
Power On/Off	1-13
Preferred network	3-14
Print Still Images	7-14
PUK Code	11-4

R

Random Ball	9-5
Receive a call	3-2
Receive a Video Call	3-6
Record	3-3
Reject incoming calls	
Black List	3-25
Edit black list	14-10
Payphone	3-10

Set reject number	3-9
Unavailable	3-10
Unknown	3-10
Withheld	3-10

Reset settings	11-8
Ringtone	1-18
Ringtone reducer	14-10
Ringtone/Vibration	2-4

S

S! Addressbook Back-up	13-11
Sync log	13-13
Sync mode	13-11
S! Applications	9-3
Saved Pages	5-7
Delete	5-15
Rename	5-15
Save	5-7
View	5-7
Secret mode	11-7
Security Code	1-21
Select 3G/GMS	3-13
Sending DTMF	3-23, 3-25
Set default memory	14-24
S! Friend's Status	9-7
Members list	9-7
My Status	9-7, 9-9
S! Friend's Status notification	9-7

Shortcuts Key	2-3
S! Information Channel	9-6
View update information	9-6
Weather indicator	9-6
S! Information Channel/Weather	
Settings	14-22
S! Information Channel/Weather Indicator	
Register	9-6
Slide show	2-5, 12-13
Software update	15-4
Sounds & Vibration	14-3
Speaker phone call	3-22, 3-24
S! Quick News	9-5
Delete	9-6
Refresh	9-6
Register	9-5
SSL/TLS	5-2
Stopwatch	10-9
Streaming	5-7
Swipe	1-5
Symbols	15-11
System sounds	1-19

T

Tap	1-5
Tasks	10-7
Delete	10-19

Text Entry	2-7
Copy	2-21
Cut	2-21
Delete	2-13
Edit	2-13
Emoticons	2-11
Entry mode	2-9
Handwriting	2-9
Keypad	2-9
Line Break	2-11
Paste	2-21
Pictograms	2-11
Space	2-11
Symbol	2-10
Undo	2-21
Time zone	14-2
Toolbar	ii
Touch Golf Pangya	9-4
Touch Panel & Key Lock	1-15
Touch Panel Operations	iii, 1-5, 1-6

U

Unanswered Call	3-2
USB connection	13-8
User's Dictionary	2-14
Delete	2-21
Save	2-14

USIM Card	1-7
Inserting & Removing	1-8
USIM Lock	11-5
USIM Password	11-5
Using Main Menu	2-3
Using Toolbar	2-2
Using Widgets	2-2

V

vFile	12-2, 12-15
Vibration	1-19, 2-4
Video Call	3-5
Adjust volume	3-6
Alternative picture	14-8
Auto answer	14-9
Mute	3-24
Put a Video Call on hold	3-24
Retry with	14-9
Show my image	14-9
Speaker phone call	3-24
View Graphics/Animation	12-5
Voice Call	3-2
Adjust ringer volume	3-2
Adjust volume	3-3
Mute	3-22
Put a call on hold	3-22
Speaker phone call	3-22
Whisper	3-22

Vicemail service	3-15, 3-16
Voice recorder	10-8
Lock/Unlock sound files	10-20
Play sound files	10-9
Record sound	10-8
Send sound files	10-19
Volume	1-18

W

Widgets	2-6, 9-13
Add item	9-13
Mini Player	9-18
Operate	9-16
S! Friend's Status	9-17
Shortcut	9-21
S! Quick News	9-18
Wallpaper	9-17
Window Operations	2-6
Window	10-3
Calendar	9-8
Member States Window	9-8
Movie Window	8-6
Music Window	8-4
Standby Window	1-16
Still image viewer	7-3
TV Window	6-5
Video Viewfinder	7-9
Voice recorder	10-8

Window Operations	2-16
Phonebook Window	2-7
Text Entry Window	2-7
Widget	2-6
World Clock	10-6

Y

Yahoo! Keitai	5-3
Copy text	5-8
Delete Certificate	14-15
Details	5-9
Enter URL	5-3
Font size	14-5
Manufacture number	14-15
Refresh	5-8
Root certificates	14-16
Script	14-15
Search	5-8
Send URL	5-9

Number

3G/GSM	14-7
-------------------------	-------------

Objective Index

Adjust volume	3-22, 14-10
Hearing volume	3-22, 14-10
Ringtone volume	3-2
Backup	13-10
Memory Card	13-10
Phonebook	13-11
Cancel/Unlock	3-9
Answering Machine	3-9
Auto Lock	11-4
Bluetooth®	13-6
Call barring	3-20
Caller ID	3-21
Call forwarding	3-17
Call waiting	3-18
Facial Recognition	11-5
File Lock	12-14
Infrared	14-26
Key Lock	1-15
Manner mode	1-7
Message Lock	4-24
Messages	4-14
Near Chat	9-11
Offline mode	1-16
Password Lock	11-4
Phone Lock	11-3
PIN Lock	11-4
Secret mode	11-7
Vibration	2-4

Voice mail 3-16
Whisper 3-22

Change

Font size in page 5-9, 5-11
Mail address 4-4
Mode 1-17
Network Password 3-21
Phone Password 11-3
PIN 11-3
PIN2 11-3

Copy

File/Folder 12-9
Message content 4-23
Scanned characters 10-21
Text 2-21
Text in page 5-8, 5-10

Delete/Clear

Call log 3-11
Favorites 3-7
File/Folder 12-9
History 4-18, 4-21
Memory 11-8
Messages 4-15, 4-23, 4-26
Motions 7-19
Notepad 10-17
Phonebook 2-20
Recorded programs 6-8
Records (Answering Machine) 3-4
Reject number 14-10

Schedule 10-14
S! Friend's Status member 9-10
Tasks 10-19
Text 2-13
User's Dictionary 14-3

Edit

Account details 1-15
Phonebook 2-23
Schedule 10-14
Still images 7-12
Tasks 10-19
Text 2-13

Initialize

Browser 5-10, 5-12

Initiate

Memory Card 12-10

Insert/Remove

Battery 1-10
Memory Card 12-11
USIM Card 1-8

Make a call

Emergency call 3-8
International calls 3-13
Video Call 3-5
Voice Call 3-2

Play

Flash® 5-9, 5-11
Movie 8-7
Music 8-5

Playlist 8-8
Recorded programs 6-8
Records(Answering Machine) 3-4
Sound 5-9, 5-11
Voice recorder 10-9

Protect/Lock

File 12-14
Files 10-22
Function Lock 11-7
Message 4-24
Messages 4-14

Receive

Bluetooth® 13-7
Infrared 13-4
Message 4-10
Messages 4-10, 4-26
Near Chat 9-11
USB connection 13-9

Reset

Account details 3-26
Alarm 10-4
All Reset 11-9
Call time & cost 3-12
Reset settings 11-8

Save

Face Link 12-5
Facial Recognition 11-6
Mail address 4-4
Message 4-20

Phonebook	2-15, 2-17	Caller ID	3-21	Secret mode	2-22, 11-7
S! Friend's Status	9-7, 9-8	Call forwarding	3-17	Sounds & Vibration	14-3
Tasks	10-7	Call waiting	3-18	Still images	7-15, 12-15
User's Dictionary	2-14	Camera	14-19, 14-20	Vibration	2-4
Widget	9-13	Channel	6-4	Video	7-17, 12-15, 14-19, 14-20, 14-21
Search		Date & Time	14-2	Voicemail	3-16
Bluetooth®	13-6	Digital TV	6-13, 14-17	Wallpaper	2-5
Characters in page	10-22	Display	14-5	Whisper	3-22
Notepad	10-18	Dummy Call	10-13	Show	
Phonebook	2-18	Facial Recognition	11-5	Calendar	10-3
Tasks	10-19	File Lock	12-14	Call log	3-10
Send		Font	14-5	Cost after call	14-8
Files	12-13	Font size	4-23	Photo Album	12-7
Infrared	13-3	Font size in Message	14-13	Records (Answering Machine)	3-4
Manufacture number	14-18	Infrared	14-26	View	
Message (SMS)	4-7	International Code	14-7	Account details	1-14, 3-12
Message (S! Mail)	4-4	Key Lock	1-15	Call log	3-10
Notepad	10-17	Manner mode	1-17	Call time & cost	3-12
Tasks	10-18	Media Player	14-21	Captured Pictures	7-8
URL	5-9, 5-11	Message Lock	4-24	Data Folder	12-4
USB connection	13-9	Missed call notification	3-17	Data in Memory Card	12-11
Via Bluetooth®	13-6	Near Chat	9-11	Memory status	4-26, 12-12
Set/Activate		Offline mode	1-16	Message	4-9, 4-10, 4-22, 4-25
Alarm	10-4	Operator	3-14	Recorded Video	7-11
Answering Machine	3-9	Password Lock	11-4	Reservation	6-10
Auto Lock	11-4	Phonebook	2-19	Scanned Barcode	10-11
Black List	3-9	Phone Lock	11-3	Schedule	10-4
Bluetooth®	13-6	PIN Lock	11-4	Tasks	10-7
Call barring	3-20	Reject incoming calls	14-9, 14-10		
		Ringtone	2-4		

Advanced Settings Index

Account details	3-26
Alarm	10-16
Bar Code Reader	10-20
Bluetooth®	13-13
Bookmarks	5-13
Calculator	10-16
Calendar	10-13
Call log	3-25
Capturing Still Images	7-15
Conference call service	3-26
Currency/Unit Conversion	10-17
Dictionary	10-22
Editing Still Images	7-18
Facial Recognition	11-9
File Viewer	10-21
Managing Files/Folders	12-13
Managing Folders	4-26
Memory Status	12-15
Movie Playback	8-11
Music Playback	8-10
Notepad	10-17
Page Operations	5-12
PC Site Browser	5-10
Phone Book	2-21
Photo Album	12-13
Received Messages	4-22
Recording Videos	7-17
S! Addressbook Back-up	13-13
Saved Pages	5-15
Sending S! Mail	4-17
Sending SMS	4-21
S! Friend's Status	9-22
S! Information Channel	9-22
S! Quick News	9-21
Standby	2-20
Stopwatch	10-20
Streaming	8-12
Tasks	10-18
Text Entry	2-21
TV Timer/TV Timer Recording	6-14
User's Dictionary	2-21
Using/Managing Messages	4-23
Video call	3-23
Viewing Files	12-12
Voice Call	3-22
Voice Recorder	10-19
While Watching TV	6-11
Widgets	9-24
World Clock	10-17
Yahoo! Keitai	5-8

Warranty & Service

Warranty

Handset purchase includes Warranty.

- Confirm shop name and date of purchase.
- Read through the contents of the Warranty and keep it in a safe place.
- The warranty period can be found in the Warranty.

SoftBank is not liable for damage to you or a third party from missed calls, etc. due to handset failure or malfunction, etc.

Repair Requests

Before submitting handset for repair, consult the "Troubleshooting" (☎P.15-2) for a solution. If a problem persists, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (☎P.15-26) or the nearest SoftBank shop; be prepared to describe problem in detail.

- During the warranty period, repairs will be made under the terms and conditions described in the warranty.
- After the warranty period, repairs will be upon request; if said repairs can be made, you will be charged for them.

Note

- Handset files and settings may be lost or altered due to accidents or repairs. Keep a copy of important files, etc. like Phonebook entries. SoftBank is not liable for damage resulting from accidental loss or alteration of handset files (Phonebook, Data Folder, etc.) or settings.
- Disassembling or modifying this product may be a violation of the Radio Law. Note that SoftBank will not accept repair requests for disassembled or modified products.

Customer Service

For SoftBank Mobile handset or service information, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Mobile Customer Center

From a SoftBank handset, dial 157 for General Information, or
113 for Customer Assistance, toll free

SoftBank Mobile Global Call Center

From outside Japan, dial +81-3-5351-3491
(Please take care to dial correctly. International charges will apply.)

Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

Subscription Areas	Contact	
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	☎ 0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	☎ 0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	☎ 0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	☎ 0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-250-113

SoftBank 931SC User Guide

June 2011, Fourth Edition

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.



モバイル・リサイクル・ネットワーク
携帯電話・PHSのリサイクルにご協力を。

To help protect the environment and recycle valuable resources, mobile phone, and PHS shops displaying the above mark accept mobile phones, batteries, and chargers of all manufacturers.

- * Mobile phones, batteries, and chargers collected for recycling cannot be returned.
- * To protect your privacy, delete any personal information (telephone numbers, call log records, messages, etc.) beforehand.

* For more information, please visit your nearest SoftBank Shop.

Model Name: SoftBank 931SC
Manufacturer: Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd.
